US Army Corps of Engineers
Galveston District

VOLUME I

DRAFT

FREEPORT HARBOR, TEXAS
CHANNEL IMPROVEMENT PROJECT
FEASIBILITY REPORT

December 2010

Volume I Contents for Feasibility Report

1.0 INTRODUCTION
2.0 PROBLEM IDENTIFICATION
3.0 FORMULATION OBJECTIVES, CONSTRAINTS, AND CRITERIA
4.0 PLAN FORMULATION
5.0 PLAN ASSESSMENT AND SCREENING OF INITIAL ALTERNATIVE PLANS
6.0 INITIAL ECONOMIC EVALUATION
7.0 DETAILED PLAN FORMULATION
8.0 ENGINEERING STUDIES
9.0 DETAILED ECONOMIC ANALYSIS
10.0 ENVIRONMENTAL EVALUATION OF THE TENTATIVELY RECOMMENDED PLAN AND PROPOSED MITIGATION
11.0 50-YEAR DREDGED MATERIAL MANAGEMENT PLAN EVALUATION AND SELECTION
12.0 PLAN SELECTION, TENTATIVELY RECOMMENDED PLAN, AND PLAN IMPLEMENTATION
13.0 SUMMARY OF COORDINATION, PUBLIC VIEWS, AND COMMENTS
14.0 RECOMMENDATIONS
15.0 REFERENCES

Volume II Contents for Feasibility Report

Appendices:

A – Economic Appendix
B – Engineering Appendix
C – Real Estate Plan
D – Baseline Cost Estimate

Contents

Page

List of Figures ix
List of Tables x
Executive Summary xiv
Acronyms and Abbreviations xviii

1.0 INTRODUCTION 1-1
1.1 PURPOSE AND AUTHORITY 1-1
1.2 DESCRIPTION OF THE FREEPORT AREA 1-3
1.3 STUDY AREA DESCRIPTION: THE GENERAL FREEPORT AREA ENVIRONMENTAL SETTING 1-4
1.3.1 Air Quality 1-5
1.3.2 Fish and Wildlife Resources 1-5
1.3.3 Threatened, Endangered, and Protected Species 1-7
1.3.4 Cultural Resources 1-7
1.3.5 Socioeconomic Considerations 1-7
1.4 PROJECT AREA DESCRIPTION 1-8
1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL SETTING 1-8
1.5.1 Fish and Wildlife Resources 1-12
1.5.2 Threatened and Endangered Species 1-13
1.5.3 Water and Sediment Quality 1-14
1.5.4 Noise 1-15
1.5.5 Hazardous, Toxic, and Radioactive Waste 1-15
1.5.6 Prime and Unique Farmland 1-16
1.5.7 Cultural Resources 1-16
1.6 NON-FEDERAL SPONSOR AND COORDINATION 1-17
1.6.1 Federal Agencies 1-17
1.6.2 State Agencies 1-17
1.6.3 Regional, County, and Local Agencies 1-17
1.6.4 Other Interests 1-17
1.7 PRIOR AUTHORIZATIONS 1-18
1.8 STUDY AND REPORT PROCESS 1-19

2.0 PROBLEM IDENTIFICATION 2-1
2.1 NAVIGATION AND COMMERCE 2-1
2.1.1 Historical Traffic Overview 2-1
2.1.2 Crude Petroleum Import Overview 2-3
2.1.3 Petroleum and Chemical Product Overview 2-5

Page

2.1.4 General and Container Cargo Overview 2-6
2.1.5 Liquefied Natural Gas Overview 2-11
2.1.6 Stauffer Channel 2-12
2.1.6.1 Stauffer Channel Modification 2-12
2.1.6.2 Stauffer Channel Container Cargo 2-13
2.1.6.3 Upper – Stauffer Channel 2-13
2.2 SAFETY AND NATIONAL SECURITY 2-13
2.3 ENVIRONMENTAL 2-14
2.4 PROBLEM SUMMARY 2-14

3.0 FORMULATION OBJECTIVES, CONSTRAINTS, AND CRITERIA 3-1
3.1 NATIONAL OBJECTIVES 3-1
3.1.1 Regional Sediment Management 3-2
3.2 PLANNING OBJECTIVES 3-2
3.3 PLANNING CONSTRAINTS 3-2
3.4 PHYSICAL CONSTRAINTS 3-3
3.5 GUIDANCE AND CRITERIA 3-3
3.5.1 Technical Criteria 3-3
3.5.2 Economic Criteria 3-4
3.5.3 Environmental Criteria 3-4
3.5.4 Social and Other Criteria 3-5
3.5.5 Other USACE Initiatives 3-5
3.5.5.1 USACE Campaign Plan 3-5

4.0 PLAN FORMULATION 4-1
4.1 PLAN FORMULATION RATIONALE 4-1
4.2 NO ACTION AND FUTURE WITHOUT-PROJECT CONDITION 4-3
4.2.1 FWOP-1 4-7
4.2.2 FWOP-2 4-8
4.3 MANAGEMENT MEASURES 4-8
4.3.1 Nonstructural Measures 4-8
4.3.2 Structural Measures 4-8

5.0 PLAN ASSESSMENT AND SCREENING OF INITIAL ALTERNATIVE PLANS 5-1
5.1 SCREENING PROCESS 5-1
5.2 NAVIGABILITY/WIDTH SCREENING 5-3
5.3 SELECTED ALTERNATIVE PLANS 5-5
5.4 ENVIRONMENTAL CONSIDERATIONS ALTERNATIVES 5-6
5.4.1 No Action Plan 5-6

Page

5.4.2 Future Without-project Plan (FWOP-1) 5-6
5.4.3 Federal Channel Deepening and Widening 5-7

6.0 INITIAL ECONOMIC EVALUATION....6-1
6.1 GENERAL – INITIAL SCREENING OF SELECTED ALTERNATIVES 6-1
6.1.1 Benefit Calculations for Petroleum 6-2
6.1.2 Other Cargo 6-7
6.1.3 Stauffer Channel Modification 6-8
6.2 FREEPORT HARBOR CHANNEL INITIAL BENEFIT SUMMARY 6-10

7.0 DETAILED PLAN FORMULATION....7-1
7.1 GENERAL 7-1
7.2 PROCESS 7-1

8.0 ENGINEERING STUDIES 8-1
8.1 GENERAL 8-1
8.2 HYDROLOGY AND HYDRAULICS....8-1
8.2.1 Modeling Studies....8-1
8.2.1.1 Field Data Collection 8-1
8.2.1.2 Hydrodynamic Study....8-1
8.2.1.3 Ship Simulation....8-2
8.2.1.4 Sediment Study 8-2
8.2.1.5 Hurricane-induced Storm Surge Conditions 8-3
8.2.1.6 Shoreline Impact Study 8-3
8.3 GENERAL ENGINEERING 8-3
8.4 STRUCTURAL 8-3
8.5 GEOTECHNICAL STUDIES....8-4
8.5.1 Dredged Materials and Potential for Beneficial Use 8-5
8.5.2 Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Sites 8-6
8.5.3 Jetty Stability Analysis....8-7
8.5.4 Critical Locations and Findings....8-7
8.5.5 Levee and Channel Templates....8-8
8.5.6 Jetty Sand Retention....8-8
8.5.7 Recommended Additional Investigations 8-8
8.5.7.1 Freeport Channel....8-8
8.5.7.2 Upland Placement Areas 8-9
8.5.7.3 New Placement Areas 8 and 9 8-9
8.6 COST ESTIMATES....8-9

9.0 DETAILED ECONOMIC ANALYSIS 9-1
9.1 GENERAL 9-1

Page

9.2 EXISTING CHANNEL USE 9-1
9.3 CHANNEL REACHES 9-4
9.4 EXISTING TRAFFIC RULES 9-5
9.5 TRAFFIC OVERVIEW 9-6
9.5.1 Petroleum and Chemical Products 9-9
9.5.2 General and Other Cargo 9-9
9.5.3 Liquefied Natural Gas 9-11
9.6 VESSEL UTILIZATION 9-12
9.7 COMMODITY-SPECIFIC VESSEL UTILIZATION 9-12
9.8 CRUDE PETROLEUM IMPORTS 9-13
9.8.1 Crude Petroleum Trade Routes and Methods of Shipment 9-15
9.8.2 Petroleum Product Vessels 9-17
9.9 OTHER VESSELS 9-18
9.9.1 Bulk Carriers 9-18
9.9.2 Refrigerated Container Vessels 9-18
9.9.3 Chemical Product Carriers 9-18
9.10 UTILIZATION OF CHANNEL DEPTHS OVER 45 FEET 9-19
9.11 LIQUEFIED NATURAL GAS 9-22
9.12 TRAFFIC FORECAST 9-22
9.12.1 Crude Petroleum 9-23
9.12.2 Petroleum Product Imports 9-25
9.12.3 Chemical Product Exports 9-25
9.13 TRADE ROUTE FORECASTS 9-26
9.13.1 Crude Petroleum Imports 9-26
9.13.2 Petroleum Products Imports and Chemical Product Exports 9-27
9.14 CHANNEL DEEPENING BENEFITS 9-28
9.14.1 Crude Petroleum Imports Transportation Savings Benefits 9-30
9.14.2 Petroleum Product Transportation Savings Benefits 9-37
9.15 INCREMENTAL ANALYSIS 9-37
9.16 STAUFFER CHANNEL MODIFICATION LOWER REACH 9-41
9.16.1 Regional and National Trends 9-44
9.16.2 Regional Population Growth and Market Expectations 9-46
9.16.3 Market Demand 9-49
9.16.4 Design Vessel and Vessel Utilization Expectations 9-50
9.16.5 Anticipated Traffic Volume 9-52
9.16.6 Container Cargo Transportation Savings Benefits 9-55
9.17 STAUFFER CHANNEL MODIFICATION UPPER REACH 9-59

Page

9.17.1 Navigation Problems 9-61
9.17.2 Past Conditions 9-61
9.17.3 Existing Conditions 9-61
9.17.4 Without-project Condition 9-62
9.17.5 With-project Condition 9-63
9.17.6 Vessel Utilization Data 9-65
9.17.7 Offshore Supply Fleet Trends 9-66
9.17.8 Research Vessel Fleet (Seismic Vessels) 9-68
9.17.9 Cargo Vessels and Other Vessel Traffic 9-69
9.17.10 Total Base Traffic 9-70
9.17.11 Transportation Cost Analysis 9-72
9.18 ECONOMIC SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS 9-79
9.19 SENSITIVITY ANALYSIS 9-80
9.19.1 Channel Widening 9-82
9.19.2 Offshore Alternative Sensitivity Analysis 9-84
9.19.3 Underkeel Clearance Sensitivity Analysis 9-89
9.19.4 Lower Utilization Expectations 9-90
9.19.5 Reduced Construction Cost Contingencies 9-91
9.20 REGIONAL ECONOMIC BENEFITS 9-94
9.21 OTHER SOCIAL EFFECTS 9-98
9.22 SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS 9-99

10.0 ENVIRONMENTAL EVALUATION OF THE TENTATIVELY RECOMMENDED PLAN AND PROPOSED MITIGATION 10-1

10.1 PHYSIOGRAPHY 10-1
10.1.1 Terrestrial and Wetland Habitats 10-1
10.1.1.1 Aquatic Ecology 10-1
10.1.2 Clean Water Act 10-3
10.1.3 Section 103 of the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act 10-3
10.1.4 Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act 10-3
10.1.5 Coastal Zone Management Act 10-3
10.1.6 Fish and Wildlife Coordination Act 10-3
10.1.7 Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972 10-4
10.1.8 Coastal Barrier Improvement Act of 1990 10-4
10.1.9 Farmland Protection Policy Act of 1981 and the Council on Environmental Quality Memorandum Prime or Unique Farmlands 10-4
10.1.10 Executive Order 11988, Floodplain Management 10-4
10.1.11 Executive Order 12898, Environmental Justice 10-5
10.2 AIR QUALITY 10-5

Page

10.3 NOISE 10-5
10.4 HAZARDOUS, TOXIC, AND RADIOACTIVE WASTE 10-5
10.5 THREATENED AND ENDANGERED SPECIES 10-5
10.6 CULTURAL RESOURCES....10-6
10.7 CUMULATIVE IMPACTS....10-6
10.8 PROJECT MITIGATION....10-6
10.9 HABITAT EVALUATION PROCEDURE....10-8
10.10 SITE DESCRIPTION AND SELECTION OF EVALUATION SPECIES 10-8
10.11 HEP MODELING 10-10
10.11.1 Future Without-Project 10-10
10.11.2 Future With-Project.... 10-11
10.11.3 Proposed Mitigation Strategies for Forest and Wetlands.... 10-13
10.12 COST EFFECTIVENESS AND INCREMENTAL COST ANALYSIS.... 10-15
10.12.1 Forest Mitigation (Scales and Assumptions) 10-15
10.12.2 Scales 10-15
10.12.3 Assumptions Using Seedling Trees.... 10-16
10.12.4 Wetland Mitigation (Scales and Assumptions) 10-16
10.12.5 Scales 10-18
10.13 ASSUMPTIONS USING A MEDIUM-DENSITY WETLAND PLANNING SCHEME 10-18
10.13.1 IWR-PLAN 10-18
10.14 COST EFFECTIVENESS AND INCREMENTAL COST ANALYSIS SUMMARY.... 10-21
10.15 MITIGATION MONITORING AND CONTINGENCY PLANS 10-22
10.15.1 Introduction 10-22
10.15.2 Success Criteria 10-22
10.15.3 Riparian Tree Plantings.... 10-23
10.15.3.1 Establishment Year....10-23
10.15.3.2 Postestablishment Monitoring....10-23
10.15.3.3 Monitoring Methods, Timing, and Duration 10-24
10.15.3.4 Project Closure....10-24
10.15.4 Aquatic Pond Vegetation 10-24
10.15.4.1 Establishment Year....10-24
10.15.4.2 Postestablishment Monitoring....10-25
10.15.4.3 Monitoring Methods, Timing, and Duration 10-25
10.15.4.4 Project Closure....10-26
10.16 CORRECTIVE ACTIONS (ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT).... 10-26
10.16.1 Riparian Tree Plantings.... 10-26
10.16.2 Aquatic Plantings 10-26

Page

10.16.3 Adaptive Management Costs 10-27
10.17 MONITORING REPORTS 10-27
10.17.1 Annual Monitoring Reports 10-27
10.17.2 Final Close-Out Monitoring Report 10-28
10.18 MITIGATION MONITORING AND REPORTING COSTS 10-28

11.0 50-YEAR DREDGED MATERIAL MANAGEMENT PLAN EVALUATION AND SELECTION 11-1
11.1 DREDGED MATERIAL PLACEMENT PLAN 11-1
11.2 50-YEAR CAPACITY AND DREDGED MATERIAL MANAGEMENT PLAN 11-1
11.2.1 Environmental Restrictions Pertaining to Upland and Offshore Dredge Material Placement 11-1
11.2.1.1 Upland PA Water Quality 11-1
11.2.1.2 ODMDS 11-2
11.2.2 Dredge Materials and Potential for Beneficial Use 11-2
11.3 50-YEAR CAPACITY AND DREDGE MATERIAL PLACEMENT DESIGNATION 11-3
11.4 OCEAN DREDGE MATERIAL DISPOSAL SITES 11-3
11.5 UPLAND CONFINED PLACEMENT PLAN 11-6
11.5.1 Existing Placement Area 1 11-6
11.5.2 New Placement Area 8 11-6
11.5.3 New Placement Area 9 11-6
11.5.4 Verification of Placement Area Elevation Data 11-6
11.6 BENEFICIAL USE PLACEMENT PLAN 11-7
11.7 DREDGED MATERIAL MANAGEMENT PLAN 11-7
11.7.1 Outer Bar Channel – Stations –370+00 to 71+52.58 11-7
11.7.2 Main Channel – Stations 71+52.58 to 184+20 11-7
11.7.3 Stauffer Channel – Stations 184+20 to 256+00 11-7

12.0 PLAN SELECTION, TENTATIVELY RECOMMENDED PLAN, AND PLAN IMPLEMENTATION 12-1
12.1 OVERVIEW 12-1
12.2 RISK AND UNCERTAINTY 12-1
12.2.1 Uncertainty in Technical Evaluations 12-3
12.2.1.1 Engineering Data and Models 12-3
12.2.1.2 Economic Analysis 12-4
12.3 SENSITIVITY OF PROJECT ALTERNATIVES TO RELATIVE SEA LEVEL RISE 12-5
12.3.1 Projected Relative Sea Level Rise Impacts for the Project Area 12-6

Page

12.4 DESCRIPTION OF TENTATIVELY RECOMMENDED PLAN 12-9
12.5 GENERAL NAVIGATION FEATURES OF THE TENTATIVELY RECOMMENDED PLAN 12-9
12.5.1 Outer Bar/Jetty Channel 12-9
12.5.2 Main Channel 12-10
12.5.3 Stauffer Channel 12-10
12.5.4 Lands, Easements, and Rights-of-Way 12-10
12.5.5 Facility Removals/Deep-Draft Utility Relocations 12-11
12.5.6 Regional Sediment Management 12-11
12.6 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION 12-12
12.6.1 Division of Plan Responsibilities and Cost-Sharing Requirements 12-12
12.7 COSTS FOR THE TENTATIVELY RECOMMENDED PLAN 12-13
12.8 COST-SHARING ALLOCATION 12-15
12.9 ADDITIONAL NON-FEDERAL SPONSOR CASH CONTRIBUTION 12-15
12.10 NON-FEDERAL SPONSOR VIEWS 12-15
12.11 TENTATIVELY RECOMMENDED PLAN AND RECENT USACE INITIATIVES 12-17
12.11.1 USACE Actions for Change as Reflected in the Campaign Plan 12-17

13.0 SUMMARY OF COORDINATION, PUBLIC VIEWS, AND COMMENTS 13-1
13.1 OVERVIEW 13-1
13.2 PUBLIC INVOLVEMENT 13-1

14.0 RECOMMENDATIONS 14-1
14.1 OVERVIEW 14-1
14.2 RECOMMENDATION 14-5

15.0 REFERENCES 15-1

APPENDICES:

A – Economic Appendix
B – Engineering Appendix
C – Real Estate Plan
D – Baseline Cost Estimate

FIGURES

		Page
1	Freeport Harbor Study Area	1-2
2	Freeport Harbor Channel	1-9
3	U.S. and Freeport Crude Petroleum Imports (1970–2006)	2-5
4	Freeport Harbor 1970–2006 Other Ocean-going Cargo	2-8
5	Port Freeport	2-9
6	U.S. LNG Imports 2006–2030	2-12
7	Port Freeport Widening Project	4-5
8	Freeport Harbor General Cargo (Imports and Exports) and Coastwise	6-7
9	Freeport Harbor Facilities	9-2
10	U.S. LNG Imports 2006–2030	9-11
11	U.S. and Freeport Petroleum Product Imports (1990–2005)	9-26
12	Freeport Channel Container Cargo 1983–2008	9-43
13	U.S. East Coast and West Coast Container Cargo (TEUs) Billions of Chained 2000 Dollars (1999–2008)	9-45
14	U.S. Gulf Coast Container Cargo (TEUs) Billions of Chained 2000 Dollars (1999–2008)	9-45
15	Texas Container Cargo (TEUs) 2000–2020	9-50
16	U.S. Total Containership Trips Percentage of Trips by Loaded Draft (2003–2006)	9-54
17	U.S. and Houston Container Cargo (2006–2007 Period) Percentage of Imports and Exports by Major Commodity Group	9-55
18	Placement Areas	10-2

TABLES

Page

1 Authorized Freeport Harbor Dimensions....1-10
2 Freeport Harbor Deep-Draft Tonnage, 1970–2007....2-2
3 Comparison of Freeport and Regional and National Totals, Crude Petroleum Imports....2-4
4 Freeport Harbor Petroleum and Chemical Product Imports and Exports, Freeport Percentages of U.S. Totals....2-6
5 Freeport Harbor Other Ocean-going Cargo Major Commodities 1970–2007....2-7
6 Initial Costs and Benefits for Considered Alternatives....4-3
7 Initial Screening of Project Management Measures....5-2
8 Foreign Flag Tankers....6-3
9 Freeport Harbor Crude Petroleum Tankers, 2001 and 2003....6-3
10 Crude Petroleum Imports, 2001–2003 Average....6-4
11 Representative Round-Trip Mileage to Freeport Harbor....6-5
12 Freeport Harbor Crude Oil Imports by Trade Route....6-5
13 Transportation Savings by Channel Depth and Commodity Group....6-6
14 Economic Summary....6-6
15 Freeport Harbor General Cargo Deep-Draft Commodities (1,000s of short tons) Other than Petroleum and Chemical Foreign Imports and Exports....6-7
16 Representative Gulf Coast Channel Containerships (2003)....6-9
17 Jetty Stability Analysis – Summary of Calculated Minimum Factors of Safety....8-8
18 Freeport Harbor Tonnage by Major Commodity Groups (1970–2008)....9-7
19 Comparison of Freeport and Regional and National Totals Crude Petroleum Imports (1,000s of short tons)....9-8
20 Freeport Harbor Other Ocean-going Cargo Major Commodities 1970–2007 (1,000s of short tons)....9-10
21 Percentage of Freeport Harbor Crude Petroleum Imports by Vessel DWT 1990, 1993, and 2003–2007....9-14
22 Freeport Harbor Crude Petroleum Representative Tanker Sizes....9-14
23 Freeport Crude Petroleum Imports Percentage of Short Tons by Loaded Draft, 1990–2007....9-15
24 Depths at Major Ports Transporting Crude Oil to Freeport....9-21
25 Annual Energy Outlook (AEO) Crude Petroleum Imports 2005–2030, U.S. Crude Oil Imports and World Oil Price....9-23
26 Regression Equation Data for Freeport Crude Oil Imports....9-24
27 Freeport Crude Oil Tonnage by Trade Route and Decade, 2003/2005 and 2014–2064....9-27
28 Adjustments for Estimating Actual Vessel Capacity Short Tons of Cargo as a Percentage of Vessel DWT....9-28
29 Representative Round Trip Mileage to Freeport Harbor....9-29

Page

30 Tanker Characteristics and Hourly Operating Cost FY 08 Double Hull Tankers 9-29
31 Freeport Crude Petroleum Imports Transportation Cost and Savings Calculated Using December 2008 Vessel Costs Most Likely Transportation Mode.....9-30
32 Crude Petroleum Transportation Cost Per Ton December 2008 Vessel Costs for Direct Shipments to Freeport.....9-32
33 Freeport Crude Petroleum Imports Cost Per Ton Comparison by Method of Shipment by Channel Depth Alternative and Trade Route.....9-33
34 Freeport Crude Petroleum Imports Annual Transportation Savings by Representative Trade Route and Decade Channel Depth Alternative, Year, and Representative Origin, FY 09 Vessel Costs December 2008 9-36
35 Percentage of Future Tonnage Loaded to Drafts Approaching Project Depth 9-37
36 Crude Petroleum, Petroleum Products, and Chemicals Outer Bar to Station 0+00 through Station 115+00 (includes Seaway Terminal) Average Annual Benefits and Costs.....9-39
37 Crude Petroleum, Petroleum Products, and Chemicals Station 115+00 to Station 174+00 (Includes ConocoPhillips and Dow Chemical) Average Annual Benefits and Costs.....9-40
38 Crude Petroleum, Petroleum Products, and Chemicals Outer Bar to Station 174+00 Average Annual Benefits and Costs.....9-41
39 Metropolitan Statistical Area Population Projections Texas Counties Adjacent to Freeport, Texas.....9-47
40 Houston-Galveston Statistical Metropolitan Area 2000–2008 Population Estimates, Select Counties.....9-48
41 Mileage Comparison to Cities Within or Adjacent to Brazoria County 9-49
42 Largest Container Vessels Expected to Use Freeport Representative Vessels 9-51
43 U.S. Total Container Vessel Trips by Region and Loaded Draft (2006) 9-53
44 U.S. Total Containership Trips by Loaded Draft 2004–2006.....9-53
45 Houston 2006 and Freeport Expected Container Tonnage by Vessel DWT 9-54
46 Foreign Flag Container Vessel Operating Costs (FY 2009).....9-57
47 Freeport Foreign Flag Container Vessel Operating Costs (FY 09) Freeport Application 9-57
48 Distribution of Regional Cargo Tonnage by Loaded Draft (feet).....9-58
49 Lower Stauffer Container Terminal Channel Benefits and Costs for 41- to 51-foot Depth Increments 9-60
50 Offshore Supply Vessels Range of Design and Loaded Drafts, Bayou Lafourche, Galveston, and Freeport (2006).....9-64
51 Seismic and Research Vessels Range of Design and Loaded Drafts, Bayou Lafourche, Galveston, and Freeport (2006).....9-65
52 Offshore Supply Vessels, World Fleet, Active Vessels, and Vessels on Order.....9-67
53 World Offshore Supply Vessel Fleet by Design Draft, U.S. Flag and non-U.S. Flag Vessels Built After 1974 or Under Construction as of November 2008.....9-68

Page

54 World Research Vessel Fleet Comparison of Percentage of Vessels Built After 1974 and 2000 9-69
55 Percentage of World Vessel Fleet and Texas Gulf Coast (Excluding Offshore Vessels) Maximum Vessel Length of 400 feet Vessels Constructed After 2000 9-70
56 Number of Vessels Per Year for 2008-Period Base (With-Project Future) 9-72
57 Freeport Harbor (Stauffer Channel) Number of Offshore Rigs, Freeport and Galveston Vicinity....9-73
58 Stauffer Channel Difference in Transit Time (Hours)....9-73
59 Limited Vessel List of Stauffer Channel Offshore Vessels 9-74
60 Hourly Vessel Operating Cost by Vessel Horsepower 9-75
61 Upper Stauffer Channel Annual 2008-Period Base Savings by Vessel Type and Size....9-76
62 Upper Stauffer Channel Annual Benefits by Channel Depth Alternative 2008 Base and 2014–2064 Forecast, October 2008 Dollars and 4.375% 9-77
63 Upper Stauffer Channel Economic Summary by Channel Depth Alternative, October 2008 Dollars and 4.375%, 2014–2064 Period of Analysis....9-77
64 Upper Stauffer Channel Economic Summary by Channel Depth Alternative Underkeel Clearance and Lower Traffic Sensitivity Analysis, 2014–2064 Period of Analysis....9-78
65 Upper Stauffer Channel Economic Summary by Channel Depth Alternative October 2008 Dollars and 4.375%, 2014–2064 Period of Analysis....9-78
66 Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification NED and LPP Economic Summary, Average Annual Values....9-79
67 Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification NED and LPP Economic Summary 9-81
68 Freeport Widening Benefits 2014–2064 Reduction in Transportation Costs Average Annual Savings at 4.375 %....9-83
69 Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification NED and LPP Economic Summary Based on Channel Widening Costs and Minimum Widening Benefits 9-85
70 Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification NED and LPP Economic Summary Based on Channel Widening Costs and Section 204 Widening Benefits 9-86
71 Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification NED and LPP Economic Sensitivity Based on 100 Percent of Freeport's Middle East and Africa Crude Oil Imports Using U.S. Gulf Coast Offshore Terminals....9-87
72 Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification NED and LPP Economic Sensitivity Based on 60 Percent of Freeport's Middle East and Africa, Crude Oil Imports Using U.S. Gulf Coast Offshore Terminals....9-88
73 Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification NED and LPP Economic Summary Based on 1 foot of Underkeel Clearance for Crude Petroleum and Petrochemical Products 9-89
74 Freeport Crude Petroleum Imports Percentage of Future Tonnage Loaded to Drafts Approaching Project Depth....9-90

Page

76 Freeport NED and LPP Construction Cost by Contract NED Project Construction Cost 9-92
77 Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification NED and LPP Economic Summary Based on Reductions in Construction Cost Contingencies from 29% to 15% 9-93
78 Employment Impact by Sector and Job Category Number of Jobs....9-96
79 Summary of the Local and Regional Economic Impacts Generated by Port Freeport....9-97
80 Job Impacts per 1,000 Tons....9-99
81 Average HSI Values and HUs for All Habitats in Project Impact Areas (Baseline Conditions) 10-10
82 Future Without-Project AAHUs in Evaluation Species' Habitats (Baseline Conditions) 10-12
83 Future With-Project AAHUs in Evaluation Species' Habitats 10-13
84 AAHUs for Forest Species at Proposed Mitigation Sites FWOP vs. FWP Mitigation 10-17
85 AAHUs for Wetland Species at Proposed Mitigation Sites FWOP vs. FWP Mitigation 10-19
86 IWR-Plan Analysis Costs and Outputs for Cost Effective and Best Buy Plans 10-20
87 Incremental Cost of Best Buy Plan Combinations (Ordered By Output) 10-21
88 Adaptive Management Costs.... 10-27
89 Mitigation Monitoring and Report Costs 10-29
90 Freeport Harbor Channel Improvement Project – Summary of New Work Dredging 11-4
91 Freeport Harbor Channel Improvement Project – Summary of Maintenance Dredging & Placement Area Parameters 11-5
92 Proposed Freeport Channel Dimensions for Tentatively Recommended Plan.... 12-18
93 Tentatively Recommended Plan Cost Comparison of Costs 12-20
94 Cost Apportionment.... 12-21
95 Lower Stauffer Channel Freeport Harbor, Texas – Channel Improvement Project – Cost Apportionment for NED and LPP and Adjustment for Sponsor of the LPP over the NED.... 12-23

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The purpose of this feasibility study is to develop and evaluate alternatives for navigation problems that directly affect the Freeport Harbor Channel. To allow for a more-effective, safe, and efficient waterway, the study focused on eliminating the major problems contributing to inefficiencies on the waterway, such as insufficient depth and width, as determined by fleet forecasts and the requirement for one-way traffic in the channel. The study evaluated project benefits based on reductions in transportation costs generated from more-efficient loading of the existing fleet, from reductions in vessel delays, and the introduction of larger vessels. The study was conducted to determine whether navigation problems currently being experienced at Freeport Harbor could be alleviated and are in the Federal interest and to provide documentation needed to recommend Congressional authorization and funding for construction of that project. The Freeport Harbor study area is shown on Figure 1.

The original project for Federal channel improvement at Freeport was authorized by the River and Harbor Act (RHA), approved June 14, 1880, which provided for construction of jetties for controlling and improving the channel over the bar at the mouth of the Brazos River. Work was started in 1881 and continued to 1886 when operations were suspended due to lack of funds. In March 1899, the Brazos River Channel and Dock Company, under authority granted by the RHA of August 21, 1888, began rework on the navigation channel. The company was unable to finance completion of the work, and in April, the works, rights, and privileges were transferred to the United States. This constituted the initial authorization for the existing project for Freeport Harbor.

The existing Freeport Harbor Project was authorized by the RHAs of May 1950 and July 1958. The Acts provided for an Outer Bar Channel 38 feet deep and 300 feet wide from the Gulf of Mexico to a point inside the jetties and for inside channels 36 feet deep and 200 feet wide to and including the Upper Turning Basin. Greater depth and width were authorized by Congress in 1970 (Section 101 of RHA of 1970, PL 91-611; House Document 289, 93rd Congress – 2nd Session, 31 Dec 1975) and by the President in 1974. These authorizations were for the Jetty Channel to be relocated and deepened to 45 feet, widened to 400 feet, and the North Jetty relocated northward. The relocated Entrance Channel (Outer Bar) was authorized to a 400-foot width, to a 47-foot depth, and to extend approximately 4.6 miles into the Gulf. A Final Environmental Impact Statement for the project was prepared by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) in 1978. In 1978, Seaway Pipeline, Inc., under a Department of Army permit, was authorized to widen the Entrance (Outer Bar) Channel to 400 feet and the Jetty Channel to 230 feet. Seaway Pipeline was formed as a consortium in the 1970s to construct the Seaway Terminal, storage tankage at the Jones Creek Tank Farm, and the pipeline from Jones Creek Tank Farm to Cushing, Oklahoma, to transport foreign crude into the Heartland. The Outer Bar Channel was never widened under the permit.

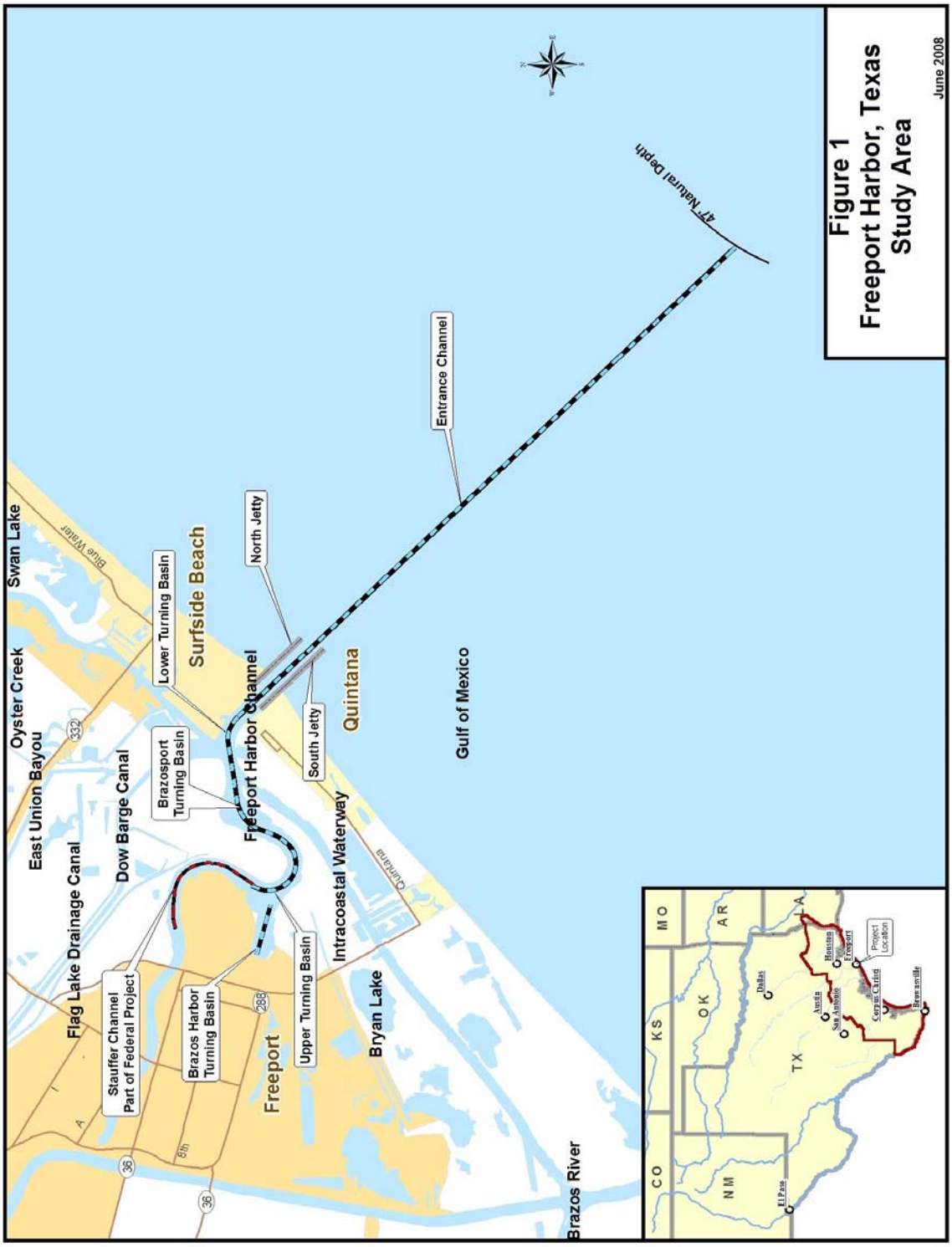


Figure 1
Freeport Harbor, Texas
Study Area

June 2008

Port Freeport (formerly the Brazos River Harbor Navigation District) is the non-Federal sponsor for the study. The study has been coordinated with interested Federal, State, and local agencies, and interested public. In October 2002, a Reconnaissance Report Section 905(b) Analysis was completed for Freeport Harbor. The Section 905(b) analysis was conducted under authority of Section 216 of the Flood Control Act of 1970. The reconnaissance evaluation recommended proceeding with a cost-shared feasibility study with the Brazos River Harbor Navigation District as the lead cost-sharing Sponsor. The Feasibility Cost Sharing Agreement was signed July 7, 2003.

The tentatively Recommended Plan addresses the problems and opportunities identified during the study and satisfies the planning objectives of increasing navigation efficiency and safety along the Freeport Harbor Channel while maintaining the coastal and estuarine resources within the project area. This tentatively Recommended Plan is the Locally Preferred Plan (LPP), the plan preferred by the Sponsor. The tentatively Recommended Plan calls for a 57- to 55-foot-deep by 600-foot-wide Outer Bar and Jetty Channel (57-foot-deep Outer Bar Channel/55-foot-deep Jetty Channel) and 55-foot Main Channel. The LPP is tentatively recommended in lieu of the National Economic Development (NED) Plan. The NED Plan and the LPP were fully developed. The LPP is less costly than the NED Plan for the Entrance and Main channels and the net excess benefits are less. The tentatively Recommended Plan portion for the lower Stauffer Channel is the LPP, which is more costly than the NED Plan. The increased incremental difference between the LPP and the NED Plan for the lower Stauffer Channel requires the local Sponsor to pay the differential cost.

Based on the economic, engineering, and environmental factors considered, the tentatively Recommended Plan (LPP) (authorized depths) includes deepening of the Outer Bar Channel from the jetties into the Gulf of Mexico to –57 feet MLT; deepening from the end of the jetties in the Gulf of Mexico to the Lower Turning Basin to –55 feet MLT; widening of the Outer Bar Channel reach to 600 feet; deepening from the Lower Turning Basin to Sta. 132+66 (ConocoPhillips dock area, above 1,200-foot Brazosport Turning Basin) to –55 feet; deepening of Freeport Harbor from Sta. 132+66 through the Upper Turning Basin to –50 feet (although the benefits would continue to increase, Port Freeport did not considered that the depth over –50 feet was needed); deepening and widening the lower 3,700 feet of the Stauffer Channel at a depth of –50 feet MLT and 300 feet wide; and dredging the remainder of the Stauffer Channel to a depth of 25 feet, in lieu of restoring it to its previously authorized dimensions of 30 feet by 200 feet. Depths shown exclude advance maintenance and allowable overdepth. It is estimated that the approximately 17.3 mcy of new work material (including advance maintenance and allowable overdepth) would require eight separate dredging contracts to complete. The work is estimated to begin in 2012 and be complete by 2018. Dredged material management will be performed according to the Dredged Material Management Plan.

The project benefits were calculated for a 2014–2064 period of analysis using the Fiscal Year (FY) 10 Federal discount rate of 4.375 percent and the deep-draft vessel operating costs contained in Economic Guidance Memorandum 08-04. The proposed channel improvements are in response to the need for deeper access required by liquid bulk vessels, the introduction of larger vessels, and the reauthorization of the upper reaches of the harbor. The deepening and widening of the Freeport Harbor Channel will generate annual benefits of $28,394,000 with total annual costs of $22,144,000, producing a benefit-cost ratio of 1.3. At a discount rate of 7 percent, annual benefits of $27,123,000 and total annual costs of $30,978,000 produce a benefit-cost ratio of 0.9.

The project first cost of all project components totals $308,700,000. The fully funded project cost of all components totals $334,352,000.

The USACE prepared a Draft Environmental Impact Statement (DEIS) as required by the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) to present an evaluation of potential impacts associated with the proposed Freeport Harbor project. The DEIS has been properly prepared and coordinated as required by NEPA All factors that may be relevant to the proposed project were considered, including dredged material management, air quality, shoreline erosion, historic resources, protected species, recreation, water and sediment quality, energy needs, safety, hazardous materials, and, in general, the welfare of the people. Areas of potential impact identified include water and sediment quality, air quality, noise, riparian forest and wetlands, terrestrial and aquatic wildlife (including Essential Fish Habitat), protected species, cultural resources, land use, and socioeconomics. For the proposed project, the majority of potential project-related impacts were avoided. Mitigation was proposed only for impacts to riparian forest and wetland habitats. Public involvement occurred through public meetings and other outreach efforts throughout the history of the project. The public, State and Federal resource agencies, industry, local government, and other interested parties have been proactively informed about the project.

Acronyms and Abbreviations

3D	three dimensional
AAG	Average Annual Growth
AAHU	Average Annual Habitat Unit
ACP	Panama Canal Authority
A-E	Architect-Engineer
AEO	Annual Energy Outlook
ASA(CW)	Assistant Secretary of the Army (Civil Works)
ATR	Agency Technical Review
BA	Biological Assessment
BASF	Badische, Anilin und Soda-Fabrik AG
BCR	Benefit Cost Ratio
BO	Biological Opinion
BOEM	Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Regulation and Enforcement, formerly the Minerals Management Service (MMS)
BPA	Brazos Pilot Association
BPD	Barrels per Day
CBRA	Coastal Barrier Improvement Act
CCC	Coastal Coordination Council
CE	Cost Effectiveness
CERCLA	Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act (80)
CHL	Coastal Hydraulics Laboratory
cm	centimeter
cm/sec	centimeters per second
CSRA	Cost and Schedule Risk Analysis
CWA	Clean Water Act
cy	cubic yard
dB	decibel
dBA	sound levels measured using A-weighting
dbh	diameter at breast height
DC	distribution center
DEIS	Draft Environmental Impact Statement
DMMP	Dredged Material Management Plan
DWT	Deadweight Tonnage
DX	Directorate of Expertise
EC	Engineer Circular
EFH	Essential Fish Habitat
EGM	Economic Guidance Memorandum

EIA	Energy Information Administration
EIS	Environmental Impact Statement
EJ	Environmental Justice
EO	Executive Order
EOP	Environmental Operating Principles
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency
EQ	Environmental Quality
ER	Engineer Regulation
ERDC	Engineer Research and Development Center
ESA	Endangered Species Act (73)
FEIS	Final Environmental Impact Statement
FM	Farm-to-Market Road
fps	feet per second
ft/sec	feet per second
ft/yr	feet per year
FTZ	Foreign Trade Zone
FWOP	Future Without-project
FWP	Future With-project
FY	Fiscal Year
GIWW	Gulf Intracoastal Waterway
GLO	Texas General Land Office
GNF	General Navigation Feature
H&H	Hydrology and Hydraulics
HEP	Habitat Evaluation Procedures (Ecosystem Evaluation)
HGB	Houston-Galveston-Brazoria
HSI	Habitat Suitability Index
HQ	Headquarters (USACE)
HTRW	Hazardous, Toxic, and Radioactive Waste
HU	habitat unit
ICA	Incremental Cost Analysis
IPCC	Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change
IWR	Institute of Water Resources
LA/LB	Los Angeles/Long Beach
LERR	Lands, Easements, Rights-of-Way, and Relocations
LNG	Liquefied Natural Gas
LOA	Length Overall (ship)
LPP	Locally Preferred Plan
m^3	cubic meter

mcy	million cubic yards
mcy/yr	million cubic yards per year
MLLW	Mean Low Low Water
MLT	Mean Low Tide
mm/yr	millimeters per year
MMS	Mineral Management Service, now the Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Regulation and Enforcement (BOEM)
NAAQS	National Ambient Air Quality Standards
NAD	North American Datum
NDC	Navigation Data Center
NED	National Economic Development
NEPA	National Environmental Policy Act (69)
NGL	Natural Gas Liquid
NMFS	National Marine Fisheries Service
NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NO_X	Nitrogen oxides
NPS	National Park Service
NRC	National Research Council
NRCS	National Resources Conservation Service
O&M	Operation and Maintenance
ODMDS	Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Site
OPA	Otherwise Protected Area
OSE	other social effects
OSV	offshore supply vessels
PA	Placement Area
PADD	Petroleum Administration Defense District
PAg	Programmatic Agreement
PED	Preconstruction Engineering and Design
PGL	Planning Guidance Letter
PL	Public Law
PSV	platform supply vessel
RED	Regional Economic Development
RHA	River and Harbor Act
RSLR	Relative Sea Level Rise
SAV	submerged aquatic vegetation
SH	State Highway
SHPO	State Historic Preservation Officer
SIP	State Implementation Plan (CAA)
SMS	Surface Water Modeling System

SOC	species of concern
SPR	Strategic Petroleum Reserve
SPT	Standard Penetration Tests
TCEQ	Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (formerly Texas Natural Resources Conservation Commission [TNRCC])
TCMP	Texas Coastal Management Program
TEPPCO	Texas Eastern Petroleum Pipeline Company
TEU	Total Equivalent Units (Container – 20x8x8) (7.5 metric tons)
TIP	Transportation Improvement Plan
TOPS	Texas Offshore Oil Port System
TPCS	Total Project Cost Sheet
TPWD	Texas Parks and Wildlife Department
TRRC	Texas Railroad Commission
TWDB	Texas Water Development Board
TxDOT	Texas Department of Transportation
TY	target year
UC	Unconfined Compression Tests
USACE	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
USC	United States Code
USCG	U.S. Coast Guard
USFWS	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
UU	Unconsolidated Undrained Triaxial Compression Tests
UU or Q-tests	Unconsolidated Undrained Triaxial Compression Tests
VLCC	Very Large Crude Carrier
WCSC	Waterborne Commerce Statistical Center
WRDA	Water Resources Development Act

1.0 INTRODUCTION

Freeport Harbor provides deepwater access from the Gulf of Mexico to Port Freeport. The waterway extends from deep water in the Gulf through a 0.83-mile jettied channel to the Lower Turning Basin, then westerly approximately 1.5 miles to and including the Brazosport Turning Basin, then westerly approximately 2.2 miles through the Upper Turning Basin to and including a turning basin at Brazos Harbor. The Stauffer Channel extends 1.15 miles from the Upper Turning Basin to the Stauffer Turning Basin. The study area is shown on Figure 1.

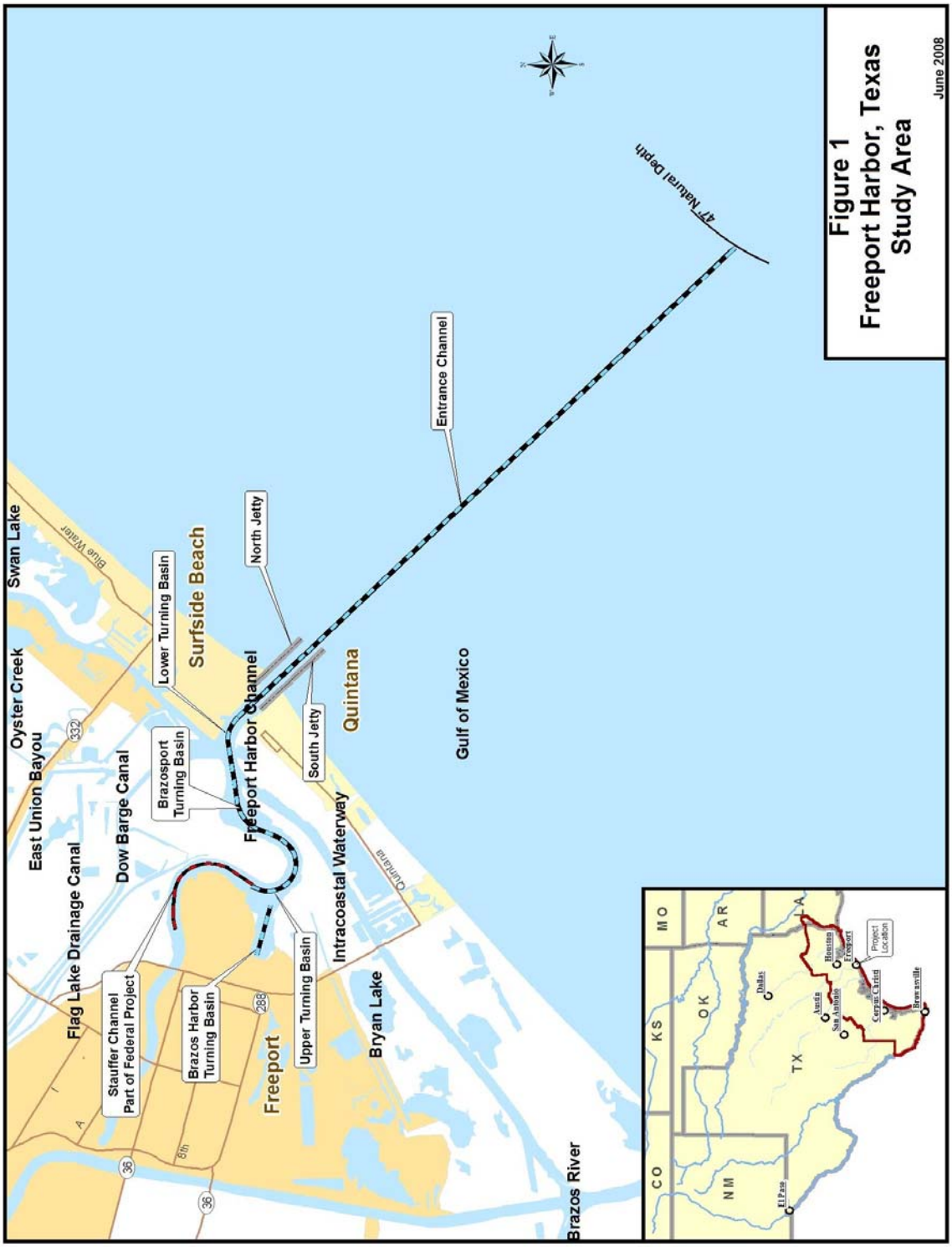
The existing authorized depth for the Freeport Harbor Channel is 45 feet mean low tide (MLT). The navigation datum of U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) MLT was established by the USACE and is usually below mean low low water (MLLW). In the Freeport Harbor area, MLT is 0.44 foot less than MLLW. Project widths of the channel range from 400 feet from the Gulf to the Brazosport Turning Basin to 200 feet for the Brazos Harbor Channel. Brazos Harbor Channel and Turning Basin are 36 feet MLT. The deauthorized Stauffer Channel measures 200 feet wide with a depth of approximately 18 feet (authorized at 30 feet) MLT. The tidal range for Freeport Harbor is typically 2 feet. Construction of the existing 45-foot Freeport Harbor Project was completed in 1993.

The size of ships has steadily increased such that vessels have to be light-loaded to traverse the waterway. The current channel depth requires that large crude carriers remain offshore and transfer their cargo into smaller crude tankers for the remainder of the voyage.

This comprehensive navigation study investigates the feasibility of improving the Freeport Harbor Channel. This section of the report identifies the study authority, scope, participants and coordination, related studies, and study process.

1.1 PURPOSE AND AUTHORITY

The purpose of this study is to develop and evaluate alternatives for navigation problems that directly affect the Freeport Harbor Channel. To allow for a more effective, safe, and efficient waterway, the study is focused on eliminating the major problems contributing to inefficiencies on the waterway, such as insufficient channel depth and width, as determined by fleet forecasts and the requirement for one-way traffic in the channel. The study also identifies new economic benefits associated with proposed channel modifications and recommends alternatives that maximize these benefits. Authority for the study is contained in Section 216 of the 1970 Flood Control Act.


Swan Lake
Oyster Creek
East Union Bayou
Flag Lake Drainage Canal
Dow Barge Canal
Blue Water
Lower Turning Basin
Surfside Beach
North Jetty
Brazosport Turning Basin
Freeport Harbor Channel
South Jetty
Quintana
Gulf of Mexico
Entrance Channel
47' Natural Depth
Stauffer Channel Part of Federal Project
Brazos Harbor Turning Basin
Freeport
Upper Turning Basin
Intracoastal Waterway
Bryan Lake
Brazos River
Figure 1
Freeport Harbor, Texas
Study Area
June 2008
CO
KS
MO
AR
OK
NM
TX
LA
El Paso
Dallas
Austin
San Antonio
Houston
Freeport
Corpus Christi
Brownsville
Project Location

Section 216. The Secretary of the Army, acting through the Chief of Engineers, is authorized to review the operation of projects the construction of which has been completed and which were constructed by the Corps of Engineers in the interest of navigation, flood control, water supply, and related purposes, when found advisable due to significantly changed physical or economic conditions, and to report thereon to Congress with recommendations on the advisability of modifying the structures or their operation, and for improving the quality of the environment in the overall public interest.

This feasibility study is being conducted to determine whether navigation problems currently being experienced at Freeport Harbor are in the Federal interest and to provide the documentation needed to recommend Congressional authorization and funding for construction of that project.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF THE FREEPORT AREA

Freeport Harbor is located immediately south of the city of Freeport in Brazoria County, Texas, on the middle Texas coast. One of the earliest ports on the Texas coast, a harbor was developed at the mouth of the Brazos River, which was subsequently diverted to the west into Matagorda Bay about 6 miles above Freeport, resulting in a ship channel that receives no natural freshwater inflow from the river. The channel and harbor are heavily developed with industrial and commercial properties. Freeport is about 50 miles southwest of Houston. The cities of Surfside Beach and Quintana are found on the Gulf shore east and west of the jettied Entrance Channel, respectively. Although extensive coastal marshes are found along this part of the Texas coast, the immediate project area is heavily developed with limited natural resources remaining.

For purposes of Draft Environmental Impact Statement (DEIS) development and analysis, the term "project area" is used to refer to the project footprint and area of direct project impact, defined as the ship channel and dredge disposal sites, including a 1-mile radius around these project features. A broader "study area" incorporates the area of indirect impacts and areas defined by regulation or individual resource. For example, for air conformity purposes, the study area includes the seven counties of the Harris-Galveston-Brazoria (HGB) Ozone Nonattainment Area, while for endangered species purposes, the study area is defined as Brazoria County and the Gulf of Mexico. The study area includes the extensive and rich marsh and estuarine resources of the Texas midcoast, largely lacking from the ship channel project area. The following discussion provides information first on the broader midcoastal study area, then focuses in on the ship channel project area and addresses the resources directly impacted by the project and project mitigation.

1.3 STUDY AREA DESCRIPTION: THE GENERAL FREEPORT AREA ENVIRONMENTAL SETTING

Freeport is located on the Gulf Coastal Plain, which is extremely flat, rising from about 3 feet above sea level behind the beaches to about 15 feet 15 miles inland. The primary physiographic environments of the study area include fluvial deltaic systems, barrier island strandplain systems, and aeolian (wind) systems. The coastal zone within the study area is underlain by sedimentary deposits that originated in ancient, but similar, physiographic environments. These ancient sediments were deposited by the same natural processes that are currently active in shaping the present coastline, such as longshore drift, beach wash, wind deflation and deposition, tidal currents, wind-generated waves and currents, delta outbuilding, and river point bar and flood deposition.

Tidal circulation and mixing in the Gulf of Mexico near Freeport is the result of a complex interaction of tides, meteorological driving forces, freshwater inflows, and Coriolis acceleration. The generally westerly longshore current in the northwestern Gulf of Mexico dominates the hydrodynamic regime near Freeport, resulting in sediment transport to the southwest, which causes shoaling into the Freeport Harbor Entrance (Outer Bar and Jetty) Channel.

The climate of the Freeport area is humid subtropical with warm to hot summers and mild winters. The dominant air mass in summer is marine tropical in which sea breezes moderate afternoon heat. Occasional showers or thunderstorms are common during this season. Winters are mild with considerable day-to-day variation between the marine tropical air mass and modified continental polar and marine polar air masses. Periods of freezing temperatures are infrequent and usually last no longer than 2 or 3 days.

Rainfall averages about 43 inches annually at Freeport. The annual rainfall distribution is greater for the early summer and fall periods and least for the winter and late summer. Two principal wind regimes dominate the area and include persistent southeasterly winds occurring from March through November and strong, short-lived northerly winds from December through February. Severe weather occurs periodically in the area in the form of thunderstorms, tornadoes, and tropical storms or hurricanes.

The study area is characterized as Quaternary (Recent and Holocene) Alluvium containing thick deposits of clay, silt, sand, and gravel, overlying the Pleistocene-aged Beaumont Formation. These formations consist mainly of stream channel, point bar, natural levee, and backswamp deposits associated with former and current river channels and bayous. The Alluvium outcrops in a belt approximately 70 to 90 miles wide paralleling the Texas coastline. The underlying Beaumont Formation is estimated to be less than 1,000 feet thick and consists mostly of clay, silt, sand, and gravel. Subsidence is estimated to be 2.65 millimeters per year (mm/yr), and

relative sea level rise (RSLR) is projected to be between 0.5 mm/yr and 2.65 mm/yr (DEIS Appendix L).

The Gulf Coast Aquifer system is the principal source of groundwater for public, agricultural, and industrial needs in the Freeport area. Within the aquifer system, the Chicot Aquifer is the uppermost aquifer, and all public and private water-supply wells in the area are supplied by this aquifer (Texas Water Development Board [TWDB], 2007). The Evangeline Aquifer underlies the Chicot and is noted for its abundance of good-quality groundwater and is considered one of the most prolific aquifers in the Texas Coastal Plain (Baker, 1979), but is not used in the Freeport area.

1.3.1 Air Quality

Freeport is included in the eight-county HGB Ozone Nonattainment Area, which is in attainment or unclassified for all criteria pollutants except ozone and is classified as having "severe" nonattainment with the 1-hour and the 8-hour National Ambient Air Quality Standards (NAAQS) for ozone. Under the "severe" attainment designation, the HGB has a deadline of June 15, 2019, for attainment of the 8-hour ozone standard. The 1-hour attainment is still pending (40 CFR, Part 81) (Federal Register, Vol. 73, No. 191). Because the proposed project is located in the HGB nonattainment area for ozone, a General Conformity Determination was prepared and the tentatively Recommended Plan was found to be in conformity with the current State Implementation Plan (SIP) (Texas Commission on Environmental Quality [TCEQ], 2007). This conformity determination will have to be revisited due to an update of the project work plan that will result in a change in the estimated air emissions from the project.

1.3.2 Fish and Wildlife Resources

The study area contains estuarine, wetland, and upland habitats that support a variety of fish and wildlife resources. Since the study area has tidal and freshwater habitats, wildlife species are diverse. The area also supports productive sport and commercial fishing. Due to the diversity of bird life, bird watching is an important recreational activity.

Upland Resources. The study area supports a diverse population of upland wildlife species. Uplands include developed areas, dunes and relict beach ridges, grassland/pastures, scrub-shrub vegetation, and woodlands. An important ecosystem that occurs within the study area is the Columbia Bottomlands, which is located in the floodplains of the Brazos, San Bernard, and Colorado rivers north and west of Freeport. The Columbia Bottomlands support uplands and wetlands including marshes, forested wetlands, small-scattered prairies, and bottomland hardwood forests that are important stopping points for migratory birds of the Central and Mississippi flyways.

The immediate study area and vicinity support an abundant and diverse avifauna. Common species of potential occurrence in the study area include great blue heron, great egret, snowy egret, little blue heron, white ibis, roseate spoonbill, clapper rail, grebes, pelicans, cormorants, ducks, geese, hawks, rails, plovers, sandpipers, gulls, doves, owls, hummingbirds, swallows, purple martins, wrens, thrushes, mockingbirds, blackbirds, grackles, cowbirds, and others.

Common terrestrial mammals include the Virginia opossum, various rodents, eastern cottontail, raccoon, striped skunk, coyote, bobcat, and white-tailed deer. Terrestrial amphibian and reptile species of potential occurrence in the study area include Blanchard's cricket frog, Gulf Coast toad, green treefrog, American bullfrog, small-mouthed salamander, western diamond-backed rattlesnake, cotton-mouthed moccasin, American alligator, diamondback terrapin, and other species.

National wildlife refuges within the study area include the Brazoria and San Bernard. In addition to the two Federal refuges, there is a state wildlife management area (Justin Hurst) located about 5 miles west of Freeport. Local sanctuaries include the Neotropical Bird Sanctuary and the Xeriscape Park administered by the town of Quintana.

Aquatic Resources. The study area consists of both marine and freshwater ecosystems that support ecological diversity and abundance. A general overview of the marine and freshwater resources present within the study area is described below.

Marine Resources. The entire food chain of open-water areas is dependent on the microscopic plankton that provide an abundant food source for fish and other marine life. The open-water bottom is dominated by benthic organisms, including epifauna, such as crabs and smaller crustaceans, and infauna, such as mollusks and polychaetes. These organisms support other important resources including Essential Fish Habitat (EFH), which is defined as those waters and substrate necessary to fish for spawning, breeding, feeding, or growth to maturity. The study area is located in an area that has been identified as EFH for juvenile and adult brown, pink, and white shrimp and juvenile and adult gray snapper, red drum, Spanish mackerel, and others. EFH for the species known to occur in the study area includes estuarine emergent wetlands, estuarine mud, sand, and shell substrates, estuarine water column, and nonvegetated bottom.

Coastal Wetland Resources. Study area coastal wetlands (saline to freshwater) provide essential habitat for fish, shellfish, and other wildlife. Coastal wetlands also serve to filter and process agricultural and urban runoff and buffer coastal areas against storm and wave damage. Wetland plant communities that occur in the study area include submerged aquatic vegetation (SAV) including shoalgrass and widgeongrass; estuarine salt and brackish marshes of smooth cordgrass, saltgrass, bulrush, and glasswort; estuarine tidal flats with less than 30 percent vegetative cover of glasswort, saltwort, and shoregrass; freshwater aquatic vegetation including invasives like water hyacinth and natives like arrowhead; and freshwater marshes including

spikerush, flat-sedge, rushes, smartweed, coastal water-hyssop, seashore paspalum, bulrush, and cattails.

1.3.3 Threatened, Endangered, and Protected Species

A number of threatened, endangered, or protected species may occur in the study area including the whooping crane, piping plover, bald eagle, peregrine falcon, reddish egret, white-faced ibis, wood stork, white-tailed hawk, and possibly the sooty tern. The green, loggerhead, Kemp's ridley, and hawksbill sea turtles may occur in the study area and could be negatively impacted by dredging. A Biological Assessment (BA) addressing these species and potential impacts is included as Appendix I in the DEIS.

1.3.4 Cultural Resources

Numerous cultural resource investigations, both terrestrial and marine, have been performed in the project area resulting in a well-developed cultural history for this portion of the Texas coast. The aboriginal inhabitants of this region seasonally exploited the Brazos River for its maritime and mainland resources; early European mariners utilized the mouth of the Brazos as a riverine passage to mercantile trade; and the nineteenth-century Austin colonists developed the mouth of the Brazos into commercial and social centers. Therefore, cultural resources characteristic of this area range from prehistoric shell middens to early European shipwrecks to historic period sites such as Fort Velasco and the towns of Quintana and Velasco.

1.3.5 Socioeconomic Considerations

The study area lies within the HGB Statistical Metropolitan Area. The economy of the Freeport area is broadly based in manufacturing, agriculture, and fishing. The development of improved port transportation facilities along the ship channel has allowed greater export of agricultural products and handling of petroleum products. Port Freeport ranked as the 26th largest port in the United States in terms of total tonnage in 2008. Approximately 900 deep-draft vessels call at Port Freeport annually. Most large ship traffic consists of crude or chemical tankers. Containerships also call at Port Freeport. Based on the American Association of Port Authorities, the port handled approximately 72,000 Total Equivalent Units (TEUs) in 2008.

The discovery of oil and natural gas in the area promoted a broad industrial base. Consequently, Freeport has one of the largest petrochemical complexes in the world. Industrial development in the area consists of plants devoted to producing and refining petroleum and petroleum products, petrochemicals, chemical derivatives, and primary metals. Related industries include offshore service vessels, drilling rigs, offshore producing platforms, and offshore service equipment.

Commercial and recreational fishing is also important to the regional economy. The fisheries found in the study area are generally classified as estuarine or marine. The most important

commercially harvested species that inhabit estuarine and coastal waters in the study area are brown and white shrimp, southern flounder, and blue crabs. Recreational fish catches include speckled trout, redfish, sand trout, southern flounder, black drum, and shrimp and crabs in the inshore area. Offshore catches include ling, red snapper, amberjack, king mackerel, and Spanish mackerel. Scattered reefs of Eastern oysters are present in areas east of Freeport surrounding Oyster Creek, and scattered oysters are found in many of the nearby open-water areas including Swan and Bryan lakes; however, oysters are not commercially harvested.

The Freeport area is a popular recreational area, and tourism is an important aspect of the local economy. Recreational fishing, hunting, and birding have emerged as important factors in the area economy since the 1960s. The diversity of coastal habitats in the Freeport area supports a large diversity of shore birds, while the large number of adjacent shallow lakes and grain fields create an ideal habitat for waterfowl and migratory birds.

Brazoria County's population increased from 191,707 in 1990 to 241,767 in 2000, with a rate of increase higher than the state. The county's population was estimated at 249,832 in 2001. Freeport increased from 11,845 in 1990 to 12,814 in 2000. The Brazosport area increased from approximately 40,000 in 1970 to 70,000 in 2000. These population increases have been driven primarily by the development of the petrochemical industry since 1940, with recent contributions by tourism. Projections by the Texas State Data Center indicate that the county will reach a population of 416,157 in 2040.

1.4 PROJECT AREA DESCRIPTION

The project area for the Freeport Harbor Channel Improvement Project is the existing Freeport Harbor 45-foot navigation project, including the construction footprint of the tentatively Recommended Plan, the existing New Work and Maintenance Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Sites (ODMDSs), and the three upland confined Placement Areas (PAs) (existing PA 1 and newly designated PAs 8 and 9), plus a 1-mile radius around all of these project features (figures 2 and 18). The existing and proposed project is geographically divided into four main channel segments and associated reaches: the Outer Bar Channel and reaches, Main Channel and reaches, Brazos Harbor Channel, and Stauffer Channel. Figure 2 shows the Freeport Harbor main channels and existing PAs. The existing authorized project dimensions are shown in Table 1.

1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL SETTING

The Gulf of Mexico and the Lower Turning Basin bound the Outer Bar Channel. The North and South jetties that protect a portion of the Outer Bar Channel are 7,700 and 6,640 feet long, respectively, and extend into the Gulf from the beachfront communities of Surfside Beach and Quintana, stabilizing the original river mouth at Freeport. The Main Channel reaches extend westerly and then northerly, connecting a series of turning basins beginning downstream at the Lower Turning Basin, then proceeding upstream to the Brazosport and Upper turning basins.

Figure 2

Freeport Harbor Channel

Prepared for: USACE, Galveston District	
Job No.: 044164800	Scale: 1 inch equals 4,200 feet
Prepared by: A.Christiansen	Date: 09/23/2009

N:/Clients/U_Z/USACE/Projects/Freeport/044164800/geo/figs/Fig_1_1_1_wo_chan_extension.mxd

(This page left blank intentionally.)

Table 1
Authorized Freeport Harbor Dimensions

Channel Segment	Depth (feet)	Width (feet)	Length (miles)
Outer Bar Channel			
Outer Bar Channel	47	400	3.03
Jetty Channel	45	400	0.83
Lower Turning Basin	45	750	0.14
Main Channel			
Channel to Brazosport Turning Basin	45	400	1.20
Brazosport Turning Basin	45	1,000	0.19
Channel to Upper Turning Basin	45	350–375	1.35
Upper Turning Basin	45	1,200	0.23
Brazos Harbor			
Channel to Brazos Harbor	36	200	0.51
Brazos Harbor Turning Basin	36	750	0.13
Stauffer Channel (Deauthorized)			
Channel to Stauffer Turning Basin	30	200	1.15
Stauffer Turning Basin	30	500	0.09

In general, the landward portion of the project area encompasses areas dominated by industrial, commercial, and residential development with some recreation areas, as well as scattered agricultural land and some remnant marshes, all of which are centered around the Freeport Harbor Channel. Prior to the diversion of the Brazos River, the channel was the mouth of the Brazos River. Currently, the Freeport Harbor Channel extends into the Gulf, with no associated bay or estuary, and dead-ends upstream just before reaching State Highway (SH) 288, after passing through the city of Freeport. The community of Surfside Beach is located immediately northeast of the Freeport Harbor Jetty Channel, and Quintana is located immediately to the southwest. Both communities are small beachfront residential areas along public-access beaches. Surfside Beach has been affected by erosion, with homes currently being removed from the beach in efforts to proceed with beach nourishment and shoreline stabilization projects. Quintana is located adjacent to the Seaway upland confined dredged material disposal area and the Freeport Liquefied Natural Gas (LNG) facility. Just past that facility, the Gulf Intracoastal Waterway (GIWW) crosses Freeport Harbor Channel. From that point, industrial complexes, such as Dow Chemical Company and ConocoPhillips Petroleum facilities, line the banks of the channel until the transition into the city of Freeport. Brazos Harbor, located west of the Upper Turning Basin, contains the majority of port facilities.

The Stauffer Channel extends from the Upper Turning Basin upstream to the Stauffer Turning Basin (see Figure 2). The Stauffer Channel was authorized as a 30-x-200-foot channel. This channel was deauthorized in 1974 under Section 12 of the Water Resources Development Act of 1974 (Public Law [PL] 93-251). No objections to deauthorization were raised at the time. Various commercial fishery, marine businesses, and recreational facilities are located along the Stauffer Channel. Several pipelines also cross the existing navigation project channel, but all are of sufficient depth and will not be impacted by proposed channel improvements.

The shoreline on both the Surfside Beach (northern) and Quintana Beach (southern) areas has changed substantially over the last 150 years. Most of the Texas shoreline is now in retreat because of RSLR and a reduced supply of sand from changes to the Mississippi and Atchafalaya river systems and from reservoirs built on Texas rivers. A major shoreline change factor for the Freeport area was the Brazos River diversion in 1929 to control excessive dredging requirements in Port Freeport. The relocation had the unanticipated side effect of moving the main source of sediment away from the immediate project area beaches. Another factor has been reservoir development in the Brazos River watershed that, while essential for water supply and flood control, has greatly reduced the sand supply at the relocated Brazos River mouth. The biggest rate of shoreline change occurs with severe storms.

Other major factors are RSLR that moves the shoreline inland and a movement of sand from the beach inland by aeolian drift (wind) aggravated by beach vehicle traffic. Finally, there has been the interception of sand from the longshore system by the navigation channel and jetties. The jetties act as groins to block longshore sediment movement, but some material gets around and through the jetties and must be periodically dredged from the Freeport Harbor Outer Bar and Jetty channels.

1.5.1 Fish and Wildlife Resources

It should be noted that because of urban and industrial development over many decades, habitat types in much of the project area have been disturbed to the point where original species composition and diversity found prior to major development no longer exist. Consequently, much of the project area and the project footprint is devoid of significant biological resources and sensitive habitats, and has low ecological value.

Upland Resources. Natural habitats within the project footprint are highly fragmented due to human disturbance. Upland areas immediately along the ship channel contain broadly scattered grasses, sparse stands of shrub vegetation including invasive salt cedar and big leaf sumpweed, as well as small fringes of giant reed. Grasslands that may occur within the project area include pastures dominated by introduced species including bermudagrass and bahiagrass. Remnant coastal prairie plant species including little bluestem, brownseed paspalum, indiangrass, rosettegrass, and thin paspalum may still be found on the converted pasturelands used for grazing

and haying. There are also fragmented and often isolated wetlands, flooded borrow pits, ditches, and other open-water areas in the project area.

Two proposed upland PAs (PAs 8 and 9) would be required for both new work and maintenance material from the tentatively Recommended Plan. These proposed new PAs are located northwest of the ship channel, west of the Brazos River Diversion Channel, and north of SH 36, and are currently used as pasture. Construction of PA 9 would impact 39 acres of ephemeral freshwater wetlands in the pasture, and 21 acres of riparian forest adjacent to the Brazos River Diversion Channel.

Marine Resources. The project area is located in an area that has been identified as EFH for juvenile and adult brown, pink, and white shrimp and juvenile and adult gray snapper, red drum, Spanish mackerel, and others. EFH that occurs within the project footprint include marine water column and marine nonvegetated bottoms. Although there are a few areas of quality EFH within the project area, the habitat within the project footprint in the Freeport Harbor Channel and areas immediately adjacent to the project footprint is dominated by industrial, commercial, and residential development, which does not represent high-quality EFH. Additionally, marine water column and marine nonvegetated bottoms occur in abundance within the project area and are, therefore, not unique to the area.

Coastal Wetland Resources. The majority of marsh habitat found in the project area does not have a direct hydrologic connection to the Freeport Harbor Channel. Within the project footprint, there are no estuarine or forested wetlands, estuarine tidal flats, freshwater flats, beach or dune habitat, and no SAV.

1.5.2 Threatened and Endangered Species

There are 31 federally threatened, endangered, or protected wildlife species and 9 National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS)–designated wildlife species of concern (SOC) of potential occurrence in Brazoria County, Texas. Of these, 13 are of possible occurrence in the project area and include the smalltooth sawfish, green sea turtle, hawksbill sea turtle, Kemp's ridley sea turtle, leatherback sea turtle, loggerhead sea turtle, piping plover, whooping crane, blue whale, fin (or finback) whale, humpback whale, Sei whale, and the sperm whale (*Physeter macrocephalus*). Of these species, only the sea turtles and piping plover may be affected by construction of the proposed project.

Nine wildlife species are identified by NMFS as SOC: ivory bush coral (*Oculina varicosa*), dusky shark (*Carcharhinus obscurus*), largetooth sawfish (*Pristis pristis*), night shark (*Carcharhinus signatus*), saltmarsh topminnow (*Fundulus jenkinsi*), sand tiger shark (*Carcharias taurus*), speckled hind (*Epinephelus drummondhayi*), Warsaw grouper (*Epinephelus nigritus*), and the white marlin (*Tetrapturus albidus*). These species, while listed by NMFS as SOC, do

not receive Federal protection under the Endangered Species Act (ESA) and are unlikely to be found in the project area.

Both green sea turtles and Kemp's ridley sea turtles are known to occur in the project area. Several Kemp's ridley nests have been found in the study area. One nest was found on Quintana Beach in 2002, and another was found near Surfside Beach in 2003 (Yeargan, 2006). In 2006, one nest was found on Surfside Beach (Echols, 2006), while two nests were found on Surfside Beach and one on Bryan Beach in 2007 (National Park Service [NPS], 2007). The USACE Sea Turtle Data Warehouse (USACE, 2008) documents the taking of two Kemp's ridley turtles within the Freeport Harbor Entrance Channel in 2007.

The bald eagle is present year-round in Texas, including breeding, wintering, and migrating birds. Although the bald eagle is delisted under the ESA, it receives protection under the Migratory Bird Treaty Act and the Bald Eagle Protection Act. While the species is likely to be present in Brazoria County, it is unlikely to be found in the project area because of lack of suitable habitat.

The threatened piping plover is a small shorebird that inhabits coastal beaches and tidal flats. Approximately 35 percent of the known global population of piping plovers winters along the Texas Gulf Coast, where they spend 60 to 70 percent of the year (Campbell, 1995; Haig and Elliott-Smith, 2004). The piping plover population that winters in Texas breeds on the northern Great Plains and around the Great Lakes. The species is a common migrant and rare to uncommon winter resident on the upper Texas coast (Lockwood and Freeman, 2004; Richardson et al., 1998). The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) has designated revised critical habitat for the species in its Texas wintering range (50 CFR Part 17, Vol. 74, No. 95:23476–23524, May 19, 2009). Critical Habitat Unit TX-33 encompasses approximately 211 acres between the mouth of the Brazos River and Farm-to-Market Road (FM) 1495 and includes Bryan Beach and adjacent beach habitat (74 FR 23475-2360066 FR 17; 36142), which occurs in the study area. Although critical habitat does not occur in the project area, piping plovers are likely to occur on the Gulf beaches of the project area.

A BA has been prepared to coordinate potential impacts to these species, and concludes that the proposed project is likely to adversely affect the green, hawksbill, and Kemp's ridley sea turtles, and may affect but is not likely to adversely affect the loggerhead sea turtle. Since construction will not impact the Gulf beaches of the project area, the BA concludes that the proposed project will have no effect on the piping plover.

1.5.3 Water and Sediment Quality

TCEQ has designated the old Brazos River Channel Tidal (Freeport Harbor) as Segment 1111. This segment covers a portion of the project area. The designated uses for Segment 1111 are contact recreation (swimming) and high-quality aquatic habitat. Historical sediment analyses

reveal no contaminant issues regarding sediment quality in the project area. Analyses indicate that both maintenance and new work dredged material are safe for potential beneficial uses if beneficial uses were feasible, and safe for upland and ocean placement.

1.5.4 Noise

Noise levels in the project area are elevated compared to undeveloped areas along the coast and are affected by petrochemical industry operations, vessel navigation, and vehicular traffic in the Freeport Harbor area.

The magnitude of noise is usually described by its sound pressure, usually in decibels (dB), and dB values are further defined in terms of frequency-weighted scales (A, B, C, or D). The A-weighted scale is most commonly used in environmental noise measurements because it places most emphasis on the frequency range detected by the human ear (1,000–6,000 hertz). Sound levels measured using A-weighting are often expressed as dBA.

Although the vast majority of land use along the ship channel is dominated by commercial and industrial uses, noise-sensitive receivers such as single-family residences, recreational vehicle parks, and recreational areas do occur on both sides of the channel in the communities of Quintana, Surfside Beach, and Freeport.

At a distance of 0.5 mile from the channel, noise levels measured at noise-sensitive receivers within Quintana were found to range from approximately 49 to 61 dBA. The average, ambient outside noise level recorded within Quintana was 55 dBA, which is similar to the goal set by agencies for the outdoor noise environment in residential areas. Maintenance dredging currently occurs on the Freeport Harbor Channel approximately every 10 months and generally includes use of a hopper dredge, which typically produces 87 dBA at 50 feet. The nearest noise-sensitive receivers affected by existing channel maintenance activities are located within Surfside Beach Jetty Park, which is approximately 220 feet from the channel centerline, and the nearest residences at Surfside Beach are located approximately 880 feet from the channel centerline. Worst-case noise levels related to maintenance dredging operations were calculated to be approximately 75 dBA at the Surfside Beach Jetty Park and 63 dBA at Surfside Beach's nearest residences.

1.5.5 Hazardous, Toxic, and Radioactive Waste

A Hazardous, Toxic, and Radioactive Waste (HTRW) assessment was conducted for the project area, in accordance with USACE document Engineering Regulation (ER) 1165-2-132, Water Resource Policies and Authorities–Hazardous, Toxic, and Radioactive Waste (HTRW) Guidance for Civil Works Projects. The purpose of the assessment was to identify "the existence of, and potential for HTRW contamination on lands in the project area, or external contamination which could impact, or be impacted by the proposed project." The findings and recommendations

presented in the HTRW assessment are based on information derived from a review of historic aerial photographs, interviews with persons knowledgeable of the area, a review of regulatory agency databases, and a site visit. The assessment revealed that several HTRW sources exist at upland industries that line the banks of the Freeport Harbor Channel. Although these sources exist upland, no active enforcement actions were under way and no HTRW sites were located within the project area footprint. More-detailed information regarding the HTRW assessment can be found in Appendix D-1 of the DEIS that accompanies this document.

1.5.6 Prime and Unique Farmland

A total of six soil series are located within existing PA 1 and proposed PAs 8 and 9. These series include Surfside clay, Velasco clay, Brazoria clay, Clemville silty clay loam, Norwood silt loam, and Pledger clay. Of these series, PA 9 is composed primarily of Brazoria clay, with lesser amounts of Clemville silty clay loam (northeast), Norwood silt loam (east), and Pledger clay (south). All these soils are nearly level nonsaline soils used primarily as pastureland and cropland.

Prime farmland soils are defined by the Secretary of Agriculture as those soils that have the best combination of physical and chemical characteristics for producing food, feed, forage, fiber, and oilseed crops. The soil quality, growing season, and moisture supply are available to economically produce sustained high yield of crops when treated and managed, including water management, according to acceptable farming methods. Some soils are considered prime farmland in their native state, and others are considered prime farmland only if they are drained or watered well enough to grow the main crops in the area. There are no designated “unique farmlands” in the State of Texas.

The soils located in PA 9 are classified as prime farmlands, while those in PA 8 are not. Construction of PA 9 will impact approximately 250 acres of prime farmland. Coordination with National Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) regarding these impacts has determined that the site’s score is below the 160 threshold for additional coordination.

1.5.7 Cultural Resources

Both marine and terrestrial archeological surveys were conducted for areas of new construction in the project area. Archival research and field surveys identified potential remains of a Civil War Confederate gun battery at proposed PA 9. No cultural resources were identified at proposed PA 8. A Programmatic Agreement (PAg) was executed among the USACE, Port Freeport, and the Texas State Historic Preservation Officer (SHPO) to ensure compliance with Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act for these resources. Further investigation of the potential Civil War gun battery would be undertaken during development of plans and specifications for this project.

1.6 NON-FEDERAL SPONSOR AND COORDINATION

The District Engineer, Galveston District, USACE, is responsible for the overall management of the study and report preparation. Port Freeport is the non-Federal sponsor for the study. The Brazos River Harbor Navigation District (not Port Freeport) was created in 1925 by the Texas State Legislature. It was created to make improvements for the navigation of inland and coastal waters, for the preservation and conservation of inland and coastal waters for navigation and for control and distribution of storm and flood waters of rivers and streams in aid of navigation. It was organized and incorporated under the laws of the State of Texas, but is not a State agency. The study is being coordinated with interested Federal, State, and local agencies and the public. The following are some of the agencies and groups that provided input during preparation of the report:

1.6.1 Federal Agencies

- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS)
- U.S. National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS)
- U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
- U.S. Coast Guard (USCG)

1.6.2 State Agencies

- Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ)
- Texas General Land Office (GLO)
- Texas Parks and Wildlife Department (TPWD)
- State Historic Preservation Officer (SHPO)
- Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT)
- Texas Railroad Commission (TRRC)

1.6.3 Regional, County, and Local Agencies

- Port Freeport

1.6.4 Other Interests

- Brazos Pilots Association (BPA)

In addition, representatives of numerous firms involved in navigation as well as special-interest groups and individuals provided input to the study.

1.7 PRIOR AUTHORIZATIONS

The original project for Federal improvement at Freeport was authorized by the River and Harbor Act (RHA) of June 14, 1880, which provided for construction of jetties for controlling and improving the channel over the bar at the mouth of the Brazos River. The work was started in 1881 and continued until 1886 when operations were suspended for lack of funds. Partial construction of the jetties was accomplished, but the work was not successful in obtaining an adequate depth over the bar. On March 28, 1899, the Brazos River Channel and Dock Company, under authority granted by the RHA of August 21, 1888, started work to provide a navigation channel at the mouth of the Brazos River and thence inland between the banks of the river. The company was unable to finance completion of the work, and on April 25, 1899, in accordance with requirements of the RHA of March 3, 1899, transferred all its works, rights, and privileges to the United States. This constituted the initial authorization for the existing project for Freeport Harbor.

The Federal project known as Freeport Harbor, Texas, is an improvement of the original mouth of the Brazos River that provides for a deep-draft waterway from the Gulf of Mexico to the city of Freeport. A diversion dam about 7.5 miles above the original river mouth and a diversion channel rerouting the Brazos River from the dam to an outlet in the Gulf about 6.5 miles southwest of the original mouth now make Freeport Harbor entirely tidal.

The Freeport Harbor waterway has an overall length of about 7.6 miles from deep water in the Gulf of Mexico to the Brazos Harbor Turning Basin. The Stauffer Channel was dredged originally by local interests to a depth of 25 feet over a bottom width of 300 feet, with a 500-foot square basin area. The RHA of 1935 incorporated the channel into the Federal project and authorized its deepening to 30 feet over a bottom width of 200 feet, and deepening the basin to 30 feet. Prior to deauthorization in 1974, available depths were adequate for the using traffic, and the authorized 30-foot depth was not dredged.

The project also provides for construction of a navigation lock in the diversion dam by local interests, when required in the interest of commerce and navigation. The lock has not been required and at present is classified as an inactive element of the project.

The Freeport Harbor Project was authorized by the RHAs of May 1950 and July 1958. The RHAs provided for an Entrance Channel 38 feet deep and 300 feet wide from the Gulf of Mexico to a point inside the jetties and for inside channels 36 feet deep and 200 feet wide to and including the Upper Turning Basin. The 38/36-foot project was completed in 1962. Greater depth and width were authorized by Congress in 1970 (Section 101 of RHA of 1970, PL 91-611; House Document 289, 93rd Congress – 2nd Session, 31 Dec 1975) and by the President in 1974. These authorizations were for the Jetty Channel to be relocated and deepened to 45 feet, widened to 400 feet, and the North Jetty relocated northward. The relocated Outer Bar Channel was

authorized to a 400-foot width, to a 47-foot depth, and to extend approximately 4.6 miles into the Gulf. A Final Environmental Impact Statement (FEIS) for the project was prepared by the USACE in 1978 (USACE, 1978). In 1978, Seaway Pipeline, Inc., under a Department of Army permit, widened the Outer Bar Channel to 400 feet and the Jetty Channel to 230 feet.

The 45-foot channel was completed in 1993, including channel and turning basins dredging, relocation of the USCG station, construction of 3,700-foot North Jetty, construction of public use facilities, rehabilitation of the South Jetty and addition of 500 feet to the North Jetty, and adjustments to a bend near the project's Upper Turning Basin.

There are no bridges across the various channels of the Federal navigation project.

1.8 STUDY AND REPORT PROCESS

In October 2002, the USACE completed a Reconnaissance Report Section 905(b) Analysis for Freeport Harbor. This report concluded that channel modifications that would improve the efficiency and safety of the channels appeared feasible. The report recommended detailed studies to quantify the magnitude of the costs and benefits associated with several types of improvements.

This feasibility study follows the recommendations given in the Reconnaissance Report. It includes detailed analyses of a range of improvements and their effectiveness at improving efficiency and safety by allowing the use of larger, more-efficient vessels and reducing delays and vessel casualties. It also includes detailed assessments of environmental, social, and local economic effects of those improvements determined to be most viable from a national economic perspective. Results of this study form the basis for a decision on project implementation, including preconstruction design studies.

The study process provided for a systematic preparation and evaluation of alternate plans that address study area problems and opportunities. The process involved all of the six functional planning steps:

1. Specify Problems and Opportunities
2. Inventory and Forecast Conditions
3. Formulate Alternative Plans
4. Evaluate Effects of Alternative Plans
5. Compare Alternative Plans
6. Select Recommended Plan

The earlier Reconnaissance Report emphasized problem identification and formulation of alternatives. Emphasis in this Feasibility Report is on evaluation of alternatives, assessment of impacts, and selection of a recommended plan.

2.0 PROBLEM IDENTIFICATION

Existing water resources problems and needs for Freeport Harbor were identified through coordination with Federal and State agencies, area residents, waterway users, and the non-Federal sponsor. Most of the identified problems are not unique to Freeport but are common to many of the areas along the coast of Texas.

2.1 NAVIGATION AND COMMERCE

Since the completion of the 45-foot Project, the size of ships using the waterway has steadily increased so that many vessels currently have to be light-loaded to traverse the waterway. The current channel depth requires that large crude carriers remain offshore and transfer their cargo into smaller crude tankers for the remainder of the voyage. This lightering operation takes place in the Gulf of Mexico where the two ships, the mother ship and the lightering ship, come together so that the cargo transfer can take place. Although this operation has been going on for years, the possibility for a collision, oil spill, fire, or other adverse environmental consequences is always present. Deepening the channel will reduce the number of lightering operations. Current projections suggest that crude imports will increase throughout the period of evaluation. As these imports increase, the number of lightering vessels and product carriers will also increase, adding to the shipping delays and congestion.

2.1.1 Historical Traffic Overview

This provides an overview of recent historical traffic for the existing commodity base. The discussion is limited to crude petroleum, petroleum and chemical products, general and container cargo, and LNG. The most recent data year used is generally 2007. This is the latest data year available from the USACE "Waterborne Commerce of the U.S." publications. Data through 2008 are available from the U.S. Department of Energy. Inclusion of 2007 and 2008 data is based on availability and relevance to the presentation.

Freeport experienced strong growth over the past decade, with total tonnage increasing from an average of 16.1 million short tons for 1994–1995 to 28.5 million for 2004–2006. In 2007, Freeport ranked 27th in the Nation in terms of total tonnage, up from 38th in the early 1990s. In terms of foreign imports and exports, Freeport ranked 12th among U.S. ports in 2007, up from 25th in the early 1990s.[1] Approximately 85 percent of Freeport's current tonnage consists of deep-draft movements. The remaining 15 percent consists of shallow-draft GIWW traffic.

Table 2 presents Freeport's tonnage by major commodity groups through 2006. As indicated, petroleum, specifically crude petroleum, dominates total tonnage. Crude petroleum presently

[1] USACE, Waterborne Commerce of the U.S., Part 5, National Summary, Institute of Water Resources (IWR)-Waterborne Commerce Statistics Center (WCSC)-09, 2006-2007 and 1991-1993. Commodity-specific tonnages were not available for 2007 as of May 23, 2009.

represents 75 percent of 2004–2006 ocean-going tonnage. Freeport's crude petroleum imports represented an average of 3.9 percent of the U.S. total and 6.9 percent of Petroleum Administration Defense District (PADD) III. The combination of the channel-deepening project from 40 to 45 feet in the early 1990s and refinery expansions fostered a 178 percent increase in Freeport's crude imports from 1993 to 1998. Over the same period, PADD III imports increased 31 percent and U.S. imports increased by 28 percent. Since 1998, Freeport's growth has leveled and is more comparable to national and regional growth. Statistics published in Institute of Water Resources (IWR)-Waterborne Commerce Statistical Center (WCSC)-09 show Freeport's 2007 total tonnage at approximately 30 million short tons, down from 32 million in 2006. Preliminary data from the U.S. Department of Energy show that Freeport's crude oil imports were down in both 2007 and 2008 over 2006; however, review of the 2008 monthly data showed that Freeport crude oil imports were generally higher in 2008 than 2007 for all months except September when Hurricane Ike hit the region.

Table 2
Freeport Harbor Deep-Draft Tonnage (1,000s of short tons)
(1970–2007)

Year	Major Deep-draft Commodities						Total Ocean-going	Inland Waterway Barge Cargo	Total Tonnage
	Crude Oil Imports	Petroleum Products		Chemical Products		Other			
		Imports	Exports	Imports	Exports				
1970	0	0	0	0	1,082	1,209	2,291	2,992	5,283
1980	12,498	221	0	301	1,162	3,117	17,299	2,832	20,131
1990	5,472	17	26	149	1,093	3,407	10,164	4,330	14,494
1991	6,175	38	10	183	967	1,895	9,268	6,398	15,666
1992	5,891	53	14	163	871	2,761	9,753	5,200	14,953
1993	7,025	18	25	176	931	1,564	9,739	4,286	14,025
1994	10,073	259	17	187	1,431	1,483	13,450	4,000	17,450
1995	10,378	1,345	73	344	1,425	1,357	14,922	4,740	19,662
1996	15,074	1,887	27	275	1,418	1,199	19,880	4,691	24,571
1997	16,742	1,863	117	333	1,522	1,272	21,849	4,432	26,281
1998	19,527	1,825	46	255	1,724	1,175	24,552	4,462	29,014
1999	18,321	1,644	39	341	1,633	1,247	23,225	4,851	28,076
2000	19,770	2,054	45	379	2,217	1,685	26,150	4,835	30,985
2001	19,307	2,413	40	583	1,748	1,407	25,498	4,645	30,143
2002	18,019	736	119	663	1,907	1,119	22,563	4,601	27,164
2003	19,672	1,857	87	778	2,104	1,114	25,612	4,925	30,537
2004	20,602	2,873	91	835	2,622	2,093	29,116	4,792	33,908
2005	22,000	1,779	91	691	2,509	1,553	28,623	4,672	33,295
2006	21,706	1,080	109	705	2,551	1,420	27,571	4,576	32,147
2007	18,523	1,046	90	710	2,691	1,005	24,065	5,151	29,216

Source: USACE, Waterborne Commerce of the U.S., Part 2, 1970–2007.

The Port of Freeport is contained in a relatively large foreign trade zone (FTZ). The purpose of an FTZ is to attract and promote U.S. participation in international trade and commerce. Merchandise in an FTZ is considered to be outside the U.S. Customs territory. Therefore, the merchandise is subject to duty only when it leaves the FTZ for consumption in the U.S. market. If FTZ merchandise is exported, there is no duty liability. While in the FTZ, foreign merchandise and domestic merchandise may be stored, sold, exhibited, assembled, disassembled, repackaged, distributed, sorted, tested, graded, cleaned, mixed with other merchandise, otherwise manipulated, or destroyed. The merchandise may also undergo manufacturing operations. Merchandise subject to quota may be stored in an FTZ until a closed quota reopens.

Expansion of the Panama Canal is expected to have significant impacts on shipping routes, port development, cargo distribution, and a host of others to the U.S. maritime system. One of its greatest impacts will be felt in the fast-growing container trade where expansion will enable larger vessels to transit the canal. Vessel calls on the East and Gulf coasts are also expected to increase significantly as cargo shifts away from the congested West Coast. Expansion of the canal project is expected to be completed in 2014 and will coincide with the 2014–2064 period of analysis used for the Freeport Harbor evaluation.

2.1.2 Crude Petroleum Import Overview

Table 3 displays Freeport's crude petroleum imports and shows the port's share of the national and regional totals. Freeport's import growth relates to the pipeline distribution network with national links and regional connections from the channel's Seaway and ConocoPhillips terminals. The Seaway pipeline system provides a critical link in the crude oil supply chain for Central and Midwest refining centers.

During the 1990s, partnerships between ConocoPhillips, Texas Eastern Petroleum Pipeline Company (TEPPCO), Seaway, and ARCO authorized the construction of two new storage tanks at Phillips's Sweeny Tank Farm. The two new tanks expanded the shell tank storage capacity at Sweeny from 1.6 million barrels to 2.6 million barrels. The expansion increased the capacity of the Seaway crude system from approximately 223,000 barrels per day (BPD) to the current volume of 260,000 BPD. As indicated, these changes coincided with the completion of the 45-foot Project depth and offshore jetty expansion in the mid-1990s.

Approximately 25 percent of the crude oil imported to Freeport is sent from PADD III to PADD II. Significant volumes are also pipelined with PADD II, while less than 30 percent is refined at the ConocoPhillips refinery in Sweeny.

Table 3
Comparison of Freeport and Regional and National Totals
Crude Petroleum Imports (1,000s of short tons)

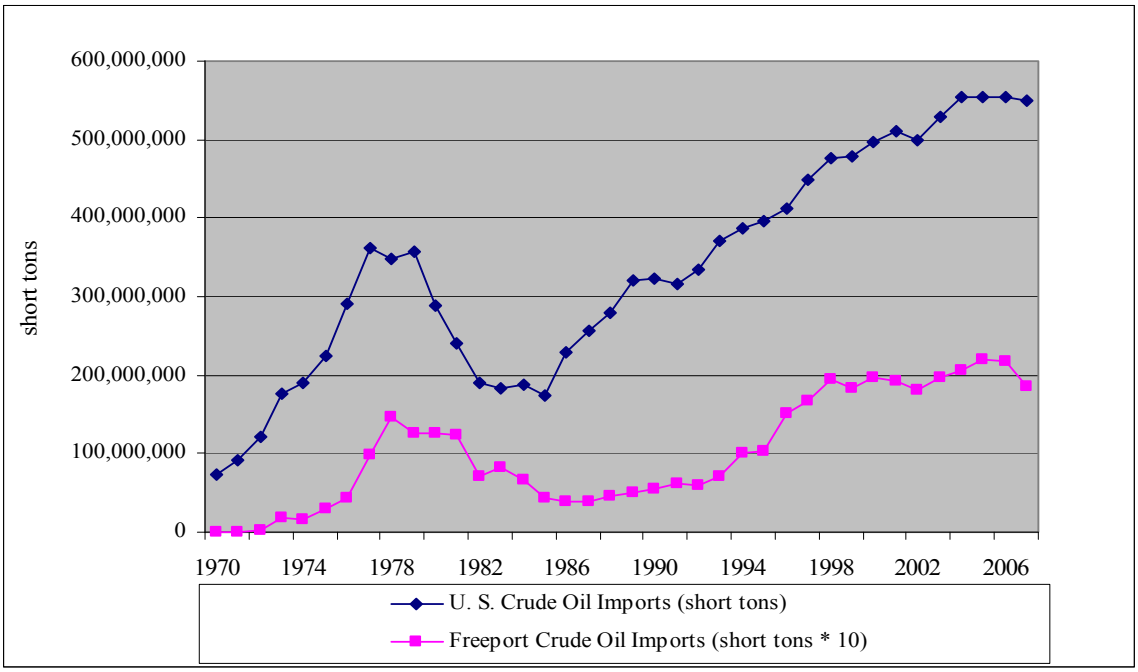
Year	Freeport Imports	PADD III Imports	U.S. Total Imports	Freeport % of	
				PADD III	U.S. Total
1990	5,472	178,052	322,433	3.1	1.7
1991	6,175	174,852	316,310	3.5	2.0
1992	5,891	184,871	333,666	3.2	1.8
1993	7,025	204,356	371,267	3.4	1.9
1994	10,073	221,020	386,381	4.6	2.6
1995	10,378	222,164	395,484	4.7	2.6
1996	15,074	237,708	411,824	6.3	3.7
1997	16,742	252,270	449,961	6.6	3.7
1998	19,527	267,175	476,231	7.3	4.1
1999	18,321	270,491	477,592	6.8	3.8
2000	19,770	281,170	497,547	7.0	4.0
2001	19,307	292,859	510,298	6.6	3.8
2002	18,019	282,226	499,999	6.4	3.6
2003	19,672	300,325	528,703	6.6	3.7
2004	20,602	316,402	553,337	6.5	3.7
2005	22,000	310,493	553,923	7.1	4.0
2006	21,706	309,399	553,489	7.0	3.9
2007	18,523	306,956	521,948	6.0	3.6
1995/97 Avg.	14,065	237,381	419,090	5.9	3.3
2005/07 Avg.	20,743	308,949	543,120	6.7	3.8
	1994/96 to 2004/2006 Compound Average Annual Growth (AAG) Rates (%)				
	4.0	2.7	2.6	1.3	1.4

Source: USACE and Energy Information Administration (EIA), 1990–2007.

While the Energy Information Administration (EIA) shows all of Freeport's crude oil imports being tied to ConocoPhillips's Sweeny refinery, the point of demarcation is one of two docks on the Freeport Harbor Channel. The Sweeny refinery receives crude oil through the Seaway and the ConocoPhillips docks on the Freeport Channel. Approximately 90 percent of Freeport's total crude oil ship tonnage is discharged at Seaway, the remaining 10 percent at the ConocoPhillips dock. Both the Seaway and ConocoPhillips terminals provide access to the regional and national pipeline network. The Sweeny refinery is 28 miles to the northwest of Freeport.

Expectations are that Freeport's imports will grow at rates generally comparable to the regional and national trends. This expectation is based on the study area's established infrastructure of regional and national pipeline distribution links. Comparison of the Freeport and U.S. 1970–2006 period relationship is illustrated on Figure 3.

Figure 3
U.S. and Freeport Crude Petroleum Imports (1970–2006)



Source: USACE, Waterborne Commerce of the U.S., Part 2, 1970–2006 and EIA.

2.1.3 Petroleum and Chemical Product Overview

Regional production includes petroleum products such as transportation fuels, such as gasoline, diesel fuel, and jet fuel, and chemical products such as sodium hydroxide, complex hydrocarbons, and ammonia. For 2004–2006, petroleum and chemical imports and exports totaled 5.3 million short tons. Freeport's products consist primarily of petroleum product imports and chemical exports. Petroleum products are distributed throughout the Midwest and southeastern United States by pipeline, barge, and railcar. Chemicals are primarily distributed by inland waterway barge.

As shown in Table 2, petroleum product imports experienced high growth after 1994. Imports totaled 259 thousand short tons in 1994 and increased to 1.3 million in 1995. The increases experienced in the mid-1990s were associated with lube oil imports, which represented an average of nearly 70 percent of 1995–2000 petroleum product imports. While experiencing tremendous growth from 1994 to 1995, petroleum product imports are variable (see Table 2). In spite of fluctuating volumes, Freeport's share of U.S. petroleum product imports has remained between 1 and 2 percent since the mid-1990s. Freeport's petroleum product exports are much lower than imports and are also variable. Freeport's product exports averaged 97 thousand short tons for 2004–2006. Freeport's petroleum product exports represent less than 1 percent of the U.S. total product export. Table 4 shows Freeport's 1992–2007 percent of the U.S. totals. As

shown in Table 4, Freeport exports 4.6 percent of U.S. chemicals. Chemical export volumes for 2004–2007 averaged 2.6 million short tons and represent record highs.

Table 4
Freeport Harbor
Petroleum and Chemical Product Imports and Exports
Freeport Percentages of U.S. Totals

Year	Petroleum Products		Chemical Products	
	Imports	Exports	Imports	Exports
1992	0.1	0.0	1.0	2.1
1993	0.0	0.0	0.9	2.3
1994	0.3	0.0	0.8	3.2
1995	1.7	0.1	1.4	2.9
1996	1.9	0.1	1.1	3.0
1997	1.8	0.2	1.3	3.0
1998	1.5	0.1	0.9	3.4
1999	1.3	0.1	1.2	3.1
2000	1.6	0.1	1.0	3.8
2001	1.8	0.1	1.3	3.2
2002	0.6	0.2	1.7	3.5
2003	1.3	0.2	1.9	3.9
2004	1.7	0.1	1.9	4.3
2005	1.1	0.1	1.5	4.2
2006	1.1	0.1	1.5	4.4
2007	0.6	0.1	1.5	4.6

Source: USACE, Waterborne Commerce of the U.S., Part 2, 1992–2007.

Freeport exports 30.2 percent of U.S. sodium hydroxide; 9.4 percent of U.S. organic chemicals; 9.2 percent of U.S. chemical hydrocarbon; and 7.1 percent of alcohols. In comparison to exports, chemical imports are lower and averaged 768 thousand short tons for 2003–2005, which is three times less than imports, with 2007 imports totaling 710 thousand short tons. While lower in volume than exports, Freeport imports nearly 15 percent of U.S. chemical hydrocarbons and nearly 8 percent of ammonia.

2.1.4 General and Container Cargo Overview

Freeport's remaining cargo primarily consists of banana imports, rice exports, and outbound coastwise chemical shipments. Distribution of these commodities by major group is displayed in Table 5 and Figure 4. Freeport imports 6 percent of the U.S. banana imports and exports 6 percent of rice exports. Bananas and rice are transported through docks located within the Brazos Harbor Turning Basin where the project depth is 36 feet. Bananas are transported in

refrigerated cargo vessels. Future use of larger vessels for banana imports is not anticipated. The deadweight tonnage (DWT) range for refrigerated cargo vessels is 11,000 to 16,000. Analysis for the fleet showed that the median beam width of the future is not expected to increase.

While it does not appear that refrigerated cargo vessel sizes are increasing, significant increases are occurring for other vessel groups, and completion of the Panama Canal expansion by the year 2014 will allow for more-fully loaded vessel movements from deepwater ports in the Far East and the western coasts of Mexico and South America. The canal expansion will accommodate maximum loaded drafts of 15 meters, or approximately 49 feet. Freeport's increasing traffic volumes and vessel size limitations within Brazos Harbor Turning Basin for general and container cargo facilities (Figure 5) prompted construction of landside facilities adjacent to the Upper Turning Basin and lower reach of the Stauffer Channel.

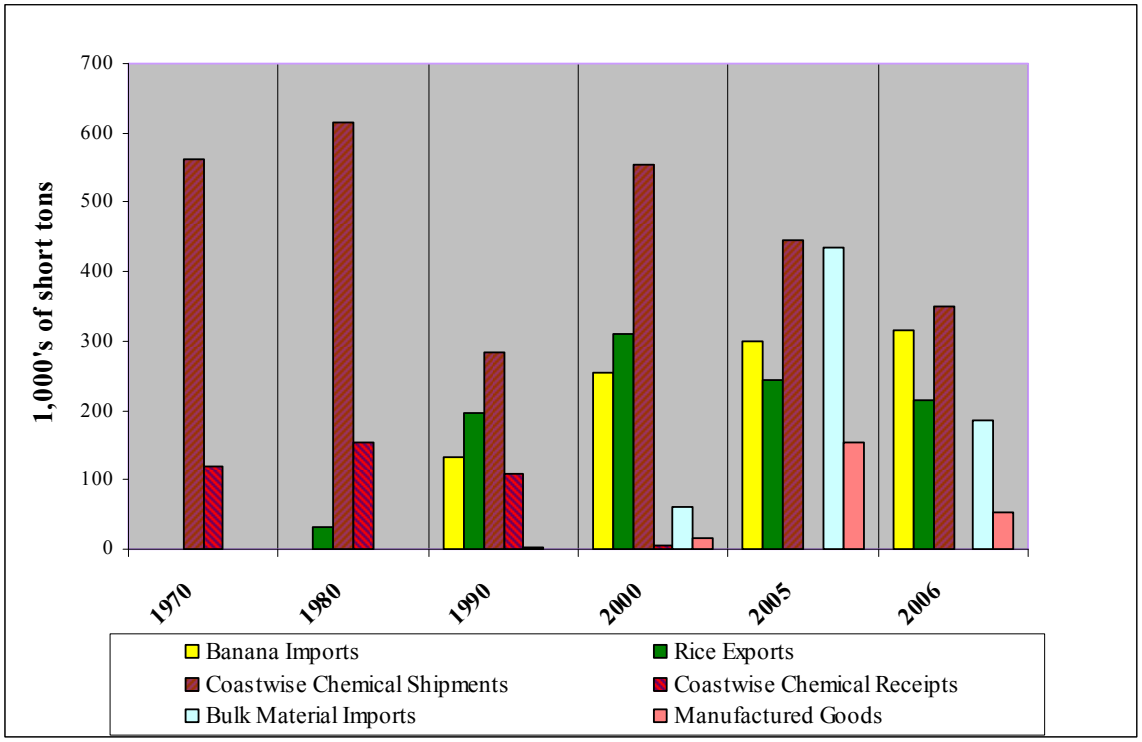
Table 5
Freeport Harbor Other Ocean-going Cargo
Major Commodities 1970–2007
(1,000s of short tons)

Year	Banana Imports	Rice Exports	Bulk Materials & Manufactured Goods	Coastwise Chemicals		Group Total	Total Ocean-going Tonnage	% of Total Ocean-going Tonnage
				Receipts	Shipments*			
1970	0	0	1	118	563	682	2,291	30
1975	0	100	18	130	537	784	5,482	14
1980	0	32	1	154	614	801	17,299	5
1985	203	24	1	158	217	602	10,319	6
1990	133	195	4	109	284	725	10,164	7
1995	174	287	8	62	380	911	14,922	6
1996	202	247	12	41	344	846	19,880	4
1997	133	212	8	71	527	951	21,849	4
1998	320	175	5	86	426	1,012	24,552	4
1999	301	174	11	82	428	996	23,225	4
2000	255	310	76	6	555	1,202	26,150	5
2001	173	210	160	10	533	1,086	25,498	4
2002	293	226	47	0	419	985	22,563	4
2003	233	210	89	0	443	975	25,612	4
2004	237	203	504	0	712	1,656	29,116	6
2005	300	245	591	1	445	1,582	28,930	5
2006	315	215	240	0	350	1,120	27,571	4
2007	354	101	405	0	281	1,141	24,065	5

Source: USACE, Waterborne Commerce of the U.S., Part 2, 1970–2007.

*Primarily consists of shipments of hydrocarbons.

Figure 4
Freeport Harbor 1970–2006
Other Ocean-going Cargo
(1,000s of Short Tons)



Source: USACE, Waterborne Commerce of the U.S., Part 2, 1970–2006.

Freeport's other general cargo base consists of rice exports and bulk materials. Rice is transported in general cargo vessels, and the size of these vessels has increased over the last decade. The largest general cargo vessels using the public terminal range from 40,000 to 46,000 DWT. The larger carriers are used for meat, sugar, cereal, and vegetable imports from Brazil and Europe. There are some indications of transitions to larger vessels for bulk materials, chemicals, and general cargo. While more deeply loaded vessels are not anticipated for the turning basin reach, the port is expanding general and container cargo facilities just outside the turning basin reach due to capacity constraints within the basin and the introduction of larger container vessels for a wider range of commodities.

Large bulk carriers are used in the import of Freeport's limestone and building materials. Maximum vessel size is presently 67,000 DWT. Design drafts range from 40 to 44 feet, and loaded drafts range from 35 to 39 feet. Total limestone imports for 2005 were 433 thousand tons. Limestone imports represented 40 percent of 2003–2005's general cargo tonnage. Rock and limestone are used in residential and commercial building construction and have increased at

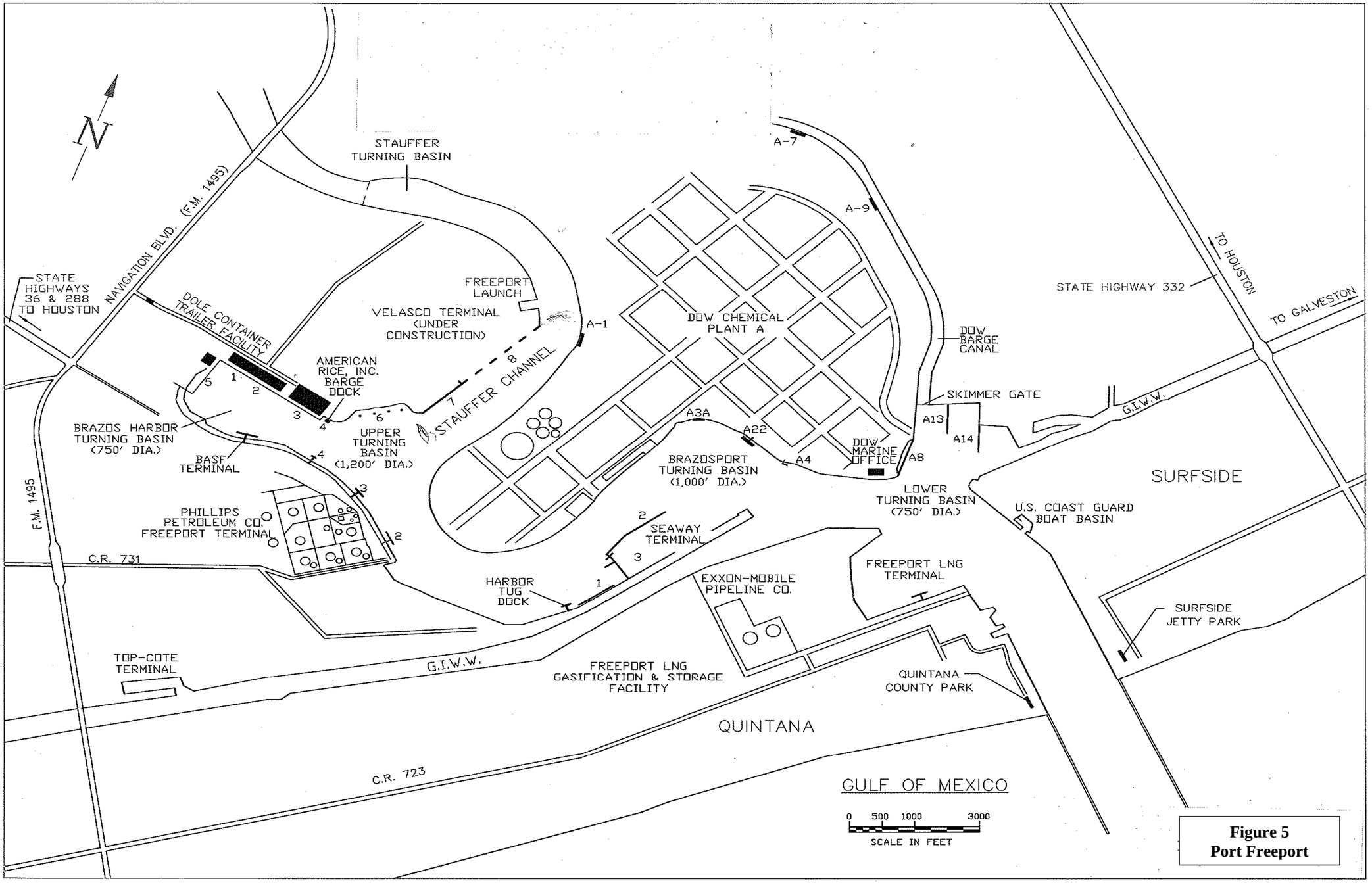


Figure 5
Port Freeport

(This page left blank intentionally.)

all Texas ports. These cargoes are presently transported through the facilities in the Brazos Harbor Basin. A portion of future bulk traffic is anticipated to move to the Velasco Terminal dock. This move will allow for the use of larger and more-fully loaded bulk carriers

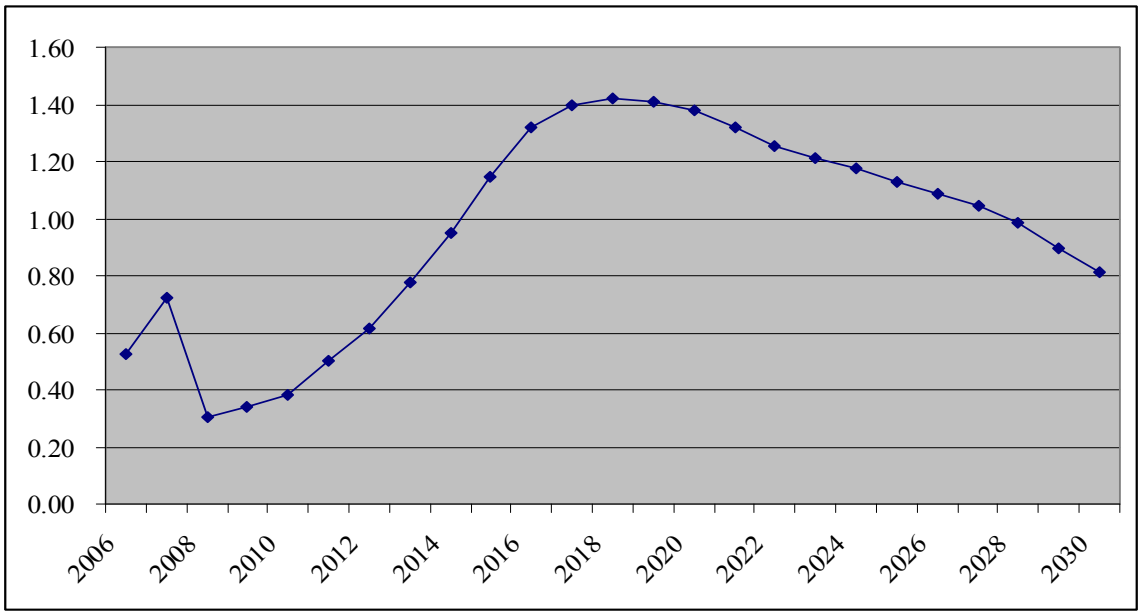
2.1.5 Liquefied Natural Gas Overview

Freeport's LNG terminal became operational in April 2008. The terminal is located along the southern edge of the Freeport Harbor Jetty Channel near Station 65+00 and adjacent to the intersection of the Freeport Harbor Channel and the GIWW. The docks at the LNG terminal were built to accommodate vessels 1,099 feet long by 177 feet wide.

Total U.S. LNG imports were down in 2008 by 54 percent from the 2007 record high of 771 billion cubic feet. While LNG traffic through Freeport is also presently low, the U.S. Department of Energy's April 2009 forecast shows U.S. LNG imports reaching 2007 levels again in 2014 and peaking at 1,380 billion cubic feet in 2020. Between 2020 and 2030, imports are forecasted to turn down once again. Figure 6 shows the Department of Energy's 2006–2030 U.S. LNG import forecast. Freeport's existing LNG facility includes two 160,000-cubic-meter (m^3) storage tanks and one piled dock capable of handling LNG vessels in excess of 200,000 m^3, in order to accommodate the largest LNG tankers under construction today. The first phase of the project allows the facility to have a send-out capacity of 1.75 billion cubic feet per day.

Natural gas will be transported from Freeport through a 9.4-mile pipeline to Stratton Ridge, Texas, which is a major point of interconnection with the Texas intrastate gas pipeline system. The Freeport Section 204 widening analysis includes detailed analysis of Freeport's LNG market. Import volumes of 84.2 billion cubic feet per day are forecasted for 2010, with volumes increasing to 712 billion cubic feet by 2018 as shown in the Section 204 report. The vessel sizes and expected throughput prompted the non-Federal sponsor to pursue widening of the Outer Bar and Jetty channels from 400 to 600 feet under the Section 204 authority of Water Resources Development Act of 1986 (WRDA), as amended in 1990. Phase I of the terminal is presently in operation, and vessel traffic commenced in April 2008. While LNG provided the impetus for the 204 study, channel widening would also benefit existing and future traffic. The base analysis used for the feasibility study assumes that the channel is widened. An alternative scenario, where channel widening is included as part of the Federal project, is addressed as sensitivity.

Figure 6
U.S. LNG Imports 2006–2030
Trillions of Cubic Feet



Source: U.S. Department of Energy, Updated Annual Energy Outlook 2009 Reference Case Reflecting Provisions of the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act and Recent Changes in the Economic Outlook, Table 13, SR/OIAF/2009-03.

2.1.6 Stauffer Channel

The Stauffer Channel (upstream of the Upper Turning Basin) presently has an operating depth of approximately 18 feet. The channel was authorized to 30 feet and had an operating depth of 25 feet in the mid-1950s. In 1955, the channel was placed in an inactive status and subsequently deauthorized in 1974 under Section 12, Appendix C, PL 93-251. Since its deauthorization, the channel depth has deteriorated from its previously constructed 25 feet to an approximate 18-foot water depth. The depth limitations and impediments associated with silting generate safety concerns and contribute to declining utilization patterns.

2.1.6.1 Stauffer Channel Modification

In order to accommodate a container facility, the port initially wished to extend the terminus of the Federal channel to include a portion of the Stauffer Channel. The length of the proposed channel was to be approximately 1,200 feet from the federally authorized 45-foot-deep Upper Turning Basin. The port presently ships and receives general cargo through the Brazos Harbor Turning Basin docks. As part of the feasibility study, optimization of the depth for the channel modification would need to be determined. Depth alternatives of 35, 40, 45, and 50 feet were initially evaluated for the 1,200-foot reach. The results of the initial screening resulted in a more-focused evaluation of a smaller range of depths, as discussed in Section 5. Analysis was conducted to determine the competitive advantage that Freeport might potentially have over

competing ports. For instance, there is considerable overlap between the Houston and Freeport population centers, and a Freeport container terminal has the potential of capturing associated savings.

2.1.6.2 Stauffer Channel Container Cargo

The proposed Freeport container facility would be in competition with the Port of Houston facilities, specifically Barbours Cut, as well as the facilities at Bayport (Houston) and at the planned facility at Shoal Point in Texas City. Barbours Cut is the Gulf Coast's largest container facility and is the third largest in the Nation. Therefore, the Houston fleet was reviewed as a potential indicator of vessel size expectations.

2.1.6.3 Upper – Stauffer Channel

Presently the upper reach of the Stauffer Channel from Station 223+00 through Station 256+00 has a water depth of approximately 18 feet. In spite of its deauthorization, the Stauffer Channel is used to a limited extent. Prior to its deauthorization in 1974, the project operating depth was 25 feet. Channel user traffic consists of seismic and crew vessels. Discussions with channel users and company officials indicated that maneuvering between the silted channels and maintaining a proper alignment for safe passage is difficult. The difficulty results from under-hull clearance that the pilots need for safety. Clearance needs to be approximately 10 percent of the channel depth.

2.2 SAFETY AND NATIONAL SECURITY

In light of recent world events, global concern regarding acts of international terrorism and organized crime has increased, leading to heightened domestic and international security at U.S. ports. Efforts led by the U.S. Customs Service, USCG, and World Customs Organization have increased port security by requiring more-stringent vessel inspections, deploying additional monitoring vessels, and increasing terminal owner/operator security measures. Programs such as Operation Noble Eagle, Operation Neptune Shield, and additional Homeland Security concepts and strategies have been integrated into the daily operations of ports through coordination of USCG resources and partnerships with the maritime community and local law enforcement agencies. These partnerships are working to increase the local network of and interaction among Federal, State, and local law enforcement and intelligence agencies. Port Freeport operates under very strict safety policies and measures, which are for the most part beyond the scope of this study.

Port Freeport is one of the Nation's most important ports for the petrochemical industry. Key national influences include TEPPCO Terminal, Dow Chemical, Freeport LNG, BASF Corporation, and the Strategic Petroleum Reserve (SPR). A deeper and wider channel that allows for safer and more-efficient movement of crude and petroleum products is not only an

economic benefit to the U.S., but also makes the channel safer for ship traffic and brings the U.S. a step closer to being more self-sufficient in the refining of fossil fuels. This can ultimately contribute to our national security. Improvements to navigation and the continued cooperation between international and national agencies and the private business sector contribute to the security of our Nation and its ports.

2.3 ENVIRONMENTAL

The potential impacts of the proposed project on human and environmental resources were identified during the public interest review, including the placement of dredged material. All factors that may be relevant to the proposed project were considered, including the following: dredged material management, air quality, shoreline erosion, economics, historic resources, protected species, ecological resources, water and sediment quality, geology and soils, energy needs, hazardous materials, recreation, and, in general, the welfare of the people. Air quality impacts resulting in nitrogen oxides (NO_X) increases and displacement of ephemeral wetlands and riparian forest at proposed upland PAs have been addressed in the project DEIS.

2.4 PROBLEM SUMMARY

The depth and width of the existing channel system remain restrictive to a large portion of the current world fleet because of their size. Beam width restrictions continue to cause delays for larger ships wishing to enter Freeport's port facilities. Increased channel depths would reduce the need for lightering and lightening. Access to additional facilities would also allow the Port of Freeport to utilize facilities for future development. A project addressing current shipping delays while increasing safety for both the industry and the environment is needed.

3.0 FORMULATION OBJECTIVES, CONSTRAINTS, AND CRITERIA

3.1 NATIONAL OBJECTIVES

The fundamental national objective of Federal participation in water resources development projects is to assure that an optimum contribution is made to the welfare of all people. The Water Resources Council's *Economic and Environmental Principles and Guidelines for Water and Related Land Resources Implementation Studies* dated March 1983 and the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (NEPA), PL 91-190, as amended, provide the basis for Federal policy for planning Federal water resources projects. These authorities have established the procedures for formulation and evaluation of water resources projects. Additional policies and regulations, derived from executive and legislative authority, further define the criteria for assessment of plan impacts, risk analysis, review and coordination procedures, and project implementation.

Current Federal policy dictates that National Economic Development (NED) is the primary national objective in water resources planning. NED objectives stress increasing the value of the Nation's output of goods and services and improving economic efficiency on a national level. Planning objectives designed to improve NED are concerned with the value of increased output of goods and services resulting from external economics associated with a plan.

The Federal objective of water and related land resources planning is to contribute to NED in a manner that is consistent with protecting the Nation's environment. Consequently, the resource's condition should be more desirable with the recommended plan than under the without-project condition.

National objectives are designed to assure systematic interdisciplinary planning, assessment, and evaluation of plans addressing natural, cultural, and environmental concerns that will be responsive to Federal laws and regulations. In addition to the NED plan, the proposed project includes environmental restoration features that will protect and enhance valuable habitat identified during the study.

Four accounts are established to facilitate display of effects of alternative plans. The NED account is required. Other information that is required by law or that will have a material bearing on the decision-making process should be included in the other accounts, or in some other appropriate format used to organize information on effects:

> The NED account displays changes in the economic value of the national output of goods and services;

The environmental quality (EQ) account displays nonmonetary effects on significant natural and cultural resources;

The regional economic development (RED) account registers changes in the distribution of regional economic activity that results from each alternative plan. Evaluation of regional effects are to be carried out using nationally consistent projections of income, employment, output, and population; and

The other social effects (OSE) account registers plan effects from perspectives that are relevant to the planning process, but are not reflected in the other three accounts.

3.1.1 Regional Sediment Management

Regional sediment management was also a considered objective. Section 2037 of WRDA 07 amends Section 204 of WRDA 92. The objective was to investigate the opportunity to develop, at Federal expense, a regional sediment management plan, in cooperation with appropriate Federal, State, regional, and local agencies, for sediment obtained through construction, operation, or maintenance of an authorized Federal water resources project. The regional sediment management plan would identify projects for transportation and placement of sediment to reduce storm damages to property and protect, restore, and create aquatic and biologically related habitat including wetlands.

3.2 PLANNING OBJECTIVES

The primary objective of Federal navigation activities is to contribute to the Nation's economy while protecting the Nation's environmental resources in accordance with existing laws, regulation, and executive orders. More-specific planning objectives were identified by area residents and concerned State and Federal agencies or suggested by existing opportunities for improving the quality of life. Plans were formulated and evaluated with the following objectives in mind:

1. To improve the navigational efficiency and safety of the deep-draft navigation system at Freeport Harbor, and

2. To maintain, protect, or restore the quality of the Freeport Harbor area's terrestrial, cultural, estuarine, and coastal resources.

3.3 PLANNING CONSTRAINTS

Plans must be formulated with regard to addressing the problems and needs of the area, taking into consideration future without-project conditions. The plans should identify tangible and intangible benefits and costs from economic, environmental, social, and regional perspectives. Institutional implementation constraints should also be identified. The formulation framework

requires the systematic preparation and evaluation of alternative solutions to the recognized water resource–related problems within the study area. The process also requires that impacts of the proposed action be measured and results displayed or accounted for in terms of contributions to NED, EQ, RED, and OSE.

Interaction with other interests must be maintained throughout the planning process to avoid duplication of effort, minimize conflicts, obtain consistency, and assure completeness. The following constraints apply to this feasibility study:

- Fish and wildlife habitat in the study area should be preserved, if possible;
- The study process and plans developed must comply with Federal laws and policies; and
- Alternative plans that resolve problems in one area should not create or amplify problems in other areas.

3.4 PHYSICAL CONSTRAINTS

Plans must be formulated with regard to addressing channel constraints in two areas. Widening in the Jetty Channel area will be limited to a top width based on the distance between the jetties. Relocation of the jetties could make the project economically infeasible. The second area with physical constraint issues is in the channel reach between the Brazosport Turning Basin and the Upper Turning Basin. Within this reach, there are dock facilities whose modifications could make channel widening economically infeasible.

3.5 GUIDANCE AND CRITERIA

Current guidance specifies that the Federal objective of planning is to contribute to NED consistent with protecting the Nation's environment. The following general criteria are applicable to all water resource studies. They have generally guided the formulation of this study. Technical, economic, environmental, and social criteria have been established to guide the project development process. These criteria are discussed below.

3.5.1 Technical Criteria

Technical criteria require the preservation of adequate project dimensions to provide safe passage of commercial navigation traffic through this waterway while minimizing environmental impacts. These criteria require plans to be compatible with navigation needs and consistent with the requirements of the navigational equipment using this portion of the waterway and to provide a long-term plan for the placement of dredged materials in order to continue maintenance of the waterway in the future. These plans must be consistent with specific environmental conditions of the area including soil conditions, topography, and terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems.

Formulation of alternative alignments and dredged material placement alternatives and their evaluation was accomplished by analysis of historical and projected shoaling rates, erosion causes and rates, and general structural and nonstructural alternatives applicable for conditions that are specific to this area. Technical information, both historical data and specific information prepared for this project, used during this study included, but was not limited to, ship simulation results, aerial photography, historical dredging records, and previously published scientific reports related to this area.

3.5.2 Economic Criteria

The economic criteria require that tangible benefits attributable to projects exceed project costs. Project benefits and costs are reduced to average annual equivalent values and related in a ratio of benefits to costs (benefits-to-cost ratio, or BCR). This ratio must exceed unity to meet the NED objective. Selected plans, whether structural, nonstructural, or a combination of both, should maximize excess benefits over costs; however, unquantifiable features must be addressed subjectively. These criteria are used to develop plans that achieve the objective of NED and provide a base condition for consideration of economically unquantifiable factors that may impact on project proposals.

All structural and nonstructural measures for navigation projects should be evaluated using the appropriate period of analysis and the currently applicable interest rate. Total annual costs should include amounts for operation, maintenance, major replacements, and mitigation, as well as amortization and interest on the investment.

3.5.3 Environmental Criteria

The general environmental criteria for navigation projects are identified in Federal environmental statutes, executive orders, planning guidelines, and the Environmental Operating Principles (EOP). It is the national policy that fish and wildlife resource conservation be given equal consideration with other study purposes in the formulation and evaluation of alternative plans. The basic guidance during planning studies is to assure that care is taken to preserve and protect significant ecological and cultural values, and to conserve natural resources. These efforts also should provide the means to maintain and restore, as applicable, the desirable qualities of the human and natural environment. Alternative plans formulated to improve navigation should avoid damaging the environment to the extent practicable and contain measures to minimize or mitigate unavoidable environmental damages. Particular emphasis was placed on the following:

- Protection, preservation, and improvement of the existing fish and wildlife resources along with the protection and preservation of estuaries and wetland habitats and water quality;

- Consideration in the project design of the least-disruptive construction techniques and methods;
- Mitigation for project-related unavoidable impacts by minimizing, rectifying, reducing or eliminating, compensating, replacing, or substituting resources;
- Preservation of significant historical and archeological resources through avoidance of impacts. This is the preferable action to any other form of mitigation since these are finite, nonrenewable resources.

EOP have been established for evaluation of water resource projects. Throughout the study process, the EOP should be considered. The EOP ensure conservation, environmental preservation, and restorations are considered at the same level as economic issues. These principles are (1) strive to achieve environmental sustainability, (2) consider environmental consequences, (3) seek balance and synergy, (4) accept responsibility, (5) mitigate impacts, (6) understand the environment, and (7) respect other views.

3.5.4 Social and Other Criteria

Plans proposed for implementation should have an overall favorable impact on the social wellbeing of affected interests and have overall public acceptance. Structural and nonstructural alternatives must reflect close coordination with interested Federal and State agencies and the affected public. The effects of these measures on the environment must be carefully identified and compared with technical, economic, and social considerations and evaluated in light of public input.

3.5.5 Other USACE Initiatives

3.5.5.1 USACE Campaign Plan

In August 2006, as a result of lessons learned from hurricanes Katrina and Rita, the USACE Chief of Engineers initiated the "Actions for Change" in an effort to transform the USACE planning, design, construction, and operation and maintenance principles and decision-making processes. This program has been further developed into the Campaign Plan. The USACE is moving forward with this Campaign Plan to transform the way business is done. The USACE Campaign Plan is available on the internet at http://www.usace.army.mil/about/campaignplan/Pages/Home.aspx.

The successful achievement of the goals and objectives contained in this Campaign Plan are dependent on actions implemented by the entire USACE team. The Campaign Plan included four goals for USACE. These goals are:

Goal 1: Ready for all Contingencies – Deliver USACE support to combat, stability, and disaster operations through forward deployed and reachback capabilities.

Goal 2: Engineering Sustainable Water Resources – Deliver enduring and essential water resource solutions through collaboration with partners and stakeholders.

Goal 3: Delivering Effective, Resilient, Sustainable Solutions – Deliver innovative, resilient, sustainable solutions to the Armed Forces and the Nation.

Goal 4: Recruit and Retain Strong Teams – Build and cultivate a competent, disciplined, and resilient team equipped to deliver high quality solutions.

Goals 1 and 4 do not apply directly to the USACE planning process and are not discussed in detail. Goals 2 and 3 pertain to water resources planning and directly to the Freeport Harbor study. These goals are described in more detail below.

3.5.5.1.1 Goal 2: Engineering Sustainable Water Resources

With Goal 2 USACE focuses on comprehensive, sustainable, and integrated solutions to the Nation's water resources challenges through collaboration with stakeholders. This goal refers to not only developing and delivering comprehensive and lasting solutions but also ensuring that these solutions are long lasting, integrated, and holistic to respond to today's and future challenges.

3.5.5.1.2 Goal 3: Delivering Effective, Resilient, Sustainable Solutions

Goal 3 emphasizes that USACE will provide innovative, resilient, and sustainable infrastructure solutions for the Nation today and in the future. USACE is the Nation's premier public service engineering and construction organization and can provide infrastructure support to serve both the military and national civilian arenas. This effort will improve resilience and lifecycle investment in critical infrastructure, deliver reliable infrastructure using a risk-informed asset management strategy, and develop and apply innovative approaches to delivering quality infrastructure.

The Campaign Plan results are discussed in Section 12.

4.0 PLAN FORMULATION

4.1 PLAN FORMULATION RATIONALE

The rationale for formulating and developing alternative solutions is discussed in the following paragraphs. The planning framework requires the systematic preparation and evaluation of alternative ways of addressing problems, needs, concerns, and opportunities while considering environmental factors. The criteria and broad planning objectives previously identified form the basis for subsequent plan formulation, screening, and ultimately plan selection.

The planning process for this study has been driven by the overall objective of developing a comprehensive plan that would allow reliable and efficient ship traffic at Freeport Harbor. Secondary objectives have been to address other related water resources problems in the study area. The first phase of this process was to establish the magnitude and extent of the problems and then to develop and evaluate an array of alternative solutions to meet the existing and long-range future needs of the area.

During the feasibility phase, lines of communication were opened with Federal, State, and local agencies, private groups, and the affected public. Through scoping and other coordination meetings, public involvement activities were continued throughout the planning process.

The expected future without-project scenario was first developed for comparison with other alternatives. Nonstructural and structural plans were developed to address the planning objectives. For the structural plans, an array of channel modifications and dredged material placement alternatives were developed, evaluated, and screened. The modifications were investigated as to possible means to satisfy the objectives of a more-reliable, more-efficient Freeport Harbor.

Through a two-phased screening process, a plan was ultimately selected. The first phase of plan formulation was the initial assessment of potential management measures with initial technical and environmental criteria. Rough cost and economic estimates were made for potential alternative plans, and the plans were screened. Further preliminary and detailed design refinements were accomplished for the screened alternatives and for the recommended plan prior to developing a baseline cost estimate for this plan.

Structural and nonstructural measures were examined for project applicability. The No Action/Without-Project conditions were established for the project. Preliminary alternatives were developed for various plans. Preliminary environmental considerations were evaluated for the various plans. From these evaluations in Phase 1, alternative plans were selected to carry forward into Phase 2, detailed plan formulation.

Benefits and costs, detailed in Table 6, were developed for the preliminary alternatives. These numbers were used to reduce the number of alternatives to be considered during more-detailed evaluation. Mitigation was considered to be the same for all alternatives during the screening of alternative plans. Cost factors such as levee construction, dredging, pipeline relocation/removal, engineering design, and construction management were included in this cost analysis. The evaluation was performed to put all the alternative plans on an equal basis without the mitigation costs. Although no ecological benefits and mitigation costs were calculated, all alternatives were reviewed for potential effects to the environment in a nonquantitative manner. Costs for operation and maintenance for each of the alternatives were not included in the initial evaluation, but were considered in the later screening process. Costs were developed for all of the alternative plans; however, benefits were determined only for traffic associated with terminals on the authorized channel. Benefits for the Stauffer Channel were not calculated for the initial screening.

Environmental concerns identified during the reconnaissance study in 2002 included the potential for environmental harm resulting from shipping accidents and associated oil/chemical spills, or other harmful releases to the environment. Safety issues and vessel causalities were reviewed. The results of these investigations indicated that differences between without- and with-project future casualty occurrences were generally not discernible. Vessel accident risks are presently minimized by the BPA traffic rules. Minimization of accident probability through traffic rules will continue under the without- and with-project future conditions. The transit/traffic rules and associated restrictions are voluntary and agreed upon by the shipping industry, supported by the USCG Captain of the Port Orders under the Ports and Waterways Safety Act of 1976, as amended, and administered by the BPA. The agreement dated January 12, 1981, will remain in force until the shipping industries, BPA, and USCG agree to its revision or modification. Freeport Channel vessel traffic, particularly crude petroleum tankers and product tankers, are subject to vessel size limitations due to the existing 400-foot channel width. While traffic rules would be relaxed to some extent based on channel widening performed under the non-Federal sponsor's Section 204 study, the rules will be designed to limit risk. The Section 204 project will result in an increase in channel width from 400 to 600 feet.

Sediment quality in Freeport Harbor is not a concern for any alternative plan considered.

Table 6
Initial Costs and Benefits for Considered Alternatives

Freeport Harbor Channel Widening and Deepening					
Depth (feet)	**Width (feet)**	**Benefits ($000)**	**Cost ($000)**	**BCR**	**Net Benefits ($000)**
45	500	650	1,024	0.6	–374
48	400	37,855	6,567	5.8	31,288
48	470	–	7,519	–	*
48	500	38,505	7,821	4.9	30,683
48	530	–	8,056	–	*
50	400	49,758	7,834	6.4	41,924
50	470	–	8,847	–	*
50	500	50,408	9,075	5.6	41,333
50	530	–	9,375	–	*
52	400	60,483	9,168	6.6	51,316
52	470	–	10,248	–	*
52	500	61,133	10,553	5.8	50,581
52	530	–	11,088	–	*
55	400	90,300	13,179	6.8	77,121
55	470	–	14,411	–	*
55	500	91300	15,424	5.9	75876
55	530	–	16,121	–	*
60	400	140,000	20,280	6.9	119,720
60	470	–	21,778	–	*
60	500	141,474	23,591	6.0	117,883
60	530	–	24,340	–	*

*Benefits were not computed for these widths because the ship simulation study was used to determine the preferred width of the channel. It was not necessary to compute a BCR for each depth and width combination, but only to determine the best depth alternative for a common width.

4.2 NO ACTION AND FUTURE WITHOUT-PROJECT CONDITION

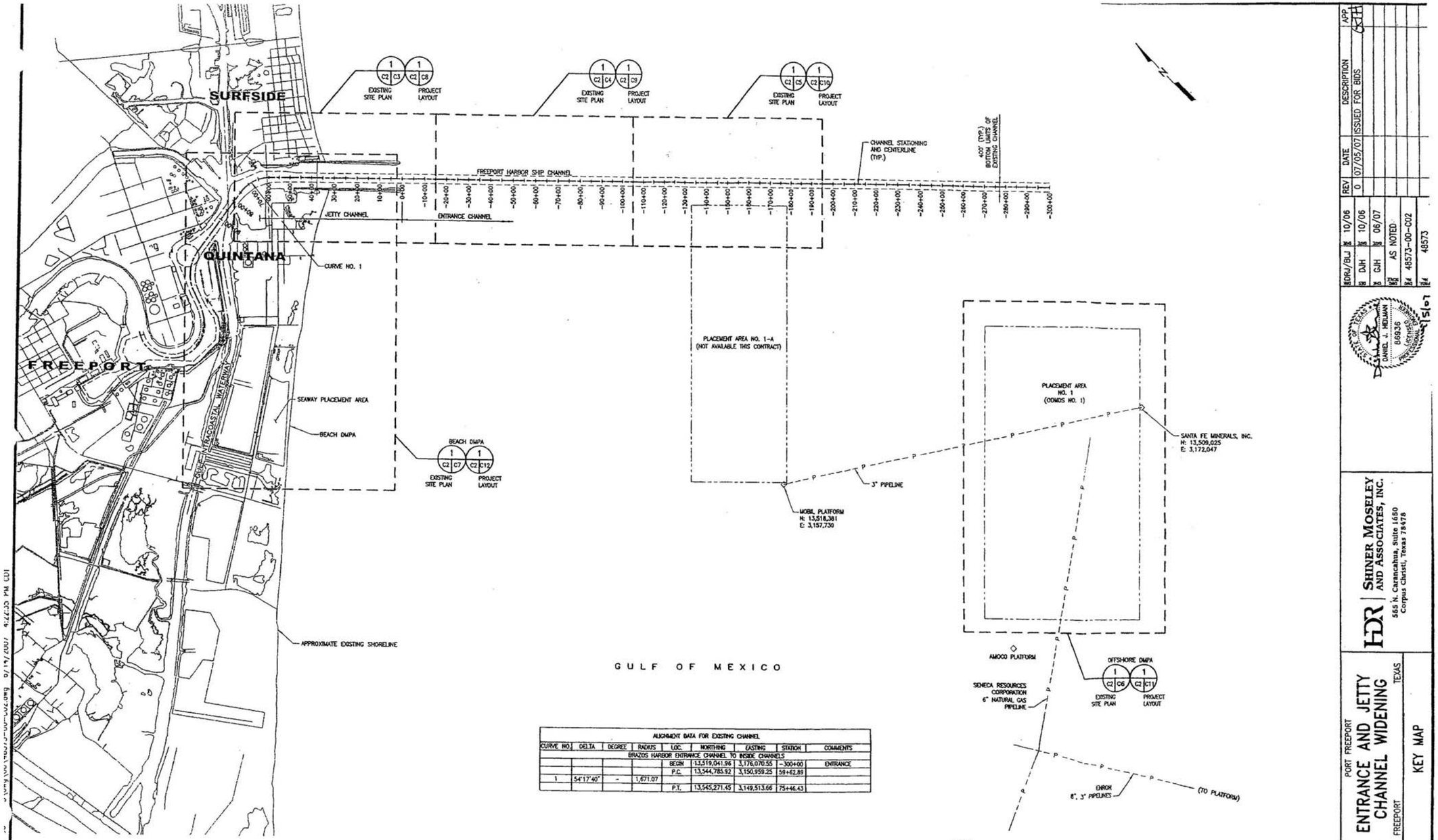
To comply with the requirements of NEPA, a "No Action" Alternative must be included in the alternative array. The USACE planning guidance also requires analysis of a future without-project plan as one of the alternatives. The No-Action Alternative describes existing conditions in the project area and is normally used for establishing future without-project conditions for an existing project. That is, future without-project conditions are those conditions that would normally occur due to natural or human-induced changes in the environment, changes in socioeconomic conditions, or other changes at some future point in time that would modify or influence an existing project, in the absence of a specific Federal action. As such, the No Action Alternative normally provides the basis for establishing the future without-project, and is used

for comparative purposes when assessing impacts of other proposed alternatives. The No-Action Plan consists of a 45-foot-deep by 400-foot-wide navigation channel with its periodic maintenance dredging program. Use of the channel by multiple vessels would be limited because of the current 400-foot width of the channel. As vessels increase in draft and beam, the restrictive depth and width of Freeport Harbor would prevent some vessels from entering with full loads, or would prevent the use of the channel complex altogether by large vessels. The need to lighter products and/or light load vessels would increase, thereby increasing overall user costs and decreasing the efficiency of the vessels using the waterway.

However, in the case of the proposed Federal project, the primary future without-project condition will not be based on the existing No-Action Alternative. Instead, it will be based on proposed modifications of the existing channel under a permit widening application submitted to the USACE, Galveston District by the non-Federal sponsor (Port Freeport) subsequent to initial plan formulation. Under the permit widening action, the existing Outer Bar and Jetty channels would be widened, but not deepened. The future without-project condition would consist of the existing 45-foot-deep Outer Bar Channel, which would be widened from 400 to 600 feet. The permit action proposed by Port Freeport is within the footprint of the proposed Federal project. The permit site is located along the northern edge of the Outer Bar and Jetty channels. The permit was issued in March 2009, and the permit Widening Project would be constructed ahead of the proposed Federal project. Widening construction would begin upon approval by the Assistant Secretary of the Army (Civil Works) (ASA(CW)) for Federal assumption of maintenance expected in the spring of 2010. The Port Freeport Widening Project is shown on Figure 7.

The non-Federal study investigated the feasibility of widening the Outer Bar and Jetty channels by non-Federal interests at no cost to the Federal government, and then having the Federal government assume the maintenance responsibility of the widened increment. The authority to conduct the study is granted by Section 204(f) of WRDA 86, as amended in 1990. If the study determines that widening is economically justified, environmentally acceptable, and complies with Federal law and plan formulation guidance, the same section grants the ASA(CW) authority to approve assumption of such maintenance as part of the Federal project.

The purpose of the proposed non-Federal permit is to widen the channel to eliminate existing operational constraints that include (a) one-way traffic, (b) daylight-only operations for larger vessels, and (c) environmental restrictions that do not allow larger vessels to enter the port. Eliminating these operational constraints will allow vessels to avoid delays, thereby reducing shipping costs and logistical problems, improving vessel safety margins, and increasing Port Freeport's ability to accommodate more vessel traffic. The existing restrictions on vessel dimensions and port entry conditions are based solely on the existing dimensions of the Federal channel. A ship simulation study was performed for the non-Federal study, and it was identified



ALIGNMENT DATA FOR EXISTING CHANNEL								
CURVE NO.	DELTA	DEGREE	RADIUS	LOC.	NORTHING	EASTING	STATION	COMMENTS
BRAZOS HARBOR ENTRANCE CHANNEL TO INSIDE CHANNELS								
				BEGIN	13,519,041.96	3,176,070.55	-300+00	ENTRANCE
				P.C.	13,544,785.92	3,150,959.25	59+62.89	
1	54°17'40"	-	1,671.07					
				P.T.	13,545,271.45	3,149,513.66	75+46.43	

NOTES

1. LOCATIONS OF PIPELINES SHOWN ON THIS SHEET ARE APPROXIMATE.
2. REFER TO NOAA CHART 11321 FOR APPROXIMATE WATER DEPTHS OUTSIDE OF CHANNEL AND PLACEMENT AREAS.

LEGEND

DMPA DREDGED MATERIAL PLACEMENT AREA

REV	DATE	DESCRIPTION	APP.
0	07/05/07	ISSUED FOR BIDS	

DESIGN	DJH	10/06
DRAWN	GJH	10/06
CHECKED		06/07
SCALE	AS NOTED	
FILE	48573-00-C02	
JOB	48573	

DANIEL J. HEILMAN 86936 Licensed Professional Engineer STATE OF TEXAS

HDR | SHINER MOSELEY AND ASSOCIATES, INC.
565 N. Carancahua, Suite 1650
Corpus Christi, Texas 78478

PORT FREEPORT
ENTRANCE AND JETTY CHANNEL WIDENING
FREEPORT TEXAS

KEY MAP

1 of 1

FIGURE 7
PORT FREEPORT WIDENING PROJECT

(This page left blank intentionally.)

that the 600-foot alternative was the minimum project width (400- and 500-foot alternatives were also studied) that will meet the stated goal.

An economic benefits analysis was prepared for the proposed permit project. The study assessed the cost and benefits of 400-, 500-, and 600-foot-wide alternatives. The analysis concluded that the 600-foot-wide alternative had the highest net annual benefits and identified the 600-foot alternative as the NED Plan for Section 204(f) purposes, based on the physical constraints of jetty width.

The environmental, engineering, navigation, and economic analyses also identified the 600-foot project as the preferred alternative. By means of the study, Port Freeport is requesting the Federal assumption of operation and maintenance of the widened channel increment. Port Freeport is incurring the cost of the widening feasibility study and the cost of the initial widening.

Scenario analyses addressing the risk and uncertainty of the channel widening by the non-Federal sponsor were performed. Two future without-project (FWOP) conditions were ultimately analyzed during detail plan formulation. FWOP-1 assumed the permit (Section 204(f)) action would be constructed; FWOP-2 (No Action) assumed that the permit action would not be constructed. The FWOP-2 scenario was developed at the request of Headquarters (HQ) USACE.

4.2.1 FWOP-1

FWOP-1 assumes that construction of the Widening Project would occur before Federal construction of the Freeport Harbor Channel Improvement Project. Under FWOP-1, all channels and turning basins would be maintained at the currently authorized depth of 45 feet, with construction of the permitted 600-foot widening of the Entrance Channel. The Widening Project is expected to result in approximately 3.2 million cubic yards (mcy) of new work dredged material of which approximately 300,000 cubic yards (cy) of salty/sand material would be placed on Quintana Beach in front of the Seaway PA. Maintenance dredging of existing ship channels and placement of that dredged material would continue as it is currently. The amount of material dredged from the Outer Bar Channel during maintenance cycles is expected to be about 3.3 mcy per year, an increase of about 1 mcy over existing conditions. The amount of material dredged from the remainder of the channel would remain unchanged. As the most probable project future, FWOP-1 is the condition against which all proposed project alternatives are evaluated, rather than the No Action Alternative or FWOP-2.

4.2.2 FWOP-2

The FWOP-2 Alternative is the existing 45-foot Project. The 45-foot Project depth and width would be maintained throughout the Entrance Channel. The Main Channel, turning basins, and Stauffer Channel dimensions would remain as described in Table 1. Maintenance material would continue to be placed in the existing Maintenance ODMDS for the Entrance Channel, and in PA 1 for the channels inshore of the Jetty Channel. This FWOP-2 scenario assumes that the local sponsor's Widening Project (Section 204(f)) would not be built as anticipated.

4.3 MANAGEMENT MEASURES

A management measure is a feature or activity at a site that addresses one or more of the planning objectives. A wide variety of measures is usually considered. These measures are evaluated separately or combined to form alternative plans for evaluation. Initial measures identified for consideration include both nonstructural and structural.

4.3.1 Nonstructural Measures

One nonstructural opportunity available is the continued use of beam width restrictions within the channel. Current pilot rule restrictions prevent two ships from passing in the channel. These rules are agreed upon by the shipping industry, supported by the USCG, and administered by the BPA. This measure would only maintain current operations, with its increased costs and delays. Another nonstructural measure is use of lightering and lightening vessels. This is another practice already in use and would offer no additional benefits. Therefore, nonstructural alternatives were not considered feasible or did not fully address the problems.

4.3.2 Structural Measures

Structural measures considered include dredging to widen and deepen the existing Freeport Harbor. These measures allow existing ships to more fully utilize the proposed channel. It also allows ships to avoid delays due to the ability to meet more safely in a wider channel. However, dredging creates the need for the placement of dredged material. Any plan considered should ensure that placement alternatives address the needed capacities as well as the need to ensure minimal impacts to the environment.

5.0 PLAN ASSESSMENT AND SCREENING OF INITIAL ALTERNATIVE PLANS

The ultimate objective of the feasibility study is to arrive at a recommended plan after a full range of alternative plans has been analyzed. This involves a comparison between each alternative plan and the future without-project condition consequences, considering economic, environmental, and social impacts.

5.1 SCREENING PROCESS

As mentioned above, there were two nonstructural measures initially considered: continued use of beam width restrictions within the channel and use of lightering and lightening vessels. Both practices are already in use and would offer no additional benefits. Therefore, nonstructural alternatives were not considered feasible, did not fully address the problems, and were eliminated from further consideration.

A general screening process was first used to determine which structural alternative plan would result in the objective of providing reliable and efficient navigation at the least cost while minimizing environmental impacts. The non-Federal sponsor initially expressed a desire for a channel 600 feet wide and 60 feet deep. Preliminarily constraints to widening are in the Jetty Channel and in the channel reach between the Brazosport Turning Basin and the Upper Turning Basin. Multiple alternative plans were evaluated for more-detailed consideration. These initial screening alternative plans (Table 7) included:

- No Action Plan (1).
- Widening of the Outer Bar and Jetty channels only with no deepening (2).
- Deepening to 50, 55, or 60 feet from the Gulf of Mexico to the Upper Turning Basin, with and without widening, and with widening to 500 and 600 feet only through the Jetty Channel (3 and 4).
- Deepening to 40, 42, or 45 feet the Brazos Harbor Channel and Turning Basin, without widening and with widening to 300 feet (5 and 6).
- Reauthorization of Stauffer Channel to 30 feet (7)
- Deepening the lower (3,700-foot) reach of the Stauffer Channel to 36, 40, 42, 45, and 50 feet without widening and with widening to 300 feet (8–10).
- Dredging the upper (remaining 3,400 feet) reach of the Stauffer Channel to its previously authorized 30-foot depth (11).

Table 7
Initial Screening of Project Management Measures

Initial Screening Measures	
1	No Action
2a.	Widening – 500 foot
2b.	Widening – 600 foot
3a.	Deepen – 50 foot
3b.	Deepen – 55 foot
3c.	Deepen – 60 foot
4a.	Deepen/Widen – 50x500
4b.	Deepen/Widen – 50x600
4c.	Deepen/Widen – 55x500
4d.	Deepen/Widen – 55x600
4e.	Deepen/Widen – 60x500
4f.	Deepen/Widen – 60x600
5a.	Deepen Brazos Harbor Channel – 40 foot
5b.	Deepen Brazos Harbor Channel – 42 foot
5c.	Deepen Brazos Harbor Channel – 45 foot
6a.	Deepen/Widen Brazos Harbor Channel – 40x300
6b.	Deepen/Widen Brazos Harbor Channel – 42x300
6c.	Deepen/Widen Brazos Harbor Channel – 45x300
7.	Reauthorization of Stauffer Channel to 30 foot
8a.	Deepen Lower Stauffer Channel – 36 foot
8b.	Deepen Lower Stauffer Channel – 40 foot
8c.	Deepen Lower Stauffer Channel – 42 foot
8d.	Deepen Lower Stauffer Channel – 45 foot
8e.	Deepen Lower Stauffer Channel – 50 foot
9.	Widen Lower Stauffer Channel – 300 foot
10a.	Deepen/Widen Lower Stauffer Channel – 36x300
10b.	Deepen/Widen Lower Stauffer Channel – 40x300
10b.	Deepen/Widen Lower Stauffer Channel – 42x300
10c.	Deepen/Widen Lower Stauffer Channel – 45x300
10d.	Deepen/Widen Lower Stauffer Channel – 50x300
11.	Redredge Upper 3,400 feet of Stauffer Channel to 30 foot

Based on the problems and opportunities identified by the non-Federal sponsor and the public comments received at the public scoping meeting, a variety of alternative plans was identified to address one or more of the planning objectives. Screening of alternative plans focused on whether deepening and widening would be cost effective. The following criteria were used to evaluate and screen the alternative plans:

Dredging Quantities	Minimize Environmental Impacts
Cultural Resource Concerns	Real Estate Issues
Construction Costs	Project Benefits
Sponsor's Preferences	Safety Issues
Public Acceptance	

Preliminary benefits and costs were developed in Phase 1 for these alternative plans (see Table 6) and were used to reduce the number of alternative plans considered during more-detailed evaluation. Mitigation was considered to be the same for all alternatives during the screening of alternative plans. Cost factors such as levee construction, dredging, and pipeline relocation/removal, engineering design, and construction management were included in this cost analysis. Although no ecological benefits and mitigation costs were calculated, all alternatives were reviewed for potential effects to the environment in a nonquantitative manner. Costs for operation and maintenance for each of the alternatives were not included in the initial evaluation, but were considered in the later screening process. Costs were developed for all of the alternative plans; however, benefits were determined only for traffic associated with terminals on the authorized channel. Benefits for the Stauffer Channel were not calculated for the initial screening.

The channel was divided into its basic reaches, Outer Bar, Jetty, Lower Turning Basin, Channel to Brazosport Turning Basin, Brazosport Turning Basin, Channel to Upper Turning Basin, Upper Turning Basin, Brazos Harbor Channel and Turning Basin, and Stauffer Channel. The various depth and width options were applied to these reaches. In the Channel to Upper Turning Basin reach, there was some width restriction due to docks on both sides of the channel.

Dredged material from the Outer Bar and Jetty channels reach would be placed in ODMDSs by hopper dredges. There are two existing ODMDSs associated with the existing 45-foot Project, the New Work ODMDS and the Maintenance ODMDS. Dredged material from the inshore channel reaches would be placed in confined upland placement areas by hydraulic pipeline dredging. There are several existing placement areas in the vicinity of the channel; however, new placement areas would be needed for new work and maintenance material. Port Freeport owns large tracts of land in the area available for use as PAs.

5.2 NAVIGABILITY/WIDTH SCREENING

Ship simulation testing was conducted on the Engineer Research and Development Center (ERDC) Ship/Tow Simulator to determine the navigation and safety impacts in the Freeport Harbor channel. The main objective of the study was to determine whether the "design ship" could reliably operate within the depth and widths of the proposed channel dimensions. The simulators are "real time," i.e., ship movements on the simulator require the same amount of

time as in real life. Environmental forces such as currents, wind, banks, and ship-ship interactions all act upon the vessel during transit. The pilot controls the simulated vessel's engine speed and rudder. The pilot also has radio contact with assist tugs.

Freeport LNG had proposed to construct a new LNG terminal at the southwestern corner of the intersection of the deepwater navigation channel and the GIWW. As part of the initial screening process, a ship maneuvering study was conducted by Waterways Simulation Technology, Inc., at and in coordination with ERDC to test the safety of ship maneuvering and control in Freeport Harbor. Waterways Simulation Technology, Inc., is a private engineering consulting company specializing in navigation studies involving port, harbor, and channel design, systems behavior, ship and/or tow maneuvering simulations, prototype measurements of ship and/or behavior, and hydrodynamic modeling. The study concluded that ships could maneuver safely in and around the new LNG facility. The proposed facility was included in all ship simulation testing. This facility has been constructed.

Three alternative channel plans were initially developed for ship simulation for Port Freeport. All three plans assumed construction of the proposed LNG facility at Freeport. As a result of this testing, two plans were abandoned for channel improvement based on pilot input and the third was modified into two alternate plans and evaluated. The results of the ship simulation determined that the Outer Bar and Jetty channels should be 600 feet wide to allow safe operation of the design vessel.

Plan 1 proposed a 62-foot Outer Bar Channel and a 60-foot channel from the western end of the jetties to the Upper Turning Basin. Plan 1 also included deepening of a portion of the Stauffer Channel to the Turning Basin to 50 feet. The Plan 1 Outer Bar Channel is 600 feet wide. The Outer Bar Channel extended the Federal channel by approximately 3 miles into the Gulf of Mexico to the 60-foot contour. Plan 1 included a 1,350-foot turning basin at Brazosport.

Plan 2 proposed a 62-foot Outer Bar Channel and 60-foot channel from the western end of the jetties to the Upper Turning Basin. Plans 1 and 2 were identical inland from the western end of the Brazosport Turning Basin. The Plan 2 Outer Bar Channel was 500 feet wide. Plan 2 included a 1,100-foot turning basin at Brazosport.

Plan 3 would not deepen the existing channels. The proposed Outer Bar Channel was 600 feet wide.

As a result of testing at ERDC, Plans 2 and 3 were abandoned and Plan 3 was modified into plans 4 and 5. Plan 4 was very similar to the Plan 1 channels with deepening in the same manner and a constant width of 600 feet. Plan 4 also had a 1,200-foot turning basin at Brazosport. However, the area northwest of the turning basin was dredged to 60 feet to allow more area for turning maneuvers needed by the very large crude carriers (VLCCs) and 165,000 DWT LNG tankers.

Plan 5 varied only slightly from Plan 4 in that the Brazosport Turning Basin was reduced to 1,100 feet in diameter. The area northwest of the turning basin was also dredged to allow for extra area during turning maneuvers as well as serve as a bend widener heading into the area downstream of the Upper Turning Basin.

5.3 SELECTED ALTERNATIVE PLANS

Initial analysis of the Brazos Harbor Channel and Turning Basin, used for general cargo and not used by large, deep-draft vessels, showed that deepening and widening were not justified. No increase in ship size is projected for the users of this area. The 36-foot-deep channel intersects with the Main Channel near Station 170+00, just above ConocoPhillips's petroleum docks. Brazos Harbor Turning Basin vessel traffic primarily consists of refrigerated container vessels delivering bananas and general cargo vessels shipping rice. The configuration of the access area and turning basin limits future expansion opportunities due to the high density of docks and landside facilities. The water and landside limitations of the general cargo reaches prompted development of the adjacent Velasco property for the construction of the new container terminal. The Brazos Harbor Channel was dropped from detailed plan formulation.

From the analysis of the initially considered management measures and with the selection of the preferred width of 600 feet based on the ship simulation study, nine channel alternative plans were selected for further consideration in Phase 2. These channel alternatives included:

No Action Plan – Alternative 1

Gulf to Upper Turning Basin Channel Alternatives:

Alternative 2 – Widen only to 600 feet through the Outer Bar and Jetty channels.

Alternative 3 – Deepen to 50 feet from the Gulf of Mexico to the Upper Turning Basin and widen to 600 feet through the Jetty Channel.

Alternative 4 – Deepen to 55 feet from the Gulf of Mexico to the Upper Turning Basin and widen to 600 feet through the Jetty Channel.

Alternative 5 – Deepen to 60 feet from the Gulf of Mexico to the Upper Turning Basin and widen to 600 feet through the Jetty Channel.

Stauffer Channel Alternatives:

Alternative 6 – Dredge the Stauffer Channel to the previously authorized dimensions of 30 feet deep and 200 feet wide.

Alternative 7 – Widen the lower 3,700 feet of the Stauffer Channel to 300 feet and its previously authorized depth of 30 feet, with the upper 3,400 feet of the Stauffer Channel dredged to previously authorized dimensions of 30 feet deep and 200 feet wide.

Alternative 8 – Widen the lower 3,700 feet of the Stauffer Channel to 300 feet and deepen to 40 feet, with the upper 3,400 feet of the Stauffer Channel dredged to previously authorized dimensions of 30 feet deep and 200 feet wide.

Alternative 9 – Widen the lower 3,700 feet of the Stauffer Channel to 300 feet and deepen to 50 feet, with the upper 3,400 feet of the Stauffer Channel dredged to previously authorized dimensions of 30 feet deep and 200 feet wide.

With the exception of No Action, a detailed analysis of benefits and costs was performed for each of these alternatives. This information is detailed in the following sections 6.0 through 10.0 and was used in selection of the plan.

5.4 ENVIRONMENTAL CONSIDERATIONS ALTERNATIVES

5.4.1 No Action Plan

Under the No Action Plan, the Freeport Harbor project will be maintained at the authorized depth of 45 feet. Shoaled material will be removed and placed in the designated offshore site for the Outer Bar and Jetty channels and in PA 1 for the channel inshore reach of the Jetty Channel. None of the dredged material would be used beneficially. Environmental impacts currently associated with the Freeport Harbor Project would continue.

5.4.2 Future Without-project Plan (FWOP-1)

Under the FWOP-1, or non-Federal Widening Project, the channel would be maintained at the authorized depth of 45 feet, with a permitted width of 600 feet for the Outer Bar and Jetty channels. The Widening Project is expected to result in approximately 3.2 mcy of new work dredged material, of which approximately 300,000 cy of salty/sand material would be placed on Quintana Beach in front of the Seaway PA. Maintenance dredging of existing ship channels and placement of that dredged material would continue as it is currently. The amount of material dredged from the Outer Bar and Jetty channels during maintenance cycles is expected to be about 3.3 mcy per year, an increase of about 1 mcy over existing conditions. The amount of material dredged from the remainder of the channel would remain unchanged from current conditions.

5.4.3 Federal Channel Deepening and Widening

Eight channel improvement alternatives were proposed for analysis. All were variations of deepening and/or widening of various reaches or the entire length of the authorized ship channel, as well as an extension of the existing Outer Bar Channel with deepening and widening. The proposed depths for the existing channel ranged from 47 to 60 feet plus advance maintenance and overdepth dredging. Proposed widening would increase the existing project from 400 feet up to 600 feet along most of its length. With two exceptions, none of the alternatives would impact wetlands or upland areas, and all dredging will be confined to open water. However, initial channel widening (from 400 to 600 feet) would be accomplished by the non-Federal sponsor under a permit, ahead of proposed Federal channel improvements. The permit widening would remove approximately 1.9 acres of upland area located near the Jetty Channel just east of the USCG Station on the north (Surfside Beach) side of the channel. Proposed Federal channel improvements (deepening and selective widening) would follow the permit project, producing no additional impacts in the Jetty Channel portion of the permit project area. Alternatives 3 through 9 would impact benthic organisms that would recover rapidly after construction.

During plan formulation, the Federal project considered potential beneficial uses identified by the permit Widening Project such as beach renourishment and marsh restoration using new work dredged material from inland portions of the ship channel. While soil borings indicated some sandy material, no concentrated sand lenses were identified, and the high percentage of clay could not be used for beach nourishment. Marsh restoration was also precluded because of the presence of oysters at two of the three sites considered for restoration. The third potential site was cost prohibitive because of pump distance. New work and maintenance material from the offshore reaches of the ship channel would be placed in existing New Work and Maintenance ODMDSs located along the Outer Bar Channel for all alternatives considered. EPA has concurred in the use of the existing ODMDSs for proposed new construction and continued project maintenance.

Both new work and maintenance material removed from inland reaches of the ship channel would be placed in existing PA 1 and two proposed new upland PAs, 8 (168 acres) and 9 (250 acres) (see Figure 18). The proposed PAs are currently used as pasture for cattle grazing. Construction of the two new upland PAs would impact approximately 21 acres of riparian forest and 39 acres of ephemeral wetlands. Coordination with USFWS and TPWD regarding these impacts has resulted in proposed mitigation that includes creation and maintenance of riparian forest habitat and wetlands.

A terrestrial cultural resource investigation of proposed PAs 8 and 9 located a possible Civil War gun emplacement that will require avoidance or further investigation if avoidance of the site is not possible. Additional cultural resource investigations will be conducted and coordinated under an executed PAg pursuant to 36 CFR 800.

An HTRW assessment was conducted for the project area, including proposed PAs 8 and 9. While several sources of HTRW were identified at upland industries that line the banks of the Freeport Harbor Channel, no active enforcement actions were under way, and no HTRW sites were located within the project area footprint. Previous sediment quality analyses also revealed no contaminant concerns. Therefore, it is unlikely that contaminants will be encountered during construction activities.

6.0 INITIAL ECONOMIC EVALUATION

The project benefits were calculated based on reductions in transportation costs. The initial screening showed that a channel depth of 60 feet produced the highest net excess benefits for the deepening plans evaluated for the Main Channel. The screening analysis suggested that additional studies were necessary to conclude whether widening the Outer Bar Channel was in the Federal interest. The non-Federal sponsor and BPA expressed a strong interest in widening the Outer Bar Channel reach due to safety concerns and associated vessel delays and self-imposed vessel-meeting restrictions. The recommendation for deepening and widening the Freeport Harbor was based on the ERDC findings and the safety interest of the BPA. BPA presently limits vessels greater than 820 feet in length, 145 feet in beam, or having a draft of more than 42 feet. Oversized, excessive-draft, or unusual-type vessels are handled on a "per job" basis with a one-time waiver to the Basic Operating Procedures. Pilots also reserve the right to deny movement of any vessel during times of excessive wind, excessive crosscurrent, or during times of low water.

6.1 GENERAL – INITIAL SCREENING OF SELECTED ALTERNATIVES

This section presents the initial economic benefit analysis for the Freeport Harbor Feasibility Report. The initial project benefits, based only on petroleum, were calculated for a 50-year period of analysis using Economic Guidance Memorandum (EGM) 05-01, Fiscal Year (FY) 05 deep-draft vessel operating costs and FY 05 Federal discount rate of 5.375 percent. In addition to evaluating deepening the existing authorized 45-foot Federal project and widening the Outer Bar and Jetty channels, this analysis presents a discussion of the reauthorization and modification of the Stauffer Channel, which had an authorized channel depth of 30 feet. Depth alternatives between 30 and 50 feet were evaluated for the lower 3,700 feet of the Stauffer Channel. The port anticipates using the channel modification for container cargo. Presently, general cargo is transported through docks located within the 36-foot-deep Brazos Harbor Turning Basin. Deepening the Brazos Harbor Turning Basin, which is part of the federally authorized Freeport Harbor project, was screened out earlier in the study and is not evaluated in this section. The Main Channel leading to the turning basin is 45 feet as is the Upper Turning Basin. The Stauffer Channel, which was deauthorized in 1974, is immediately upstream of the Upper Turning Basin.

For the petroleum benefits presented in the initial analysis, the per ton transportation costs for channel depth alternatives of 50, 55, and 60 feet were compared with the existing 45-foot channel depth costs. For the initial screening, a wide range of depths were examined; 1- to 2-foot increments were evaluated as the study process evolved. The increased channel depths provided improved access to the crude petroleum and petroleum product docks. The non-Federal sponsor was particularly interested in the 60-foot channel depth; therefore, the initial focus of the

economic optimization was to determine whether the net excess benefits for depths between 55 and 60 feet increased. Again, the results of the initial analysis helped determine the focus of further detailed analysis. Benefit calculations presented are limited to petroleum. Discussions of other commodities were presented; however, deepening benefits were not estimated. Channel depths of 50 feet and greater could benefit some other commodity groups; however, it was likely that the inclusion of other commodities, as well as containerized cargo, would not affect the plan optimization because the overall volumes of commodities other than petroleum were proportionally small. A benefit estimate for widening of the Outer Bar and Jetty channels was presented. The widening benefits were based exclusively on the transportation savings from using vessels up to 175,000 DWT. Vessels over 120,000 DWT are presently restricted from using Freeport due to crosswinds and the resulting difficulty of navigating the Outer Bar and Jetty channels. The widening benefits were calculated based on the difference between transportation costs for vessels in the 90,000 to 120,000 DWT range versus those associated with vessels in the 90,000 to 175,000 DWT range. The results of the analysis conducted demonstrated a high BCR for widening the existing 45-foot Entrance Channel to 600 feet and for the 60-foot depth.

6.1.1 Benefit Calculations for Petroleum

This section presents the crude petroleum and petroleum product benefit calculations. Channel-deepening benefits for petroleum imports were calculated based on reductions in transportation costs stemming from more-efficient vessel loading of the existing fleet and a higher concentration of larger vessels. The net result of larger loads carried at deeper channel depths is lower per ton transportation costs. The petroleum benefits were estimated based on improved utilization of the existing fleet and a higher concentration of larger vessels. Table 8 presents the FY 05 foreign flag tankers' operating costs used initially for the transportation cost calculations. Table 9 presents Freeport's 2001 and 2003 representative crude oil tankers. Table 10 presents a percentage distribution of 2001 and 2003 crude imports by loaded draft. Table 11 presents representative round-trip mileage for the trade routes or junction points used for the initial transportation savings computations.

In calculating the transportation savings benefits, the without- and with-project transportation costs were initially applied to Freeport's 2001–2002/2003 tonnage. The import projections for crude petroleum and petroleum product were made based on applying the U.S. Department of Energy's EIA, published January 2004 reference case growth rates to Freeport's 2000–2002 tonnage. Freeport's 2000–2002 trade route specific base tonnage is presented in Table 12. Table 13 displays transportation savings by channel depths and commodity group. Table 14 presents a summary of the initial project benefits. Also presented are the initial project construction costs, BCRs, and net excess benefits for the 50-, 55-, and 60-foot channel alternatives.

Table 8
Foreign Flag Tankers (EGM, 2005)

DWT	Design Draft	Immersion Factor	Hourly Vessel Operating Cost		Vessel Speed (knots)
			at Sea	in Port	
20,000	30	79	$617	$475	14.1
25,000	32	91	$639	$490	14.2
35,000	35	113	$682	$520	14.3
50,000	40	141	$752	$570	14.5
60,000	42	159	$795	$600	14.6
70,000	44	175	$838	$630	14.6
80,000	46	191	$952	$742	14.7
90,000	47	206	$986	$746	14.8
120,000	52	247	$1,019	$749	14.9
150,000	55	285	$1,127	$820	15.0
175,000	58	315	$1,225	$888	15.1
200,000	60	343	$1,318	$951	15.1
265,000	66	411	$1,555	$1,111	15.2
325,000	70	468	$1,715	$1,201	15.3

Source: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, CECW-CP, 2005.

Table 9
Freeport Harbor
Crude Petroleum Tankers, 2001 and 2003

DWT Range	2001 Imports short tons	%	Design Draft (feet)	Length Overall (LOA)	Beam	Year Built
<80,000	642,243	3.4	711.83	105.616	40	1986
80,000 to 84,999	1,741,054	9.0	799.71	137.727	40	1986
85,000 to 89,999	1,804,534	9.3	799.83	131.233	43	1985
90,000 to 94,999	3,949,816	20.5	797.93	137.104	45	1995
95,000 to 99,999	4,183,824	21.7	809.64	137.76	44	1993
100,000 to 104,999	393,431	2.0	791.79	137.76	48	1992
105,000 to 109,999	5,854,984	30.3	802.29	137.76	49	1998
110,000 to 114,999	174,397	0.9	818.36	144.32	48	2000
115,000 to 139,999	0	0.0	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
140,000 to 155,000	562,305	2.9	898.72	145.753	53	1992
Total	19,306,588	100.0				

Table 9 (Cont'd)

DWT Range	2003 Imports short tons	%	Design Draft (feet)	LOA	Beam	Year Built
<80,000	652,790	3.4	41	748	106	2002
80,000 to 84,999	1,035,962	5.3	40	800	131	1986
85,000 to 89,999	1,120,602	5.7	43	800	138	1990
90,000 to 94,999	1,087,938	5.5	43	810	136	1994
95,000 to 99,999	7,140,817	36.3	45	798	137	1993
100,000 to 104,999	2,141,777	10.9	48	792	138	1992
105,000 to 109,999	5,256,678	26.7	49	797	138	1998
110,000 to 114,999	655,084	3.3	48	817	144	1999
115,000 to 139,999	0	0.0	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a
140,000 to 155,000	580,101	2.9	53	899	154	1996
Total	19,671,749	100.0				

Table 10
Crude Petroleum Imports, 2001–2003 Average

By Loaded Draft	Percent
≤36	32.2
37	12.5
38	18.5
39	13.4
≥40	23.4
Total	100.0

Table 11
Representative Round-Trip Mileage to Freeport Harbor

From	Miles
Coatzacoalcos, Mexico	1,360
U.S. Gulf Coast Lightering/Lightening Zone	160
Venezuela	3,934
Panama Canal	3,132
Salvador, Brazil	9,606
Rotterdam, Netherlands	10,318
Sture, Norway	11,172
North Africa, Algiers	10,556
West Africa (Nigeria and Angola)	13,030
Persian Gulf and Indian Subcontinent via Suez Canal	19,824
Persian Gulf and Indian Subcontinent via Cape of Good Hope	25,066
Singapore via Panama Canal	24,248
Singapore via Cape of Good Hope	26,304

Table 12
Freeport Harbor Crude Oil Imports by Trade Route

Origin	2000	2001	2002	2000–2002 Average
Mexico	1,068,128	162,723	324,042	518,298
West Indies	169,096	74,442	1,701,232	648,257
Colombia (East)	193,445	277,405	1,051,073	507,308
Ecuador	65,773	1,075,857	85,899	409,176
Venezuela	4,751,039	10,074,779	8,043,919	7,623,246
Brazil	0	106,649	141,989	82,879
North Sea	564,801	86,015	2,110,856	920,558
West Africa	689,671	72,140	1,919,713	893,841
Mideast	94,466	94,855	1,464,172	551,164
Lightering				
Primarily Mideast	12,173,532	7,065,797	1,175,678	6,805,002
Total Tonnage	19,769,951	19,090,662	18,018,573	18,959,729

Table 13
Transportation Savings by Channel Depth and Commodity Group
(1,000s of dollars)

Crude Petroleum Imports						
Transportation Savings by Channel Depth 2010–2060						
	45 w/widening	50	52	55	58	60
2010	2,104.7	7,327.2	9,494.5	13,110	18,401.3	23,793.1
2020	2,704.8	9,195.6	12,049.1	16,524	23,927.3	32,003.2
2030	3,166.0	10,499.8	13,760.3	18,866	27,295.1	36,482.3
2040	3,324.3	11,024.8	14,448.3	19,810	28,659.9	38,306.4
2050	3,490.5	11,576.0	15,170.7	20,800	30,092.9	40,221.7
2060	3,665.1	12,154.8	15,929.2	21,840	31,597.5	42,232.8
Average Annual Benefits (50-Year Period of Analysis at 5.375%)						
	2,788.0	9,411.7	12,305.5	16,897.1	24,305.6	32,284.9
Petroleum Product Import and Export Tonnage						
Transportation Savings by Channel Depth 2010–2060						
	45 w/widening	50	52	55	58	60
2010	0.0	996.8	1,128.9	1,128.9	1,128.9	1,128.9
2020	0.0	1,300.6	1,473.0	1,473.0	1,473.0	1,473.0
2030	0.0	1,664.9	1,885.6	1,885.6	1,885.6	1,885.6
2040	0.0	2,131.3	2,413.7	2,413.7	2,413.7	2,413.7
2050	0.0	2,473.4	2,801.2	2,801.2	2,801.2	2,801.2
2060	0.0	2,870.5	3,250.9	3,250.9	3,250.9	3,250.9
Average Annual Benefits (50-Year Period of Analysis at 5.375%)						
	0.0	1,507.4	1,707.2	1,707.2	1,707.2	1,707.2
Total Benefits by Channel Depth (feet)						
	45 w/widening	50	52	55	58	60
	2,788.0	10,919.2	14,012.7	18,604.3	26,012.8	33,992.1

Table 14
Economic Summary
(1,000s of dollars)

Economic Summary Data	45 w/widening	50	55	60
First Cost of Construction ($)	25,766.0	210,808.0	225,344.0	243,085.0
Average Annual Cost ($)	1,493.9	12,222.8	13,065.6	14,094.2
Average Annual O&M* ($)	107.7	680.5	1,242.5	1,609.4
Total Annual Cost ($)	1,601.6	12,903.3	14,308.1	15,703.6
Average Annual Benefits ($)	2,788.0	10,919.1	18,604.3	33,992.1
Net Excess Benefits ($)	1,186.4	–1,984.2	4,296.2	18,288.5
BCR	1.7	0.8	1.3	2.2

*O&M – Operation and Maintenance

6.1.2 Other Cargo

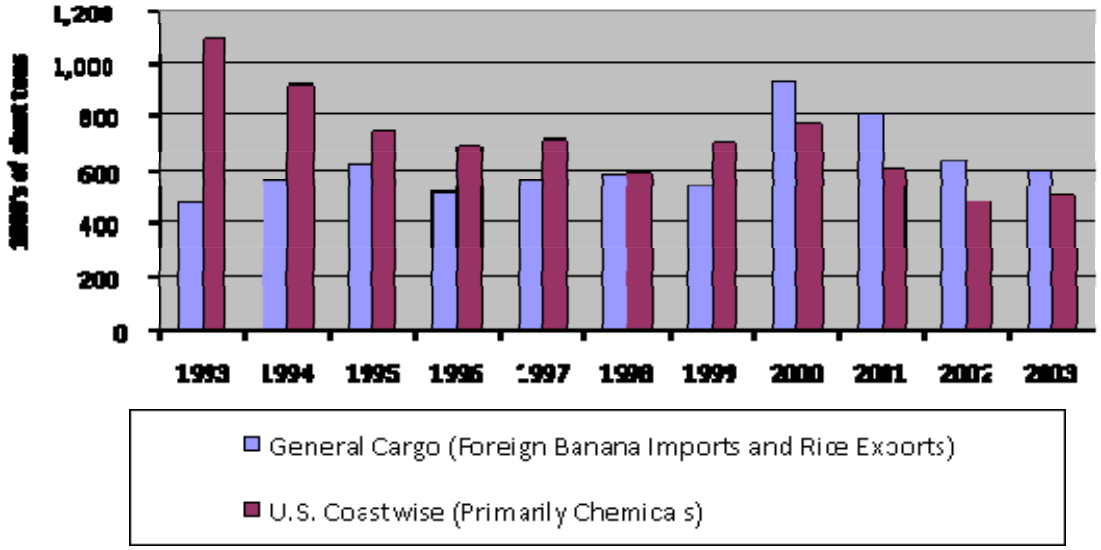
Freeport's remaining cargo primarily consists of banana imports, rice exports, and outbound coastwise chemical shipments. Table 15 presents the 1998–2003 distribution by major group, and Figure 8 displays 1993–2003 cargo trendlines for banana and rice cargoes. Most of the general cargo docks are located adjacent to the Brazos Harbor Turning Basin where the project depth is 36 feet. The Brazos Harbor Channel, leading to the Brazos Harbor Turning Basin, is 36 feet deep.

Table 15
Freeport Harbor General Cargo
Deep-Draft Commodities (1,000s of short tons)
Other than Petroleum and Chemical Foreign Imports and Exports

Year	Banana Imports	Rice Exports	Limestone & Rock Imports	Coastwise Shipments Chemicals*
1998	320	175	2	589
1999	301	174	3	708
2000	255	310	60	764
2001	173	210	149	604
2002	293	226	33	479
2003	233	210	83	511

*Primarily shipments of hydrocarbons.

Figure 8
Freeport Harbor
General Cargo (Imports and Exports) and Coastwise



Review of the 2001–2003 fleets showed use of some relatively large carriers for rice exports. The maximum-sized vessels were in the 42,000 to 64,000 DWT range. The design drafts for these vessels are in the 39- to 42-foot range. These larger vessels are used to export rice to Saudi Arabia. In total, rice exports represent an average of 35 percent of total general cargo movements. Annual rice export totals averaged 215,000 short tons for the period 1998–2003.

Over 2001–2003, large bulk carriers were used in the import of limestone and building materials. The vessels used were in the 45,000 to 67,000 DWT range and the design drafts of the vessels in the 40- to 44-foot range. Loaded drafts ranged from 35 to 39 feet. Total limestone imports for 2005 were 433,000 tons. Limestone imports represented 40 percent of 2003–2005 total general cargo tonnage. The majority of imports are from Cozumel, Mexico, and, to a smaller extent, Europe. There is a possibility that some limestone movements may realize deepening benefits.

The remainder of vessels used for general cargo were less than 20,000 DWT and were associated primarily with banana imports. Bananas constitute a significant share of Freeport general cargo; average imports for 1998–2003 were 233,000 short tons. Bananas are transported in refrigerated container vessels, the majority of which are in the 13,000 to 16,000 DWT range.

During initial screening, benefits were not established for these other cargos since petroleum-based cargo was the primary import/export. Also, these cargoes go to the Brazos Harbor Channel docks, which were not being considered for deepening and widening.

6.1.3 Stauffer Channel Modification

The transportation savings benefits for modification of the Stauffer Channel were investigated, and deepening benefits were calculated. The non-Federal sponsor proposed to extend the existing terminus of the Freeport Harbor Channel to reauthorize and include the Stauffer Channel. The length of the proposed channel would extend approximately 3,400 feet from the 45-foot Upper Turning Basin. The port presently ships and receives general cargo through the Brazos Harbor Turning Basin docks. As part of the feasibility study, optimization of the depth for the channel modification was determined. Depth alternatives of 36, 40, 42, 45, and 50 feet were initially evaluated. The results of the initial screening resulted in a more focused evaluation of a smaller range of depths. Analysis was conducted to determine the competitive advantage that Freeport might potentially have over competing ports. For instance, there is considerable overlap between the Houston and Freeport population centers, and a Freeport container terminal has the potential of capturing associated savings. In addition, Freeport offers an advantage over existing facilities in Houston because terminal capacity in Houston is near capacity.

Analyses then indicated that the most favorable geographic markets for containerized cargo terminal facilities situated in Freeport are some market hinterlands that are presently served regionally by the Port of Houston. The proposed Freeport container facility would be in competition with the Port of Houston facilities, specifically existing Barbours Cut and Bayport,

as well as planned phases of facilities at Bayport (Houston) and Shoal Point in Texas City. Presently, Barbours Cut and Bayport are the only facilities in place. Barbours Cut is the Gulf Coast's largest container facility and is the third largest in the Nation and, therefore, the Houston fleet was reviewed as a potential indicator of vessel size expectations.

Table 16 presents the current range of vessel sizes frequenting U.S. Gulf Coast container terminals. In 2003, one of the largest containerships using U.S. Gulf Coast ports included the *MSC Barbara*, an 85,000 DWT vessel operated by the Mediterranean Shipping Company. The *MSC Barbara*, which was constructed in 2002, represented less than 1 percent of container tonnage; however, it was representative of the size of containerships that Freeport wished to attract. For the ERDC ship simulation study, the even larger *Susan Maersk* containership was modeled. The results of the ERDC modeling revealed that none of the pilots controlling the *Susan Maersk* were able to bring the ship safely into the turning basin. In order to safely accommodate this vessel, several other improvements to the channel, including widening, would be necessary. Widening would be needed around the Big Bend area inbound from the Seaway Dock at the lower end of the channel to accommodate the *Susan Maersk*.

Table 16
Representative Gulf Coast Channel Containerships (2003)

DWT Range	TEU Range	% of Tonnage	LOA (feet)	Beam (feet)	Design Draft (feet)	Year Built
<40,000	<3,080	35.6	689	102	38	1996
40,000 to 62,000	3,300 to 4,315	64.0	851	106	42	1988
85,000	6,418	0.4	997	131	48	2002
Design Vessel for Freeport ERDC Ship Modeling: *Susan Maersk*						
104,696	7,226	n/a	1,138	141	48	1997
Additional Container Vessel Under Consideration (*Regina Maersk*, not modeled)						
85,000	6,418	n/a	1,043	141	46	1996

Based on the results of the ERDC modeling and concerns about project construction cost, smaller container vessels were considered (see Table 16). An additional variable in considering vessel size was the expected frequency of trips associated with S-class containerships. There were several containerships in the 50,000 to 62,000 DWT range calling on the Gulf Coast in 2003, and numerous calls for vessels in the 40,000 to 50,000 DWT range. Review of 2003 vessel transits indicated that vessels over 40,000 DWT transported 64 percent of Gulf Coast container cargo. Most vessels over 40,000 DWT have design drafts of 40 feet. The maximum design draft for vessels in the 40,000 to 50,000 DWT range is generally 42 to 43 feet. In 2003, a significant portion of the 50,000 to 62,000 DWT containerships calling the Gulf were constructed after 1995. Review of the percentage of tonnage by loaded draft showed that 5 percent of vessels were loaded to drafts of 36 feet or more and 3 percent were loaded to drafts of 38 feet or more. Initial analysis examined small container vessels.

6.2 FREEPORT HARBOR CHANNEL INITIAL BENEFIT SUMMARY

Project benefits were initially calculated at FY 05 discount rate of 5.375 percent and for the period 2006–2056. Based on the preliminary economic analysis, the detailed plan formulation would include deepening Freeport Harbor from 45 to 60 feet; widening of the Outer Bar Channel to 600 feet, based on ERDC modeling and pilot input; and deepening and widening the lower 3,700 feet of the Stauffer Channel, based on non-Federal input. The economic summary in Table 14 shows that the net benefits and BCR are maximized at 60 feet deep.

Based on ship simulation testing and cost and benefits analysis, detailed analysis was performed on project channel depths in the range of 55 to 60 feet.

7.0 DETAILED PLAN FORMULATION

7.1 GENERAL

The objective of a feasibility study is to arrive at a recommended plan after a reasonable number of alternatives have been analyzed. This involves a comparison between each alternative and the future without-project conditions and consequences, considering economic, environmental, and social impacts.

As previously noted, subsequent to initial plan formulation, the non-Federal sponsor, Port Freeport, applied to the USACE, Galveston District for a Clean Water Act (CWA) Section 404 permit and an RHA Section 10 permit for dredge and fill activities related to the widening of portions of the Freeport Harbor Channel from 400 feet to 600 feet. Port Freeport proposes to widen, but not deepen, portions of the Jetty Channel and the entire Outer Bar Channel. This decision is an integral part of the current LNG facilities that are under construction. The proposed permit action, widening only, is within the footprint of this proposed Federal project. The permit project site is located along the northern edge of the Jetty and Outer Bar channels. The permit was granted in March 2009, and construction will begin upon approval by the ASA(CW) for Federal assumption of maintenance. For this feasibility study, the permit construction is assumed to be in place and is considered the future without-project (FWOP-1) condition.

7.2 PROCESS

As detailed plan formulation began, the alternatives were reevaluated. In reevaluation of the Jetty Channel area, it was determined that in order to provide adequate stability of the rock jetties, the bottom width for a 60-foot-deep channel would have to be reduced. It was determined that 540 feet was the maximum bottom width that could be constructed between the jetties and maintain an acceptable factor of safety for jetty stability.

After the conclusion of the preliminary screening, detailed plan formulation focused on the refinement of two alternatives determined to be the most feasible: 60-x-540-foot and 55-x-600-foot channel improvements. All nonstructural alternatives had been eliminated. Detailed engineering analysis focused on development of hydrology and hydraulic analysis, channel layout, engineering quantities, geotechnical analysis, operations and maintenance, and cost estimating.

To evaluate the channel alternatives, several studies were conducted by the ERDC. The studies included Hydrodynamic/Salinity Modeling, Ship Simulation, Desktop Sediment Analysis, Hurricane Storm Surge, and Shoreline Impacts.

Along with these studies, benefits and cost analyses were conducted for the alternative depth and width alternatives. Since the new project channel in the Gulf of Mexico could extend an additional 2.6 miles, consideration of operation and maintenance costs was deemed necessary in conducting the analysis.

Environmental analyses were performed to identify the affected environment and what impacts the project would have on the area. Coordination with the resource agencies was conducted. Cultural studies were conducted for the study area. Mitigation requirements were determined.

The identification of the tentatively Recommended Plan was based on economic and environmental factors and local preferences. Costs were estimated for all the alternatives and compared to the benefits. Based on the ship simulation studies, the Brazosport Turning Basin was set at 1,200 feet. No work was proposed for the Brazos Harbor Channel and Turning Basin. Included in the costs are dredging, PA levee construction, and O&M costs for the 50-year period of analysis. Ecosystem mitigation requirements and costs were determined. More-detailed explanation of the analyses is located in the following sections of the report.

During detailed plan formulation, the local Sponsor expressed their preference for a channel deepening and widening project slightly different than the plan resulting from the NED analysis. This plan was designated as the Locally Preferred Plan (LPP). Analysis of the LPP was conducted.

8.0 ENGINEERING STUDIES

8.1 GENERAL

Engineering studies included Ship Simulation, Erosion, and Salinity investigations by ERDC; preliminary geotechnical investigations including sampling/analysis and preparation of a preliminary Dredged Material Management Plan (DMMP); in-house channel surveys; and Architect-Engineer (A-E) land surveys. Other engineering and design features utilized surveying and mapping, environmental quality/mitigation features, civil design, geotechnical design, structural design, access roads, operations and maintenance, cost estimates, data management, and schedules for design and construction. Preliminary alternative designs and screening-level cost estimates were developed in sufficient detail to substantiate the recommended plan and baseline cost estimate.

8.2 HYDROLOGY AND HYDRAULICS

8.2.1 Modeling Studies

The proposed modification of the navigation channel required several studies, which included field data collection, hydrodynamics, ship simulation, sediment, storm surge, and shoreline impacts. The Coastal Hydraulics Laboratory (CHL) of the ERDC conducted all of these studies.

8.2.1.1 Field Data Collection

A field data collection program was conducted during 2003. The primary purpose of the program was to obtain data needed to validate RMA-2 and TABS-MD numerical hydrodynamic models. The secondary objective of the program was to collect data for a desktop study to estimate the shoaling rates in the proposed modified navigation channels.

8.2.1.2 Hydrodynamic Study

The primary objective of the hydrodynamic model study was to provide accurate and representative current velocity fields for use in the ship simulator for the navigation study. The secondary objective was the development of a tool that was used to evaluate the general impacts of the design alternative improvements on circulation in the harbor.

The results showed that the numerical model was reasonably verified against field observations to make it a valuable tool in the evaluation of circulation effects associated with the design alternatives. The effects of the channel deepening were to have the tidal signal arrive about 30 minutes sooner. The tide range was increased only about 0.3 percent. The deepening reduced the currents as much as 0.2 feet per second (fps) in the western side of the channel, with a small

localized increase of 0.1 fps on the eastern flank of the channel. There is a greater reduction in ebb current magnitudes than in flood.

8.2.1.3 Ship Simulation

Three initial alternative channel plans, developed for Port Freeport for assessment of the new LNG facilities, were simulated by ERDC. All three plans assumed construction of the proposed LNG facility. Two of the initial plans were dropped and two additional plans were adapted for simulation. These simulations recommended the 60-x-600-foot channel, the 1,350-foot diameter turning basin at Brazosport, and some bend widening. The Stauffer Channel improvements were not recommended. Additional simulations were conducted during detailed plan formulation using a smaller containership for the Stauffer Channel and some tapering of the Outer Bar Channel inside the jetty. The two additional plans simulated were 60-x-540-foot and 55-x-600-foot for the Outer Bar Channel.

The additional simulations indicated, based on BPA comments and test results, no real problems in this area for either the 60-x-540-foot or 55-x-600-foot plan. Navigation issues do not indicate either of these plans in preference to the other. For example, for the 55-x-600-foot channel, the shallower depth may limit the loading of future vessel traffic that can call at the port. For the 60-x-540-foot channel, the narrow width may cause increased tug usage. Given the data collected by the study and the experience of the BPA, both plans are acceptable alternatives for the Freeport Harbor project.

Later simulations were developed for a 1,200-foot Brazosport Turning Basin, based on a 900- to 990-foot design vessel. Detailed economic analysis determined that this size vessel had the most economic benefits.

8.2.1.4 Sediment Study

The present dredging pattern and quantities would change as a result of the proposed modifications to the navigation channel. The objective of the sediment study was to estimate the shoaling rates in the modified navigation channel. A desktop study is an alternative method of obtaining preliminary answers without conducting a full-fledged numerical sediment transport modeling study. Such a desktop approach required field data on sediments, dredging quantities, and velocity results from a hydrodynamic model. In view of variations in salinity and currents in the Freeport system, velocity results from a three-dimensional (3D) hydrodynamic model were necessary.

The 3D model study concluded that there was no significant change or variation between the existing and proposed plan for the tides, currents, salinity, and flow patterns. It is expected that the quantity of maintenance dredging in the Freeport navigation channel will increase from the present average of 2.1 to 5.1 million cubic yards per year (mcy/yr) as a result of deepening and

widening the channel to 55 x 600 feet and the channel extension. The quantities for the 60-x-540-foot channel are approximately the same as the 55-x-600-foot plan.

8.2.1.5 Hurricane-induced Storm Surge Conditions

A numerical study was conducted to determine whether the planned improvements to the channel would make Freeport Harbor and adjacent low-lying areas more susceptible to inundation due to hurricane-induced storm surge. The improvements modeled were a 60-x-600-foot channel with a 1,350-foot Brazosport Turning Basin, which removed a portion of the southeastern peninsula (North Wave Barrier) that separates the GIWW from the harbor proper, and the proposed LNG improvements. The model found little change in peak water-surface elevations within the harbor resulting from the planned improvements. Estimated increases were about 0.16 foot. Consequently, the planned harbor improvements do not appear to make the harbor and adjacent low-lying areas more susceptible to storm surge from less-intense hurricanes.

8.2.1.6 Shoreline Impact Study

This study assessed the wave-induced impacts of deepening of the Freeport Harbor Channel in the Gulf of Mexico on the open-coastal shorelines adjacent to the project area. Based on coordination with ERDC, the plans proposed for analysis were 50-x-600-foot, 55-x-600-foot, 58-x-540-foot, and 60-x-540-foot. This study used the numerical model GENESIS to compute sediment transport rates and shoreline change rates for each of the four proposed channels. The conclusion from this analysis is that if any of the proposed deepening alternatives for the Freeport Outer Bar Channel are constructed, the wave-induced sediment transport impacts on the adjacent shorelines will be so slight as to not be noticeable and will be dwarfed by the interannual variability in shoreline position. The model predicts that the greater the proposed depth alternative, the greater the shoreline change, but for any alternative these impacts will be minor and will not extend farther than 3 to 4 miles on either side of the Freeport jetties.

8.3 GENERAL ENGINEERING

During plan formulation, general engineering investigations included such items as turning basins, extension channel, relocation of facilities, berthing/dock areas, bottom widths, channel alignment, bend easing, real estate, placement areas, mitigation and restoration areas, relocations, mitigation relocations, aids to navigation, dredging frequency, predicted shoaling rates, new work dredging, allowable overdepth, nonpay dredging, advance maintenance, and access roads.

8.4 STRUCTURAL

The structural activities conducted were as follows:

- Site visit and obtaining As-Built Drawings of the Shoreline Facilities

- Initial Evaluation of the Shoreline Facilities
- Impact Evaluation of the Shoreline Facilities
- Concept Design for Modifications of each of the impacted Shoreline Facilities
- Quantity Estimate for Cost Estimating of each of the necessary modifications
- Refine new work PAs for Drop-outlet structures
- PA Outlet Structural Design
- Structural Engineering Appendix Report

The structural engineering portion of Appendix B was prepared to provide sufficient information on design input for placement area spill boxes for all of the channel alternatives, and impact verification on each bridge, bulkhead, and dock from the proposed dredging. Design of spillbox structures of the new PAs and rehabilitation of existing spillboxes for use of the existing PA were conducted.

Docks and wharves were not analyzed, but several were identified as potentially requiring modifications due to the proposed incremental increases or channel improvement. Dredging volumes were estimated for the dock and berthing areas by taking the area of the berth and multiplying by assumed depth of cut. All berthing areas were assumed to be at the existing depth of the waterway. Associated costs relating to the facility's ability to utilize the new deep draft were identified by others.

8.5 GEOTECHNICAL STUDIES

Geotechnical studies were prepared to provide supporting technical information pertaining to the geotechnical aspects of the Freeport Harbor Project, including the placement area site development plan, proposed dredged material distribution to the disposal sites, available project soils information, preliminary design parameters used, and foundation design considerations. Use of available geotechnical investigations information, establishment of suitable design parameters and geotechnical assumptions, and production of quantities for a 50-year DMMP have been performed with the purpose of providing sufficient detail to substantiate the tentatively Recommended Plan and the baseline cost estimate.

Borings were obtained from the project area. Soil borings were obtained during the period between November 1962 and September 1978 and generally have been drilled to elevations ranging between 40 to 90 feet below MLT. Additional borings in the vicinity of the channel were obtained by Fugro Consultants LP in January and February of 2005 under the direction of the Port of Freeport for a separate widening project. Boring logs for PAs 8 and 9 were obtained in November of 2005, ranging in depth from 30 to 40 feet deep. Boring logs for existing PA 1 are from boring log data in a report by the Professional Service Industries, Inc., entitled "Subsurface Exploration and Foundation Recommendations for the Proposed Confined

Placement Site No. 1 – Port of Freeport – Freeport, TX" that was prepared for and under the direction of the Brazos River Harbor Navigation District in 1996. Borings ranged in depth from about 20 to 60 feet.

Sampling and testing of material was performed. During the drilling of borings referred to in Appendix B, undisturbed sampling of cohesive material was generally achieved by means of using a Shelby or a thin-walled tube with a minimum diameter of 3 inches. Split-spoon sampling was primarily employed on cohesionless to semicohesionless soil layers encountered, whereby disturbed samples were taken concurrent with Standard Penetration Tests (SPT) at various sampling intervals between the different drilling programs employed. Consistencies of cohesive materials were typically determined by means of visual classification, Pocket Penetrometer tests, and Torvane Shear tests. Some basic types of laboratory tests performed on cohesive materials included moisture content, unit dry weight, sieve analyses, liquid limit, and plastic limit. Sieve analyses were also performed on select samples of cohesionless materials. The results of these basic tests along with field boring log data were used to classify various material layers. Through various testing programs associated with borings discussed herein, Unconfined Compression Tests (UC) and Unconsolidated Undrained Triaxial Compression Tests (UU, or Q-tests) on representative samples have been utilized for estimates of undrained shear strengths for "end of construction" or "immediate" foundation loading condition considerations. For undrained shear strength estimates, in some cases the UC and UU laboratory results have been used in conjunction with field testing data and notes on the boring logs, such as pocket penetrometer readings taken, and correlations from SPT testing done on materials encountered during disturbed sampling where some cohesivelike properties were discovered (such as silts, sandy and clayey silts, or clays with various interbedded sand and silt layers).

8.5.1 Dredged Materials and Potential for Beneficial Use

Results from bed sediment studies for data collected between September 1987 and May 2000 indicate the following average percentages of bed sediments have been encountered in the channel:

1. Outer Bar – About 82 percent fine-grained sediments (silts and clays) and 18 percent sands

2. Jetty Channel – About 86 percent fine-grained sediments (silts and clays) and 14 percent sands

3. Main Channel – About 95 percent fine-grained sediments (silts and clays) and 5 percent sands

A review of boring data from the Upper Turning Basin out to the Gulf indicates that new work materials are about 80 to 90 percent clays (of primarily stiff consistency with some traces of silts or clayey silts) and about 10 to 20 percent sands of various densities.

The Federal project considered potential beneficial uses identified by the permit widening action such as beach renourishment and marsh restoration for new work dredged material. While soil borings in the project area indicated some sandy material, no concentrated lenses were identified, and the high percentage of clay material present would not be compatible with existing sandy beach soils in terms of renourishment efforts. The potential for marsh restoration was also precluded because sensitive resources (oysters) and fishing activities exist in some of the proposed restoration areas, and the cost of placing new work dredged material for restoration activities at another site would be prohibitive.

8.5.2 Ocean Dredged Material Disposal Sites

Existing Maintenance and New Work ODMDSs are located within the project area (see Figure 2) at the North American Datum (NAD) 83 coordinates below. These are dispersive sites consisting of approximately 1,291 acres and 2,236 acres, respectively, and were originally designated in the EPA FEIS for the Freeport Harbor 45-foot Project in January 1990. In August 2008, USACE gained EPA concurrence for placing maintenance and new work dredged material from the proposed project into these sites.

1) Maintenance ODMDS Coordinates (NAD 83) are as follows:

X = 3,163,694 Y = 13,530,298

X = 3,166,836 Y = 13,527,077

X = 3,157,888 Y = 13,518,349

X = 3,154,745 Y = 13,521,570

2) New Work ODMDS Coordinates (NAD 83) are as follows:

X = 3,169,494 Y = 13,516,802

X = 3,174,571 Y = 13,511,584

X = 3,164,981 Y = 13,502,254

X = 3,159,904 Y = 13,507,472

The offshore placement areas have been modeled. The MDFATE (Multiple Disposal Fate) model was utilized to analyze the effects of offshore placement to ensure conformance with fill height restrictions on the bottom of the seafloor.

8.5.3 Jetty Stability Analysis

Given possible restrictions to channel depth and width due to jetty stability issues, an analysis was performed to determine:

a. the maximum channel width at a project channel depth of 60 feet

b. the maximum channel depth at a channel width of 600 feet

(Note: for an authorized depth of 60 feet, it was anticipated that the required depth in the Jetty Channel would be 62 feet with an allowable overdepth of 2 feet, for the analysis)

Slope stability of the North and South jetties was considered between stations 0+00 to 43+00 (north) and 46+00 (south). Latest available surveys at the time of analysis were reviewed including postdredging channel cross sections dated January 2006 and jetty/channel cross sections dated December 2005. Two project constraints were established regarding the configuration of the jetty slopes:

a. do not undercut the toe of the South Jetty

b. maintain a 50-foot bench at the toe of the North Jetty

8.5.4 Critical Locations and Findings

Slope stability analyses were conducted at Station 10+00 for both the North and South jetties. This cross section was determined the most critical due to a soft clay layer identified in Boring B-6 along the South Jetty. Slope stability analyses were also conducted at Station 20+00 on the North Jetty due to a changed soil profile at this location. Both borings B-5 and 74-23 indicated a loose to medium-dense sand layer at this location. At each cross section, the stability of the existing slope configuration was evaluated. At Station 10+00, the existing slope angle on the South Jetty was projected to a depth of 62 feet, and the maximum channel width was determined that would enable a bench width of at least 50 feet at the toe of the North Jetty. This maximum width was found to be 540 feet. This configuration is labeled 62x540 in Table 17. A second configuration (55x600) was determined by raising the elevation of the channel until a width of 600 feet was achieved. This channel depth was determined to be approximately 55 feet. Both of these configurations hold the slope angle on the South Jetty side resulting in a shift of the existing channel centerline (110 feet to the north for the 62x540 channel and 120 feet to the north for the 55x600 channel). A summary of the calculated minimum factors of safety, resulting from

stability analysis for long-term conditions, is provided in Table 17. It was concluded that in order to maintain an adequate factor of safety for jetty stability, the channel alternative would need to be approximately 60 x 540 feet or 55 x 600 feet.

Table 17
Jetty Stability Analysis – Summary of Calculated Minimum Factors of Safety

	Associated Soil Borings	Existing Conditions	62x540 Channel	55x600 Channel
South Jetty (Sta 10+00)	B-6	1.4	1.3	1.3
North Jetty (Sta 10+00)	75-92	1.5	1.5	1.5
North Jetty (Sta 20+00)	B-5, 74-23	1.6	1.5	1.6

Note: Borings B-5 and B-6 taken by Port Freeport contractor, January 2005. Boring 74-23 taken by USACE, August 1974, and Boring 75-92 taken by USACE, October 1976.

8.5.5 Levee and Channel Templates

Slopes of 3 to 1 (horizontal to vertical) were adopted for levee templates and channel cuts, and levee crown widths of 10 feet were used, for generating the feasibility level quantities. Where preliminary stability analyses were pursued, these slope angles were incorporated. Additional and more-detailed stability analyses are anticipated to be done during Preconstruction Engineering and Design (PED). For the channel template, the 3:1 slope is consistent with the original plan presented in the General Design Memorandum No. 1 (dated April 1979).

8.5.6 Jetty Sand Retention

The core stone structure in the jetties has been designed to minimize sand transport directly through the structure, and any sand that makes it directly through the actual stone structure is likely very minor. Occasional damage incurred or repair work needed to the existing structure from time to time, to ensure the structure continues to function properly, is typically handled under the existing O&M budget/funding, and thus would not be considered a new cost for the new channel deepening.

8.5.7 Recommended Additional Investigations

8.5.7.1 Freeport Channel

Along Freeport Channel for the new project, during PED, or prior to the final design for the initial construction contract, it is recommended that additional borings be taken at locations that include but are not limited to (1) along the reach above the Upper Turning Basin and along Stauffer Channel at about 1,000-foot intervals to a depth below the depth of new cut, and at other channel locations where gaps or deficiencies are indentified from prior-obtained foundation information; and (2) verification borings or investigations supplemental to prior work done in areas where channel cuts will encroach on critical features or structures such as the jetties.

8.5.7.2 Upland Placement Areas

At existing PA 1, prior to the next O&M construction contract under the new 50-year project, it is recommended that additional borings be taken at locations that include but are not limited to (1) areas where levee alignment adjustments have taken place since prior drilling work done at the site; (2) locations where results from prior drilling/testing indicate are most critical for additional analyses; (3) locations where gaps or deficiencies in prior foundation information taken are identified; and (4) at select locations within the placement area to assess the latest crust levels from prior dredge fill placement or other soil materials for use as borrow for the initial mechanical levee work.

8.5.7.3 New Placement Areas 8 and 9

At new PAs 8 and 9, prior to the first O&M construction contract, when stockpiled new work material will be shaped to new levee height, it is recommend that additional drilling be performed into levee foundations to verify extent of consolidation and foundation strength gain from surcharge of initial levee and new work stockpiles, and stability checks be performed in critical foundation areas identified.

8.6 COST ESTIMATES

Two Mii estimates were developed: (1) NED, and (2) LPP. The original estimate was developed using October 2007 price levels and the latest labor rates. The estimate was divided into eight contracts, with each contract being organized in accordance with the work breakdown structure. The midpoint dates of the construction contracts were developed in conjunction with the project manager for developing the fully funded costs. The estimate was prepared in accordance with ER 1110-2-1304, dated March 31, 1994. The costs were escalated in accordance with the above ER and Engineering Circular (EC) 11-2-187, dated March 30, 2007. All these data were input into the Total Project Cost Sheet (TPCS).

When the Mii estimates were started in October 2007, the marine fuel price was locked in at $2.68/gallon. The O&M estimate was prepared in October 2007, with an effective pricing date of October 2007. Contingencies for all contracts were developed using the Cost and Schedule Risk Analysis (CSRA) process and the Crystal Ball software.

An Agency Technical Review (ATR) of the cost estimate, construction schedules, and contingencies was performed in July 2008 by the USACE, Mobile District. The dredge estimates were updated using the July 2008 marine fuel price of $4.60/gallon. The Mii estimate was updated with the new dredge costs. A formal Cost Risk Analysis was performed with the cooperation of the Cost Engineering Directorate of Expertise (DX) of the Walla Walla District in August 2008. The risks were quantified and a cost risk model developed to determine a contingency at the 80 percent confidence level. The new contingencies along with the updated

estimates were used to revise the TPCS. The O&M estimate was revised using the July 2008 marine fuel price.

9.0 DETAILED ECONOMIC ANALYSIS

9.1 GENERAL

This section presents the detailed economic analysis for the Freeport Channel Feasibility Study. The project benefits were calculated based on reductions in transportation costs generated from more-efficient vessel loading and from reductions in vessel delays. The benefits were calculated for a 2014–2064 period of analysis using FY 10 Federal discount rate of 4.375 percent and the deep-draft vessel operating costs contained in unpublished update to EGM 08-04. The proposed channel improvements are in response to the need for deeper access required by liquid bulk vessels, the introduction of larger vessels, to allow existing fleet to load more fully, and the reauthorization of the upper reaches of the harbor. Additional documentation associated with benefit calculations outlined in this section is contained in Appendix A.

The existing Federal project includes a 47-x-400-foot offshore Outer Bar Channel, a 45-x-400-foot Main Channel, and 36-foot depth to its general cargo docks. Figure 9 shows the port facilities and the major terminals. The existing project extends approximately 9.7 miles from its offshore Outer Bar to the base of the Stauffer Channel. A 45-foot project depth extends from the offshore Jetty Channel through the Upper Turning Basin just below the Stauffer Channel. The 36-foot-depth Brazos Harbor Turning Basin, and its associated access channel, intersect the 45-foot channel just below the Stauffer Channel. The Brazos Harbor access channel, harbor, and turning basin contain the majority of existing public facilities, including the U.S. Gulf Coast's second-busiest container terminal. Principal commodities include crude petroleum, bulk fuels, chemicals, and general and container cargo. The upper reach of the Main Channel contains the deauthorized Stauffer Channel. Stauffer Channel traffic consists of seismic and crew vessels associated with the offshore oil industry and commercial fishing vessels. Vessel repair and layberth facilities are located on the channel as well. The Stauffer Channel and Turning Basin were deauthorized in 1974 under Section 12, Appendix C, and PL 251. Since deauthorization, the channel depth deteriorated from 25 feet to approximately 18 feet. The depth limitations and impediments associated with silting in the deauthorized channel reach generate safety concerns and contribute to declining utilization patterns. Inclusion of Stauffer as part of the Federal project was evaluated as part of the current study.

9.2 EXISTING CHANNEL USE

Freeport provides access to one of the largest petrochemical complexes in the world. Major petrochemical industries include ConocoPhillips Petroleum, Dow Chemical, and BASF. Located adjacent to the channel is Dow Chemical Company's Texas Division plant. Dow produces large quantities of basic industrial chemicals. Crude petroleum and petrochemical products are distributed from Freeport to the Midwest by pipeline, barge, and rail car. The Seaway/TEPPCO Terminal receives Suezmax tankers and is located at the lower end of the channel near Station

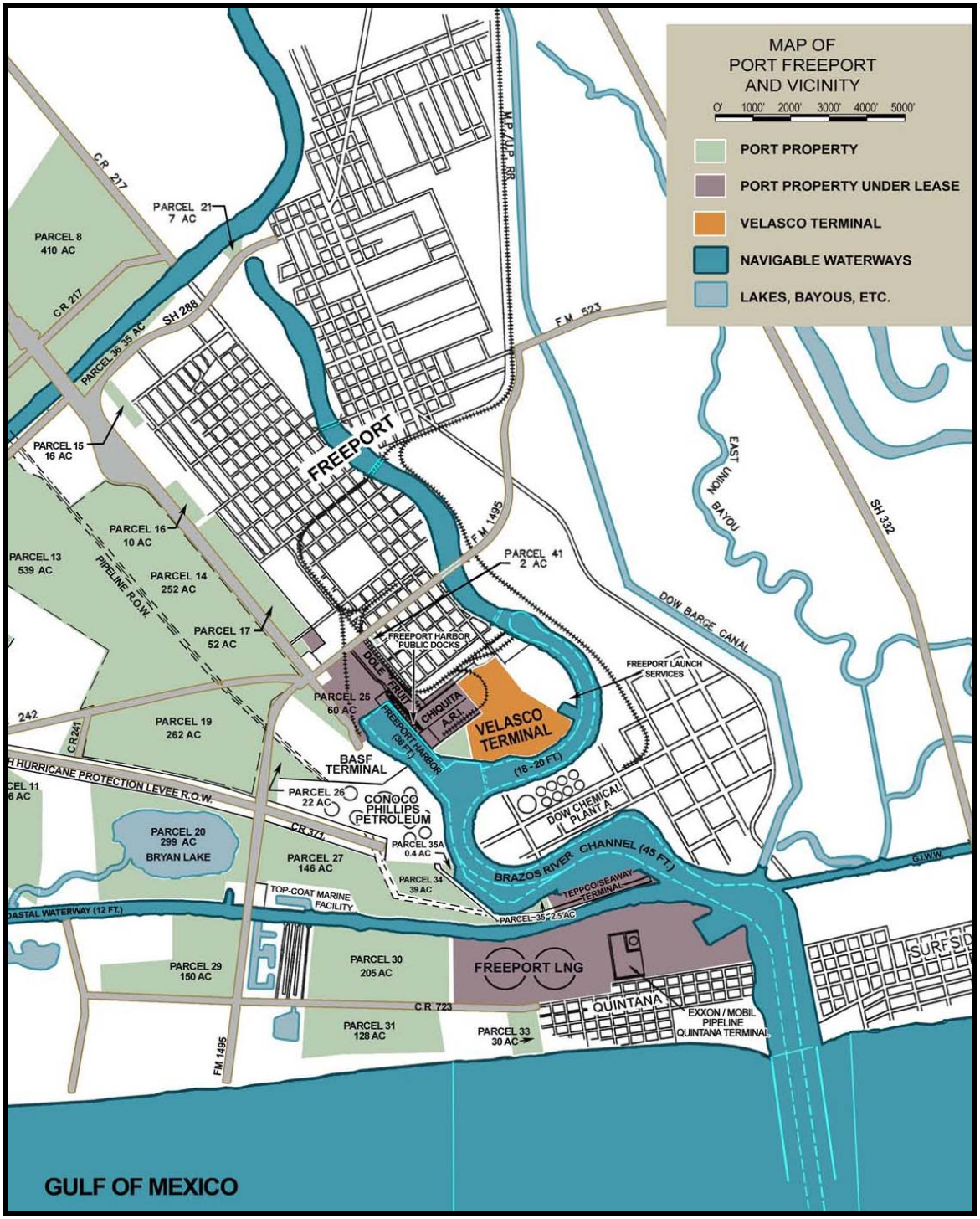


Figure 9
Freeport Harbor Facilities

115+00. Seaway Crude Pipeline Company is a partnership between wholly owned subsidiaries of TEPPCO and ConocoPhillips. The Seaway pipeline extends from the U.S. Gulf Coast to Cushing, Oklahoma. The pipeline also provides regional connections to refineries in Sweeny, Texas City, and Houston. In addition to Seaway, ConocoPhillips has an oil terminal and large tank farm fronting the waterway near the Upper Turning Basin. The crude petroleum tank farm has six storage tanks capable of handling approximately 3.3 million barrels of crude with pipeline connections to their refinery in nearby Sweeny. Sweeny is 28 miles to the northwest of the Freeport Channel. From Sweeny, crude petroleum is transported to Cushing, Oklahoma. Refined products are also distributed by pipelines to western terminals in Colorado and northeast through Kansas, Missouri, and Illinois. A natural gas liquid (NGL) processing unit and olefins plant, jointly owned and operated by Chevron and ConocoPhillips, is located at the Sweeny complex.

Freeport's crude petroleum terminals also transmit crude oil to the Bryan Mound SPR site. Bryan Mound is 3 miles southwest of Freeport. Two principal crude pipelines extend from Bryan Mound: a 4-mile, 30-inch-diameter line to the ConocoPhillips terminal and docks and a 46-inch line to Sweeny and Texas City, Houston, and the Midwest. The SPR is a U.S. Government complex of four sites with deep underground storage caverns created in salt domes along the Texas and Louisiana Gulf Coast that store emergency supplies of crude oil.

In addition to its existing base and expansion of its new container terminal, the existing condition includes an LNG terminal. The LNG terminal became operational in late 2008 and was constructed by a partnership that includes ConocoPhillips and Dow Chemical. The terminal is located along the southern edge of the Freeport Harbor Jetty Channel near Station 65+00. Its docks were built to accommodate vessels 1,099 feet long by 177 feet wide. This vessel design prompted the non-Federal sponsor to pursue widening of the offshore Outer Bar and Jetty channels from 400 to 600 feet under the Section 204 authority of WRDA 86, as amended in 1990. Phase 1 of the terminal is presently in operation, and vessel traffic commenced in April 2008. Prior to the Section 204 initiative, widening was being evaluated as part of the current Federal feasibility study. While the LNG terminal provided the impetus for the Section 204 analysis, channel widening would also benefit existing and future traffic. Freeport's existing traffic, particularly crude petroleum tankers and product tankers, are subject to vessel size limitations due to the existing 400-foot channel width. The BPA's current rules stipulate maximum lengths and beams of 820 feet or 145 feet. Daylight-only operation is enforced for vessels greater than 750 feet long or 107 feet wide. Additionally, the beam constraints for existing traffic and introduction of LNG and container vessels are anticipated to exacerbate traffic delays.

While the majority of Freeport's cargo consists of crude oil, bulk fuels, and chemicals, the port's general cargo base also includes a variety of temperature-sensitive cargos such as meat and vegetables. Freeport cargo includes 6 percent of U.S. rice exports and 6 percent of U.S. banana

imports. P&O, a multinational container terminal operator and stevedore, currently provides container and terminal operations in Freeport for the special requirements of the Dole, Chiquita, and Turbana fruit distributors. Freeport's refrigerated cargo facility has been in operation since 1984. The fruit distribution facilities were constructed by the port and are leased to the terminal operators. The DWT range for refrigerated cargo vessels is 11,000 to 16,000 DWT. The median beam width of the refrigerated cargo vessels is 79 feet. Analysis of vessel-on-order data from the Lloyd's Register-Fairplay (2007) showed that beam widths of 79 feet represent the maximum for refrigerated cargo vessels. The largest general cargo vessels using the public terminal range from 40,000 to 46,000 DWT. The larger carriers are used for meat, sugar, cereal, and vegetable imports from Brazil and Europe. Freeport's existing temperature-sensitive cargos and rice and other general and containerized base cargo docks are located in the 36-foot-deep Brazos Harbor Turning Basin. Traffic through the general cargo basin also includes wind-energy equipment.

9.3 CHANNEL REACHES

In terms of vessel traffic and facilities, the existing Federal project contains three general operational reaches and one deauthorized reach. The first reach starts offshore at Station –350+00 and goes to Station 115+00, and includes the Lower Turning Basin and the Brazosport Turning Basin. This 45-foot-deep reach provides access to crude petroleum tankers using docks operated by Seaway Crude Pipeline Company. The maximum-sized vessels using the channel are 820-foot-long by 145-foot-wide crude oil tankers unloaded at Seaway. The length and beam of these vessels generally correspond to a 120,000 DWT vessel. Freeport's LNG terminal is also located in this reach, adjacent to the intersection of the Freeport Channel and the GIWW. Larger tankers, in the 135,000 to 175,000 DWT range, are handled on a "per job" basis with a one-time waiver from the BPA.

The second major reach of the channel extends from the Brazosport Turning Basin to the Upper Turning Basin near Station 174+00. The Upper Turning Basin is 1,200 feet in diameter. Facilities in this reach include Dow Chemical and ConocoPhillips. Vessel traffic consists of product carriers and crude petroleum tankers. The largest vessels using this upper reach are 90,000 to 100,000 DWT crude petroleum tankers. The chemical carriers used in this section generally range in size from 22,000 to 50,000 DWT. The design drafts for chemical carriers at the upper end of this DWT range generally are 42 to 43 feet. Review of the chemical carriers on order as of January 2009 showed that 22 percent have design drafts over 42 feet and 1.6 percent have design drafts over 46 feet, with 48 feet representing the maximum draft.

The next reach is the side channel providing access to the Brazos Harbor Turning Basin and general cargo facilities. The 36-foot-deep channel intersects with the Main Channel near Station 170+00, just above ConocoPhillips's petroleum docks. Brazos Harbor Turning Basin vessel traffic primarily consists of refrigerated container vessels delivering bananas and general cargo vessels shipping rice. The configuration of the access area and turning basin limits future

expansion opportunities due to the high density of docks and landside facilities. The water and landside limitations of the general cargo reaches prompted development of the adjacent Velasco property for the construction of the new container terminal. The new Velasco container terminal is located on property bordering the existing 45-foot Project and the Stauffer Channel and just outside the Upper Turning Basin (see Figure 9). Work is presently under way on 800 feet of dock and 35 acres of backland (Phase I), of what eventually will be a 1,200-foot-long dock and a 90-acre terminal (Phase II). The first phase is anticipated to be operational by late 2010.

The fourth reach contains the deauthorized Stauffer Channel and turning basin. The Velasco container terminal is located in the lower end of the Stauffer Channel between stations 174+00 and 222+00. The upper reach of the Stauffer Channel is from stations 222+00 to 256+00. The existing channel depth is 18 feet from stations 174+00 to 256+00.

The existing project includes four turning basins. The Lower Turning Basin is 750 feet in diameter and located near Station 70+00. Next is the Brazosport Turning Basin, which is 1,200 feet in diameter and is located near Station 110+00. The Brazos Harbor Turning Basin is 750 feet in diameter and is located in the 36-foot channel reach. The Upper Turning Basin is 1,200 feet in diameter and is located at the upper end of the existing 45-foot-deep Federal project and east of the Brazos Harbor Turning Basin access channel.

9.4 EXISTING TRAFFIC RULES

The BPA's current rules stipulate maximum lengths and beams of 820 and 145 feet, respectively, and daylight-only operation for vessels greater than 750 feet long or 107 feet wide. For crude petroleum tankers, the length and beam of 820 by 145 feet applies to a tanker size of approximately 120,000 DWT. The maximum loaded draft is dictated by the BPA's rules, which stipulate a maximum loaded draft of 42 feet. There is an additional criterion of 10 percent of design draft plus 1 foot. Transit of larger tankers may be granted on a case-by-case basis when the wind is less than 20 knots and current at the jetty mouth is less than 0.5 knot. One-way traffic rules apply to vessels over 750 feet long and 107 feet wide. Based on BPA input, the effect of channel widening, which will be completed under the Section 204 study, would relax these rules.

Ship simulation studies conducted at the ERDC found that a channel width of 600 feet would be necessary to accommodate the 264,000 m^3 LNG design vessel. This vessel is 1,131 feet long by 177 feet wide and has a corresponding DWT of 122,000. Discussion with the BPA and the results of ERDC studies conducted for the feasibility study concluded that a 600-foot channel width was necessary to accommodate this vessel design. In general, Freeport receives fewer large tankers than other ports with comparable channel depths or even than those with less channel depth due to this width constraint.

The ability to deploy larger vessels or load the existing fleet more fully will reduce per ton transportation costs for vessels using Freeport. Larger vessels can carry a greater cargo load than the current restricted size class of vessels. Even with a restricted draft of 42 feet, the greater load should result in a lower cost per ton of transportation as the percentage increased level of tonnage per ship will be greater than the percentage increase in cost. As a result, cost per ton to move the same level of cargo will decline. Examination of Freeport's deep-draft vessel fleet statistics showed that 80 percent of recent crude petroleum tonnage was transported in vessels with design drafts over 44 feet.

The results of the ERDC studies conducted for the feasibility study and the LNG permit showed that a channel width of 500 feet will enable the use of vessels of 1,000 feet in length. The ERDC studies indicated that a channel width of 600 feet would successfully accommodate vessels of 1,100 feet long and 164 feet wide. With a wider channel, there is reduced potential for delays due to longshore crosscurrents. Night-time transits will be possible for vessels larger than 750 feet long and 106 feet wide, and two-way traffic will be possible for a larger range of vessels. As noted, other ports in the region have the capability of handling these larger vessels, so Freeport will not be the only port in the region to accept these vessels.

9.5 TRAFFIC OVERVIEW

Freeport experienced strong growth over the past decade, with total tonnage increasing from an average of 16.1 million short tons for 1994–1995 to 28.5 million for 2004–2006. In 2008, Freeport ranked 26th in the Nation in terms of total tonnage in 2007, down from 27th in previous years but up from 38th in the early 1990s. In terms of foreign imports and exports, Freeport currently ranks 16th among U.S. ports, also down slightly from previous years but up from 25th in the early 1990s.[2] Approximately 85 percent of the Freeport tonnage total consists of deep-draft movements. The remaining 15 percent consists of shallow-draft GIWW traffic. Table 18 presents Freeport's tonnage by major commodity groups through 2008. Petroleum, specifically crude petroleum, dominates total tonnage. Freeport is contained in the U.S. Gulf Coast PADD III. PADD III includes the states of Texas, Louisiana, Arkansas, Mississippi, Alabama, and New Mexico. Freeport's crude petroleum imports represent 4 percent of the U.S. total and 7 percent of the U.S. Gulf Coast PADD III region.

Table 19 presents Freeport's crude petroleum imports and the port's share of the national and regional totals. Freeport's import growth relates in part to its crude petroleum pipeline distribution network with national links and regional connections from Seaway and ConocoPhillips terminals to refineries in Sweeny, Texas City, and Houston. The Seaway pipeline system provides a critical link in the crude oil supply chain for Central and Midwest refining centers. During the 1990s, partnerships between Phillips Petroleum, TEPPCO, Seaway,

[2] USACE, Waterborne Commerce of the U.S., Part 5, National Summary, IWR-WCSC-09, 2006–2007 and 1991–1993.

and ARCO authorized the construction of two new storage tanks at Phillips's Sweeny tank farm. The two new tanks expanded the shell tank storage capacity at Sweeny from 1.6 to 2.6 million barrels. The expansion increased the capacity of the Seaway crude system from approximately 220,000 to 250,000 BPD. These changes coincided with the completion of the 45-foot Project depth and offshore jetty expansion in the mid-1990s.

Table 18
Freeport Harbor Tonnage by Major Commodity Groups (1,000s of short tons)
(1970–2008)

	Major Deep-Draft Commodities								
Year	Crude Oil Imports	Petroleum Products Imports	Petroleum Products Exports	Chemical Imports	Chemical Exports	Other	Total Ocean-Going	Inland Waterway Barge Cargo	Total Tonnage
1970	0	0	0	0	1,082	1,209	2,291	2,992	5,283
1980	12,498	221	0	301	1,162	3,117	17,299	2,832	20,131
1990	5,472	17	26	149	1,093	3,407	10,164	4,330	14,494
1991	6,175	38	10	183	967	1,895	9,268	6,398	15,666
1992	5,891	53	14	163	871	2,761	9,753	5,200	14,953
1993	7,025	18	25	176	931	1,564	9,739	4,286	14,025
1994	10,073	259	17	187	1,431	1,483	13,450	4,000	17,450
1995	10,378	1,345	73	344	1,425	1,357	14,922	4,740	19,662
1996	15,074	1,887	27	275	1,418	1,199	19,880	4,691	24,571
1997	16,742	1,863	117	333	1,522	1,272	21,849	4,432	26,281
1998	19,527	1,825	46	255	1,724	1,175	24,552	4,462	29,014
1999	18,321	1,644	39	341	1,633	1,247	23,225	4,851	28,076
2000	19,770	2,054	45	379	2,217	1,685	26,150	4,835	30,985
2001	19,307	2,413	40	583	1,748	1,407	25,498	4,645	30,143
2002	18,019	736	119	663	1,907	1,119	22,563	4,601	27,164
2003	19,672	1,857	87	778	2,104	1,114	25,612	4,925	30,537
2004	20,602	2,873	91	835	2,622	2,093	29,116	4,792	33,908
2005	22,000	1,779	91	691	2,509	1,860	28,930	4,672	33,602
2006	21,706	1,080	109	705	2,551	1,420	27,571	4,576	32,147
2007	18,523	1,046	90	710	2,691	1,005	24,065	5,151	29,598
2008	20,607	955	81	602	2,406	1,347	25,998	3,844	29,842

Source: USACE, Waterborne Commerce of the U.S., Part 2, 1970–2008.

Table 19
Comparison of Freeport and Regional and National Totals
Crude Petroleum Imports (1,000s of short tons)

Year	Freeport Imports	PADD III Imports	U.S. Total Imports	Freeport % of	
				PADD III	U.S. Total
1990	5,472	178,052	322,433	3.1	1.7
1991	6,175	174,852	316,310	3.5	2.0
1992	5,891	184,871	333,666	3.2	1.8
1993	7,025	204,356	371,267	3.4	1.9
1994	10,073	221,020	386,381	4.6	2.6
1995	10,378	222,164	395,484	4.7	2.6
1996	15,074	237,708	411,824	6.3	3.7
1997	16,742	252,270	449,961	6.6	3.7
1998	19,527	267,175	476,231	7.3	4.1
1999	18,321	270,491	477,592	6.8	3.8
2000	19,770	281,170	497,547	7.0	4.0
2001	19,307	292,859	510,298	6.6	3.8
2002	18,019	282,226	499,999	6.4	3.6
2003	19,672	300,325	528,703	6.6	3.7
2004	20,602	316,402	553,337	6.5	3.7
2005	22,000	310,493	553,923	7.1	4.0
2006	21,706	309,399	553,489	7.0	3.9
2007	18,523	306,956	521,948	6.0	3.6
1995/1997 Avg.	14,065	237,381	419,090	5.9	3.3
2005/2007 Avg.	20,743	308,949	543,120	6.7	3.8
	1994/1996 to 2004/2006 Compound Annual Growth (AAG) Rates(%)				
	4.0	2.7	2.6	1.3	1.4

Source: USACE and EIA, 1990–2007.

While the EIA shows all of Freeport's crude oil imports being tied to ConocoPhillips's Sweeny refinery, the point of demarcation is one of two docks on the Freeport Ship Channel. The Sweeny refinery is 28 miles to the northwest of Freeport. The refinery primarily receives crude oil through the deepwater Seaway and the ConocoPhillips terminals on the Freeport Channel. Approximately 90 percent of crude oil ship tonnage is discharged at the Seaway dock, the remaining 10 percent at the ConocoPhillips dock. Both the Seaway and ConocoPhillips terminals provide access to the regional and national pipeline network.

9.5.1 Petroleum and Chemical Products

Regional production includes petroleum products such as transportation fuels like gasoline, diesel fuel, and jet fuel, and chemical products such as sodium hydroxide, complex hydrocarbons, and ammonia. For 2004–2006, the petroleum and chemical imports and exports totaled 5.3 million short tons. Freeport's products consist primarily of petroleum product imports and chemical exports. Petroleum products are distributed throughout the Midwest and southeastern United States by pipeline, barge, and railcar. Chemicals are primarily distributed by inland waterway barge.

As shown in Table 18, petroleum product imports experienced high growth after 1994. Imports totaled 259 thousand short tons in 1994 and increased to 1.3 million in 1995. The increases experienced in the mid-1990s were associated with lube oil imports, which represented an average of nearly 70 percent of 1995–2000 petroleum product imports. While experiencing tremendous growth from 1994 to 1995, total petroleum product imports have remained relatively steady since the mid-1990s (see Table 18). In spite of overall increases since the early 1990s, Freeport's share of U.S. petroleum product imports has remained between 1 and 2 percent since the mid-1990s. Freeport's petroleum product exports are much lower than imports and are variable and averaged 97 thousand short tons for 2004–2006. Freeport's petroleum product exports represent less than 1 percent of the U.S. total product export. Freeport exports 4.6 percent of U.S. chemicals. Chemical export volumes for 2004–2007 averaged 2.6 million short tons and represent record highs.

9.5.2 General and Other Cargo

Freeport's remaining cargo primarily consists of banana imports, rice exports, and outbound coastwise chemical shipments. Distribution of these commodities by major group is displayed in Table 20. Freeport imports 6 percent of the U.S. banana imports and exports 6 percent of rice exports. Bananas and rice are transported through docks located within the Brazos Harbor Turning Basin where the project depth is 36 feet. Bananas are transported in refrigerated cargo vessels. Future use of larger vessels for banana imports is not anticipated.

Table 20
Freeport Harbor Other Ocean-going Cargo
Major Commodities 1970–2007
(1,000s of short tons)

Year	Banana Imports	Rice Exports	Bulk Materials & Manufactured Goods	Coastwise Chemicals		Group Total	Total Ocean-going Tonnage	% of Total Ocean-going Tonnage
				Receipts	Shipments*			
1970	0	0	1	118	563	682	2,291	30
1975	0	100	18	130	537	784	5,482	14
1980	0	32	1	154	614	801	17,299	5
1985	203	24	1	158	217	602	10,319	6
1990	133	195	4	109	284	725	10,164	7
1995	174	287	8	62	380	911	14,922	6
1996	202	247	12	41	344	846	19,880	4
1997	133	212	8	71	527	951	21,849	4
1998	320	175	5	86	426	1,012	24,552	4
1999	301	174	11	82	428	996	23,225	4
2000	255	310	76	6	555	1,202	26,150	5
2001	173	210	160	10	533	1,086	25,498	4
2002	293	226	47	0	419	985	22,563	4
2003	233	210	89	0	443	975	25,612	4
2004	237	203	504	0	712	1,656	29,116	6
2005	300	245	591	1	445	1,582	28,930	5
2006	315	215	240	0	350	1,120	27,571	4
2007	354	101	405	0	281	1,141	24,065	5

Source: USACE, Waterborne Commerce of the U.S., Part 2, 1970–2007.
*Primarily consists of shipments of hydrocarbons.

Rice is transported in general cargo vessels, and the size of these vessels has grown. The largest general cargo vessels using the public terminal range from 40,000 to 46,000 DWT. The larger carriers are used for meat, sugar, cereal, and vegetable imports from Brazil and Europe. There are some indications of transitions to larger vessels for bulk materials, chemicals, and general cargo. While more deeply loaded vessels are not anticipated for the turning basin reach, the port is expanding general and container cargo facilities just outside the turning basin reach due to capacity constraints within the basin and the introduction of larger container vessels for a wider range of commodities.

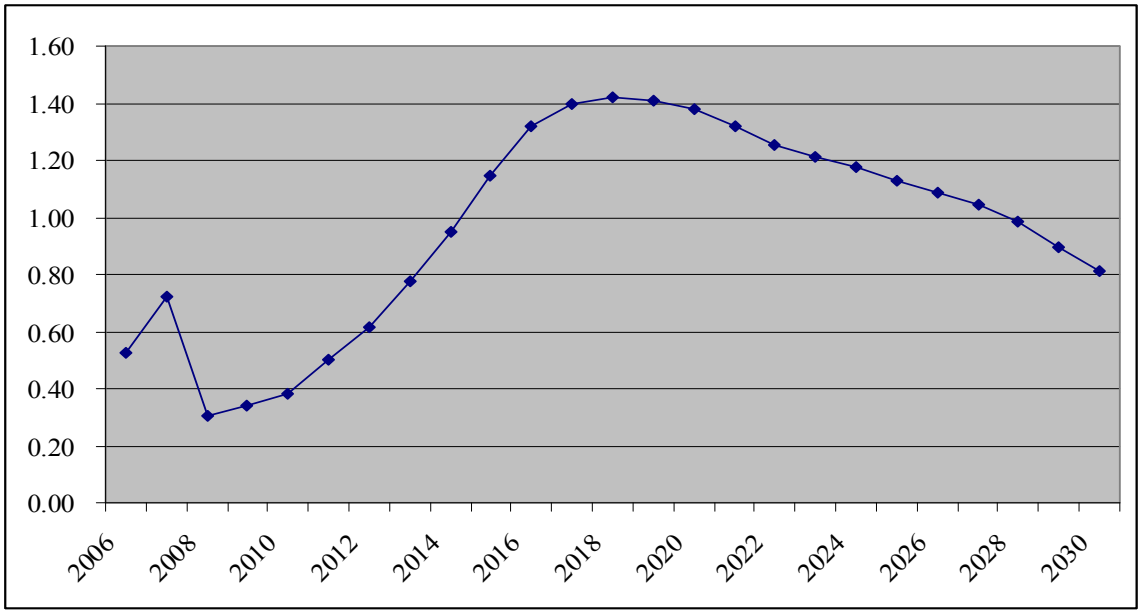
Freeport's existing general and container docks are near capacity, and expansion of existing facilities, which are located within the confines of the Brazos Harbor Turning Basin, would undermine existing wharfage. These limitations prompted development of the adjacent terminal located on property bordering the existing 45-foot Project and the Stauffer Channel. The

45-foot-deep Upper Turning Basin and the 36-foot-deep Brazos Harbor Turning Basin are part of the Federal project adjacent to the port's existing container facilities.

9.5.3 Liquefied Natural Gas

Freeport's LNG terminal became operational in April 2008. Construction of the LNG terminal provided the impetus for a Section 204 widening analysis. Total U.S. LNG imports were down in 2008 by 54 percent from the 2007 record high of 771 billion cubic feet. While LNG traffic through Freeport is presently low, the U.S. Department of Energy's April 2009 forecast showed U.S. LNG imports reaching 2007 levels again in 2014 and peaking at 1,380 billion cubic feet in 2020. Between 2020 and 2030, imports are forecasted to turn down once again. Figure 10 shows the Department of Energy's 2006–2030 U.S. LNG import forecast.

Figure 10
U.S. LNG Imports 2006–2030
Billions of Cubic Feet



Source: U.S. Department of Energy, Updated Annual Energy Outlook 2009 Reference Case Reflecting Provisions of the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act and Recent Changes in the Economic Outlook, Table 13, SR/OIAF/2009-03

Freeport's existing LNG facility includes two 160,000 m^3 storage tanks and one marine terminal capable of handling LNG vessels in excess of 200,000 m^3, in order to accommodate the largest LNG tankers under construction today. The first phase of the project allows the facility to have a send-out capacity of 1.75 billion cubic feet per day. Natural gas will be transported through a 9.4-mile pipeline to Stratton Ridge, Texas, which is a major point of interconnection with the Texas intrastate gas pipeline system. The Freeport Section 204 widening analysis includes detailed analysis of Freeport's LNG market. Import volume of 84.2 billion cubic feet per day are forecasted for 2010, and volumes increasing to 712 billion cubic feet by 2018 are shown in the

Section 204 report. The vessel sizes and expected throughput prompted the non-Federal sponsor to pursue widening of the offshore Outer Bar and Jetty channels from 400 to 600 feet under the Section 204 authority of the WRDA 86 as amended in 1990. Phase I of the terminal is presently in operation, and vessel traffic commenced in April 2008. While LNG provided the impetus for the Section 204 study, channel widening would also benefit existing and future traffic. The base analysis used for the feasibility study assumes that the channel is widened. An alternative scenario, where channel widening is included as part of the Federal project, is addressed as sensitivity. The sensitivity analysis includes discussions of alternative import volumes and recent press releases that the U.S. Department of Energy granted permission to export LNG imported into Freeport's new receiving terminal.

9.6 VESSEL UTILIZATION

This section discusses vessel utilization patterns before and after the 45-foot Project depth became available in the mid-1980s. Freeport's 1992–2006 historical transit data show an overall increase in the number of vessels associated with loaded drafts over 38 feet. In 2006, there were 265 vessels with loaded drafts over 38 feet. Current volumes are over 150 percent higher than when the 45-foot depth first became available. Comparison with the data from the early 1990s shows significant variation in the number of ocean-going vessels used for cargo transport but significant increases in ocean-going tonnage, with total ocean-going tonnage nearly three times greater than in the early 1990s.

While total trips declined from 2,400 in 1992 to 1,690 in 2006, trip counts for some groups grew. Along with increases in trips for vessels with loaded drafts over 38 feet, there were significant increases in the number of movements associated with loaded drafts of 25 feet or more. Further analysis revealed increases in the loaded drafts for general cargo vessels. Comparison of 1993 and 2006 loaded-draft statistics for vessels used for banana imports and food exports showed a change from average loaded drafts of 25 feet or less in the early 1990s to 25 feet or more for recent years. While the largest concentration of banana and food product movements are associated with loaded drafts between 25 and 29 feet, some loaded drafts between 36 and 39 feet are used for food products, specifically meat and rice.

9.7 COMMODITY-SPECIFIC VESSEL UTILIZATION

This section presents analysis of vessel fleets, utilization, and existing and future constraints associated with draft-constrained commodities. These analyses provided the basis for identifying the commodities expected to utilize vessels loaded to channel depths over 45 feet and for forecasting percentage utilization of larger and/or more-fully loaded vessels. The discussions primarily include petroleum, chemicals, break-bulk, and container cargo.

Since authorization and construction of the existing 45-foot Project depth, the size and draft of vessels using the harbor increased to meet the competitive demand for more-efficient

movements. Review of existing utilization data suggests that if increased channel depth was available, portions of the existing and future tonnage could transition to more-fully loaded and larger vessels. Presently a significant portion of the existing fleet used for crude petroleum could be loaded to deeper drafts if channel depth and width were not a constraint. In addition, but to a lesser extent, examination of the vessels sizes, loaded drafts, design drafts, parcel sizes, and trade route data and associated trends revealed that some of the vessels used to transport petroleum and chemical products warranted additional analysis.

General analyses of the vessel fleets and utilization, and existing and future constraints associated with crude petroleum, petrochemical products, and a new fleet of container vessels provided the basis for identifying the commodities expected to be transported in vessels loaded to channel depths over 45 feet. As indicated, additional considerations were foreign port depths and constraints such as the Panama Canal. Completion of the Panama Canal expansion, from its present width restriction of 106 feet and approximate loaded draft limit of 39.6 feet, by the year 2014 will allow for more-fully loaded vessel movements from deepwater ports in the Far East and the western coasts of Mexico and South America. The canal expansion will accommodate maximum loaded drafts of 49 feet. In 2005, approximately 22 percent of exports were shipped to locations for which the Panama Canal provides the shortest travel distance. Nearly 95 percent of this tonnage consisted of chemicals. The destinations of shipments included South Korea (36 percent), Japan (19 percent), China (16 percent), Australia and New Zealand (15 percent), Singapore (11 percent), Indonesia (2 percent), and Western South America (1 percent). Larger chemical carriers are using Freeport more than in the 1990s. Completion of the canal improvements is expected to increase the number of larger and fully loaded container and general cargo vessels using Texas Gulf Coast ports.

9.8 CRUDE PETROLEUM IMPORTS

The largest vessels presently using Freeport are crude petroleum tankers. Table 21 presents distributions of crude petroleum imports by vessel size for 1990, 1993 and 2003–2006. Table 22 displays representative vessel characteristics corresponding to Freeport's current crude petroleum fleet. Table 23 displays the distribution of Freeport crude petroleum imports by loaded drafts.

Table 21
Percentage of Freeport Harbor Crude Petroleum Imports by Vessel DWT 1990, 1993, and 2003–2007

DWT Range	1990	1993	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007
<50,000	1.1	–	–	–	1.1	0.7	1.3
50,000 to 69,000	98.9	11.8	3.1	0.9	3.3	1.8	2.2
70,000 to 79,999	–	–	0.3	4.2	3.4	6.6	5.0
80,000 to 84,999	–	24.9	5.3	4.1	1.5	–	–
85,000 to 89,999	–	35.6	5.7	1.2	1.0	–	–
90,000 to 94,999	–	–	5.5	6.2	5.7	9.5	7.2
95,000 to 99,999	–	16.9	36.3	35.8	34.5	24.3	23.4
100,000 to 104,999	–	10.8	10.9	13.7	12.6	13.6	22.5
105,000 to 109,999	–	–	26.7	22.2	27.3	31.5	25.6
110,000 to 114,999	–	–	3.3	7.6	5.2	5.6	6.6
115,000 to 119,999	–	–	–	–	–	1.0	2.2
120,000 to 139,999	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
140,000 to 159,000	–	–	2.9	4.1	4.4	5.3	4.2
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100

Source: USACE, Navigation Data Center (NDC), unpublished data.

Table 22
Freeport Harbor
Crude Petroleum Representative Tanker Sizes

DWT Range	Vessel Characteristics (feet)		
	LOA	Beam	Design Draft
<80,000	748	106	41
80,000 to 84,999	800	131	40
85,000 to 89,999	800	138	43
90,000 to 94,999	810	136	43
95,000 to 99,999	798	137	45
100,000 to 104,999	792	138	48
105,000 to 109,999	797	138	49
110,000 to 114,999	817	144	48
115,000 to 139,999	820	144	49
140,000 to 155,000	899	154	53

Source: USACE, NDC unpublished data were used to compile the percentage distribution of tonnage by vessel size. The Fairplay/ Lloyd's Register-Fairplay were used to obtain the vessel DWT and associated characteristics.

Table 23
Freeport Crude Petroleum Imports
Percentage of Short Tons by Loaded Draft
1990–2007*

Loaded Draft	1990	1993	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007
≤36	42.3	73.6	43.1	38.9	21.1	23.1	17.6	14.2	12.4	17.4
37	26.0	6.6	8.9	13.8	7.4	9.1	9.8	5.2	5.0	6.3
38	31.7	4.1	11.8	14.6	12.5	19.2	15.9	8.1	5.6	6.0
39	0.0	9.3	20.8	11.6	9.6	13.0	15.8	13.7	13.6	10.3
40	0.0	3.8	7.3	6.5	5.5	6.2	7.6	40.2	29.4	9.7
41	0.0	1.3	3.0	1.0	0.6	6.5	18.6	3.0	32.9	39.9
42	0.0	1.3	5.1	13.6	43.3	22.9	14.7	15.6	1.1	10.4
43	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0

Source: USACE, NDC detailed files.

9.8.1 Crude Petroleum Trade Routes and Methods of Shipment

The methods of shipping crude include direct, lightered, lightened, and transshipped. Direct shipment is the transfer of tonnage by vessel between two coastal ports. Lightering is defined as the process involving ship-to-ship transfer of oil cargo, and it is extremely cost effective for long-hauls. U.S. Gulf Coast lightering occurs in the international waters of the Gulf of Mexico and involves the transfer of tonnage from a VLCC onto one or more shuttle vessels. Industry personnel indicated that the number of days to completely lighter a VLCC normally ranges from 4 to 10 and that the average number of days to completely lighter 200,000 to 300,000 DWT vessels is 5.5, with shorter times noted. For Freeport's existing project depth of 45 feet, four shuttles are needed to completely offload a 325,000 DWT VLCC, with 325,000 DWT being a representative VLCC size. The use of four shuttles is routine and optimal as it allows for the least number of shuttles based on a 45-foot channel depth. The transportation costs prepared for this report are based on optimal shuttle sizes and turnaround times. It was found that the efficiencies of offshore transfers are great and have increased in the last 10 to 15 years, and therefore the assumption of optimal efficiencies is reasonable. Offshore off-loading rates are similar to dockside rates, and they range from 4,000 to 5,500 short tons per hour. Given an unloading rate of 4,000 to 5,500, it would take 57 to 78 hours to offload a 325,000 DWT vessel. The maximum cargo capacity for a 325,000 DWT vessel is approximately 315,250 short tons. Information obtained from industry discussion indicates that the set-up time and finishing time would add a few hours. Shuttle vessels are loaded one-at-a-time and sequencing of shuttle vessel arrivals and departures are subject to variances.

With lightering, the VLCC does not enter the coastal receiving port. A frequent alternative to either direct shipment or lightering is lightening. The term lightening describes the process where enough cargo is offloaded from a tanker to permit the light-loaded vessel to enter a confined channel system. The tanker sizes associated with lightening on the Texas Coast generally range from 120,000 to 175,000 DWT. Tankers larger than 175,000 DWT are normally lightered; however, there is a gap in the world tanker fleet between 175,000 and 250,000 DWT. The reason for the gap is that it is not cost effective to use tankers significantly larger than 175,000 DWT for direct shipment even for channel depths of 55 to 60 feet. Analyses of the cost per ton transportation costs also show that it is not cost effective to use vessels smaller than 250,000 DWT for lightering. An increase in channel depth to Freeport would provide opportunity for these shuttles to be more-fully loaded.

Africa, Mediterranean, and Europe movements are either lightened lightered, or shipped direct. The tanker sizes associated with lightening on the Texas Gulf Coast generally range from 120,000 to 175,000 DWT. Tankers larger than 175,000 DWT are normally totally lightered offshore onto shuttles. Shipments from Africa, the Mediterranean, and Europe are usually transported in tankers between 90,000 and 175,000 DWT, with direct shipments generally using tankers between 90,000 and 120,000 DWT.

Transshipping is the fourth method of shipment. Crude oil is also transshipped through deepwater ports in the Caribbean. Crude is transported on VLCCs to the transshipped sites and later transferred to 90,000 to 114,000 DWT–range shuttle tankers for shipment to Freeport.

In addition to transportation cost incentives, vessel selection is also related to the way crude petroleum is currently sold and how crude oil is shipped. Presently, parcels were generally sold in 500,000 to 650,000 barrels. A 500,000- to 650,000-barrel parcel converts to approximately 75,000 to 95,000 short tons. Many vessels arrive in the international waters of the Gulf of Mexico with double parcels. The most economical size of vessel for single parcels is between 75,000 and 100,000 DWT. For double parcels, the most efficient size is between 150,000 and 175,000 DWT.

Gulf Coast industry personnel indicated that parcel size and associated ship size are primarily a function of the existing channel dimensions and that an increase in channel dimensions would likely result in a shift to larger parcel sizes and larger vessels. Comparison of the parcel sizes associated with Freeport's 1993 and 2007 crude oil imports revealed that the distribution of tonnage by parcel size has increased. Data for 1993 were chosen to represent conditions when the 45-foot channel was dredged. Comparison of Freeport's current crude oil import parcel sizes with those between 1993 and 2007 shows that the parcels are presently larger than they were in the early 1990s. Data comparison also serves to illustrate that larger parcels are being shipped today and suggests that the channel deepening from 40 to 45 feet facilitated this transition.

The parcel data were further examined to help determine the relationship between parcel size and DWT. Comparison of the data shows that the larger vessels are being carried by the larger DWT classes. This transition suggests more-cost-effective use of vessels. In addition, recent data indicate use of smaller shuttles to accommodate smaller volumes discharged during lightering operations.

Evaluation of the percentage of tonnage transported in vessels anticipated to utilize depths over 45 feet was primarily based on the relative change in per ton transportation cost between the existing 45-foot channel depth and increased channel depths. Cost analysis suggested that nearly all vessels used to transport crude petroleum from Mexico and Latin America would be loaded to depths over 45 feet. Expectations concerning the percentage of Middle East and Africa movements are subject to greater uncertainty.

The logistics associated with offshore transfers introduces higher degrees of uncertainty than direct shipment and therefore generates large cost variances. Industry indicated that lower cost differences between direct versus offshore transfer costs may increase the likelihood of direct shipment.

Under the current and future without- and with-project conditions, the "mother vessels" offload partial cargoes to shuttle vessels and both vessels come into port. The lightened mother vessels were modeled in the ERDC ship simulation. These "lightened mother vessels" are the "design vessels." The analysis for the offshore transfer process was based exclusively on operating costs. The duration of the transfer, and the number of shuttle tankers, supply boats, and equipment were estimated in terms of a "range of time," and the costs for vessels and equipment were determined. The shuttle vessel costs and additional pilot and tug charges were identified.

For a with-project condition that includes deepening, the mother vessels would discharge less cargo offshore. Based on the mother vessel discharging less cargo offshore, the with-project condition would affect the number and sizes of the shuttle vessels. For direct shipments, a with-project condition where the channel is deepened would allow for fewer vessel trips as the existing range of vessels would be able to carry more cargo. The specific differences in the without- and with-project conditions are outlined in the transportation cost analysis section (Section 9.10 of Appendix A).

9.8.2 Petroleum Product Vessels

Since the 45-foot Project depth became available in the mid-1990s, there has been a transition to larger and more-fully loaded vessels for some petroleum product tonnage. Vessel design drafts over 40 feet, loaded drafts over 40 feet, vessel DWT, and parcel sizes were some of the variables examined to help evaluate the potential transition to deeper vessel loads. Detailed examination of data for 1990, 1993, and 2002–2007 revealed that an average of 43 percent of import tonnage was transported by vessels with loaded drafts of 40 feet or more. These products are partially

refined oils and are transported in crude petroleum tankers. The larger shipments are primarily gasoline and lube oil from Algeria (47 percent) and Saudi Arabia (27 percent). Other origins include Southern Europe, the Mediterranean, and Ecuador. Vessel sizes and trade route data indicate potential opportunities to load to increased drafts.

9.9 OTHER VESSELS

9.9.1 Bulk Carriers

Large bulk carriers are used in the import of Freeport's limestone and building materials. The present fleet generally consists of 45,000 to 67,000 DWT vessels with design drafts between 40 and 44 feet. Loaded drafts ranged from 35 to 39 feet. Total limestone imports for 2005 were 433,000 tons. Limestone imports represented 40 percent of 2003–2005 general cargo tonnage. Rock and limestone are used in residential and commercial building construction and have increased at all Texas ports. The majority of imports are from Cozumel, Mexico, and, to a smaller extent, Europe. The specific type of bulk carriers used for limestone and building materials are "load-on/load-off" vessels. The median year of construction for the range of vessels used for this trade is 1985 and is older than the median of 1998 associated with the world fleet. Review of the distribution of vessels on order and channel depths at receiving ports indicates that some transition in the average DWT range from the existing 60,000 to 70,000 DWT into the 80,000 to 94,000 DWT range is reasonable to expect.

9.9.2 Refrigerated Container Vessels

Bananas are transported in refrigerated container vessels, the majority of which are in the 13,000 to 16,000 DWT range. Bananas compose a significant share of Freeport general cargo; average imports for 2003–2005 were 257,000 short tons and remained relatively constant over the most recent 10-year period. As noted, Freeport imports 6 percent of U.S. banana imports. Review of distribution of vessels on order shows no indication of a transition to larger refrigerated cargo vessels.

9.9.3 Chemical Product Carriers

Detailed examination of data for 1990, 1993, and 2002–2005 revealed that beginning in 2002, some cargo was transported in vessels loaded to 40 feet or more[3]. An average of 7 percent of 2003–2005 tonnage was transported by vessels with loaded drafts of 40 feet or more. The maximum loaded draft for product carriers, like Freeport's other vessels, is dictated by the BPA's rules, which stipulate a maximum loaded draft of 42 feet. There is an additional criterion of 10 percent of design draft plus 1 foot.

[3] Continuous detailed data for years prior to 2001 are not readily available.

Freeport's largest shipments are for sodium hydroxide. In 2005, the larger shipments were exported to Brazil. The 2004 shipments were exported to China. The 2003 shipments were divided between Brazil, Eastern Canada, and the Far East. Consideration of the percentage of tonnage transported in vessels with design drafts over 40 feet, percentages transported in vessels with loaded drafts of 40 feet or more, and vessel DWT and parcel sizes were variables examined to help evaluate the transition to more deeply loaded vessels.

9.10 UTILIZATION OF CHANNEL DEPTHS OVER 45 FEET

Specific expectations associated with commodity-specific vessel utilization based on trend data and vessel operating cost efficiencies are outlined in this section. For crude petroleum imports, current vessel selections and associated port of origin and trade route data show that a significant percentage of the vessels used for Freeport's direct shipments are loaded to drafts over 40 feet. Channel deepening beyond 45 feet would increase this trend. For offshore lightering of crude petroleum, an increase in Freeport's channel depth would provide opportunities to either reduce the number of shuttle vessels or use smaller shuttles. For petroleum and chemical products, 1990–2007 fleet trends suggest that a portion of Freeport's petroleum and chemical product tonnage could be shipped in vessels with loaded drafts over 45 feet. Changes in vessel loading patterns since the early 1990s and analysis of "vessel-on-order" records, world port development trends, and the Panama Canal expansion represent indicators used for projecting future vessel use. Integral to estimating changes in vessel selections is the operational goal of minimizing vessel transportation cost. Minimization of transportation cost, given trade route constraints and commodity parcel needs, recognizably drives long-term vessel choices.

As noted, historical vessel usage for crude petroleum movements indicates that nearly all of the vessels used for direct shipment could be more-fully loaded. Long-term expectations are that this will be the case. Analyses of Freeport's recent crude petroleum import data showed over 96.8 percent tonnage was shipped in vessels with design drafts of 43 feet or more (see Table 23). Loaded draft records showed that 42 percent of 2002–2004 tonnage and 49 percent of 2005–2007 tonnage was shipped in vessels with loaded drafts of 40 feet or more (see Table 22). The maximum allowable loaded draft is 42 feet. Freeport's fleet records showed that the primary vessel size for the Mexico, Venezuela, and Eastern South America routes is 90,000 to 120,000 DWT. The current vessel size range represents an increase from the sizes used in the late 1990s. During the previous decade, vessels in the 80,000 to 90,000 DWT range were typically used on this route. Examination of the per ton transportation cost for shipments from Mexico and South America to Freeport shows that 110,000 to 120,000 DWT is the most-cost-effective choice given channel depths between 45 and 48 feet. For depths between 50 and 53 feet, the most-cost-effective vessel size for direct shipment is between 135,000 and 150,000 DWT. For depths over 53 feet, the most-cost-effective size for direct shipment is between 150,000 and 175,000 DWT. The maximum-sized vessels used for Nigerian crude oil are principally in the 110,000 to 175,000 DWT range. Vessels over 200,000 DWT are used for some

Northern Europe transits associated with offshore lightering operations, in particular the North Sea and Norway movements. Vessels in the 200,000 to 375,000 DWT range are used for Persian Gulf crude, with most tonnage transported in 300,000 to 350,000 DWT vessels. The USACE NDC records only include vessels that come into U.S. ports, such as Freeport, and do not include records of vessels that offload at the lightering zone. Most crude imported from the Persian Gulf is shipped in large crude carriers that offload their entire contents onto shuttle vessels. It is not cost effective to use vessels larger than 175,000 DWT for direct shipment to Freeport for the range of channel depth alternatives between 48 and 62 feet; however, it is cost effective to load vessels up to 175,000 DWT more fully given the range of depth alternatives between 48 and 62 feet. Additionally, the past channel-deepening project and any future increase facilitate reductions in the number of shuttle vessels needed to lighter VLCCs. The use of smaller shuttles reduces the overall cost associated for situations where Suezmax tankers are lightened to channel depth. A with-project future based on an increase in Freeport's channel depth will facilitate the use of smaller shuttle vessels and result in a reduction in total transportation costs for affected routings.

Analysis of Freeport's crude petroleum trade routes suggests that the availability of channel depths over 45 feet would provide cost incentives for over 95 percent of crude petroleum import tonnage to be transported in more-fully loaded vessels. The depths for the principal trading ports associated with 2002–2005 imports are shown in Table 24. Review of Freeport's 2002–2005 crude petroleum imports and the depths at the ports of origin suggest that 95 percent of current tonnage could be loaded to drafts over 45 feet. Expectations are that the depth limitation at the Venezuelan ports will change over the 50-year period of analysis. It was found that 96 percent of Freeport's Venezuelan crude oil imports for 2003–2005 was from the deepwater port of La Cruz.

In addition to crude petroleum, Freeport's 2002–2007 petroleum and chemical products transported in vessels with loaded drafts over 38 feet were examined to help identify depths at trading ports. Vessel design draft and trade route limitations were of particular interest in helping to identify reasonable expectations concerning the percentage of tonnage anticipated to load to depths over 45 feet. Detailed analysis of Freeport's petroleum product imports for 2002–2007 showed that Freeport's more deeply loaded vessels carried lube oil and gasoline. Nearly all lube oil imports came from Azrew, Algeria. Gasoline is imported from both Algeria and Saudi Arabia. Based on existing utilization, continuation of existing trendlines suggests that commodities that would use larger or more-fully loaded vessels will primarily consist of petroleum product imports and chemical exports.

Table 24
Depths at Major Ports Transporting Crude Oil to Freeport

Region and Port	Country	Depth (feet) Port or Region
North and South America		
High Seas, Gulf of Mexico	International Waters	76
Grand Bahamas	Bahamas	76
All Other Brazil Ports North of Recife	Brazil	75 at Itagui.
All Other Colombia, Caribbean	Colombia	>45 at several Eastern Ports
Coatzacoalcos[a]	Mexico	42
Pajaritos[a]	Mexico	55
Tuxpan	Mexico	42
Cayo Arcas[a]	Mexico	72.2
Dos Bocas[a]	Mexico	89.9
Orangestad	Netherland Antilles	76
San Nicolas Bay	Netherland Antilles	76
Point a Pierre	Trinidad	52
Rio Haina	Trinidad	58
Puerto Miranda	Venezuela	39.5
Amuay Bay	Venezuela	41 to 45
Puerto La Cruz	Venezuela	55
La Libertad	Ecuador	Panama Canal Restriction[b]
Middle East		
Ras Tanura	Saudi Arabia	61–65
All Other Saudi Arabia Ports	Saudi Arabia	61–65 at Ras Tanura
Africa and North Europe		
Bonny	Nigeria	74.8
Kwa Ibo Terminal	Nigeria	85.3
Calabar	Nigeria	<40; planned improvements at Calabar
Sture	Norway	75.4

Source: National Imagery and Mapping Agency, *2000 World Port Index*, Pub. 150; *Lloyd's, World Shipping Encyclopedia*, April 2003; and USACE, Waterborne Commerce 2003–2005 detailed records.

[a]Located in the same region as the offshore Cayo Arcas, Mexico's offshore oil terminal. Cayo Arcas can load vessel drafts of up to 76 feet.

[b]The current Panama Canal's vessel draft limit is 39.6 feet. The vessel draft limit for the new canal chambers, which are under construction, is 49.2 feet, or 15 meters. The new lock chambers will fit vessels of 366 meters long and 49 meters wide.

As noted, general indicators and the shift to maximum loaded drafts of 40 to 43 feet for Freeport's 2002–2007 chemical export tonnage from maximum loaded drafts of 36 to 39 feet prior for 1990 and 1993, provided the basis for assuming that 14 percent of Freeport's long-term chemical exports would be loaded to drafts of 45 feet or more given the availability of an increase in Freeport's channel depth. Variables considered in this determination are world port

development changes and the transition of Freeport's chemical product vessel utilization between the early 1990s and 2002–2007. Freeport's vessel utilization patterns between the early 1990s and 2002–2007 show that 5 percent of tonnage is presently shipped in vessels with loaded drafts of 40 feet or more up from zero in the early 1990s. Additional considerations include the Panama Canal expansion and chemical vessels on order.

9.11 LIQUEFIED NATURAL GAS

In addition to its large existing base of crude petroleum, petroleum and chemical products, and dry bulk deep-draft cargoes, the without-project future includes construction of an LNG terminal. Phase I of the terminal is presently in operation, and vessel traffic commenced in April 2008.

The maximum design drafts for existing LNG vessels are 39 to 40 feet. The industry standard is for LNG vessels to have 4 to 6 feet underkeel clearance, and the expectation is that LNG vessels will be required to have a minimum of 3 to 4 feet. Underkeel clearance rules on the Freeport Channel are strict; however, the existing vessel sizes and underkeel clearance requirements suggest that channel depths of 43 to 44 feet would be adequate, and channel-deepening benefits were not taken for LNG cargo. The docks at the Freeport LNG terminal will accommodate vessels 1,099 feet long by 177 feet wide. This vessel design prompted the non-Federal sponsor to pursue widening of the offshore Outer Bar and Jetty channels from 400 to 600 feet under the Section 204 authority of WRDA.

9.12 TRAFFIC FORECAST

This section presents the tonnage projections for Freeport's crude petroleum imports, petroleum product imports, and chemical imports and exports. Freeport's general and containerized cargo is in the following section. Review of recent historical vessel utilization and new vessel orders associated with crude petroleum and products suggests that portions of these cargoes would transition to larger vessels if increases in channel depth were available. Analysis of vessel utilization at comparable ports indicates that the use of larger and more-fully loaded vessels is apparent for crude petroleum imports. Forecast of a transition to larger and more-fully loaded vessels for petroleum products and chemicals is based on vessel-order data and transitions in Freeport's vessel use since the early 1990s. The use of larger and more-fully loaded vessels for products is subject to a fair degree of uncertainty, with most of the uncertainty associated with the percentage of cargo anticipated to transition. However, analysis of Freeport's 1990–2007 vessel utilization data and world shipping data, including vessels-on-order for chemical and product carriers, port developments, and the Panama Canal expansion, suggests a transition to more deeply loaded vessels over the 50-year period of analysis.

9.12.1 Crude Petroleum

Freeport's crude petroleum tonnage forecast was prepared using the Annual Energy Outlook (AEO) USACE 2008 reference case projections. Table 25 displays the AEO 2008 reference case projections and associated price data for 2005–2030. The petroleum forecast presented in this document was initially prepared in 2008. The effects of recent forecasts not incorporated into the base analysis are addressed in the sensitivity analysis.

Freeport's crude oil import forecast was prepared by incorporating the AEO projections into a regression equation using 1990–2005 Freeport imports as a function of U.S. imports. An R square of 0.935 was produced from the equation. The t-value and F statistic for the equation are significant at statistical confidence levels exceeding 99.999 percent. Table 26 displays Freeport's regression equation application using the AEO 2008 reference case forecast results and 1990-2005 as a historical base. Recalculation of the equation based on the inclusion of Freeport's 2006–2008 crude oil import tonnage reduces the 2010–2030 forecasted values shown in column 4 by an average of 2.7 percent. The results of the 1990–2005 base application show an average annual growth rate of 0.9 percent for 2003/2005 to 2030 for Freeport's imports (see Table 26). The U.S. 2003/2005 to 2030 average annual growth rate is 0.6 percent (see Table 25). Freeport's future long-term growth rate is expected to higher than both the Nation and Gulf Coast based on historical trends (see Table 3) and its pipeline links to refineries (see Figure 3).

Table 25
Annual Energy Outlook (AEO)
Crude Petroleum Imports 2005–2030
U.S. Crude Oil Imports and World Oil Price
Millions of Barrels Per Day Unless Otherwise Noted

Year	AEO 2008 Crude Petroleum Imports a/	Crude Oil Price/Barrel 2006 ($)	Petroleum Products	
			Imports a/	Exports
2003	10.09	30.00	2.60	0.96
2004	10.08	39.00	3.06	0.98
2005	10.13	50.40	3.57	1.07
2015	10.16	52.03	3.28	1.31
2025	10.99	57.11	4.03	1.34
2030	11.85	62.07	4.08	1.36
Average Annual Growth (AAG) Rates (%)				
2003/2005–2030	0.6	1.7	1.1	1.0

Source: U.S. Department of Energy, DOE/EIA-0383 (2008) (December 2007), Table A11.

a/ Petroleum product imports excluding liquid natural gas.

Table 26
Regression Equation Data for
Freeport Crude Oil Imports a/

Component	Description of Data and Outputs		
Dependent Variable	Freeport Crude Imports (1990–2005)		
Independent Variable	U.S. Crude Imports		
Adjusted R Square	0.935		
No. of Observations	16		
Degrees of Freedom	1		
X Coefficient Level of Significance of t value	1.00E+00		
F Statistic	216.83		
Significance of F statistic	1.00E+00		
	Regression Equation Data		
		Application of Standard Deviation	
	Base Output	Minus 1	Plus 1
Constant	–17,350.40	–22,080.6	–12,620.3
Standard Error of Y Estimate	1,537.76	1,537.76	1,537.76
X Coefficient: U.S. Crude Oil Imports	0.072256	0.061732	0.082781

Historical Year	U.S. Imports 1,000s of Short Tons[a]	Freeport (1,000s of Short Tons) 2001–2005			
		Actual	Base Estimate[b]	Application of Standard Deviation	
				Minus 1	Plus 1
2001	510,298	19,307	19,522	9,421	29,623
2002	499,999	18,019	18,778	8,785	28,770
2003	528,703	19,672	20,852	10,557	31,146
2004	553,337	20,602	22,632	12,078	33,185
2005	553,923	22,000	22,397	11,877	32,917
2003/2005 Average	544,043	20,758			
		Freeport Regression Based Forecast[b]			
Forecast Year	**U.S. Imports[a]**		**Base Estimate[b]**	**Application of Standard Deviation**	
				Minimum	**Maximum**
2010	529,568		20,914	10,611	31,218
2015	556,402		22,853	12,267	33,439
2020	557,497		22,932	12,335	33,530
2030	601,856		26,137	15,073	37,202
2064					
% AAG 2003/2005-2030	0.4%		0.9	1.2	2.3
% AAG 2003/2005-2064	-		0.9	-	-

Source: USACE, Waterborne Commerce of the U.S. 2001–2005 and U S. Department of Energy, EIA, Department of Energy/EIA-0383 (2008) (December 2007).

[a]Calculated using barrel per day volumes from the EIA. The 2005 BPD volume was 10.13 billion. The EIA forecast extends through 2030.

[b]Freeport 2020 Imports = –17350 + (.07223 * 557,497) with 557,497 short tons being U.S. imports in 2020.

9.12.2 Petroleum Product Imports

Evaluation of Freeport and U.S. petroleum product historical data, and the associated hind-cast data, showed no significant correlation between the region and the U.S. While experiencing tremendous growth in the early 1990s, petroleum product imports remained relatively constant since the mid-1990s (see Table 2). Recent record lows occurred in 2007 and 2002. These lows are associated with drops in gasoline and residual fuel oil imports and parallel national figures. In spite of overall fluctuating volumes, Freeport's share of U.S. total product imports has generally remained between 1 and 2 percent. Gasoline dominated Freeport's imports since 2002 and peaked at 1.4 million short tons in 2004, but dropped to 623 thousand short tons in 2007 (see Table 8). The decline reflects gasoline consumption decreases due to relatively high prices, increases in U.S. ethanol in U.S. gasoline blends, and the global economic downturn since 2008. Aside from gasoline, Freeport's imports include naphtha, solvents, and liquefied and gaseous hydrocarbons used as inputs in the production of refined products including fuel oil and gasoline.

The long-term expectation based on EIA forecasts is for Freeport's product imports to be relatively flat based, with Freeport maintaining its recent historical share of the U.S. total. Freeport's historical product growth exhibited more variation than national trends (Figure 11). In general, gasoline and finished product imports have historically been concentrated on the U.S. East Coast, with imports to Gulf Coast ports such as Freeport consisting more heavily of unfinished products. Freeport's imports of gasoline will serve to supplement shortfalls in U.S. refining and continue to be relatively low in comparison to crude petroleum imports.

9.12.3 Chemical Product Exports

Forecasts of Freeport's chemical exports were estimated using regression analysis. Regression analysis of Freeport and U.S. exports showed a high level of correlation between the region and the Nation. Regression equation outputs associated with Freeport's chemical exports and the value of U.S. industrial materials and supplies produced comparable estimates of Freeport's 1990–2005 actual exports. Industrial materials and supplies include the USACE commodity classifications listed as follows:

Chemical Products (codes 3110–3299)

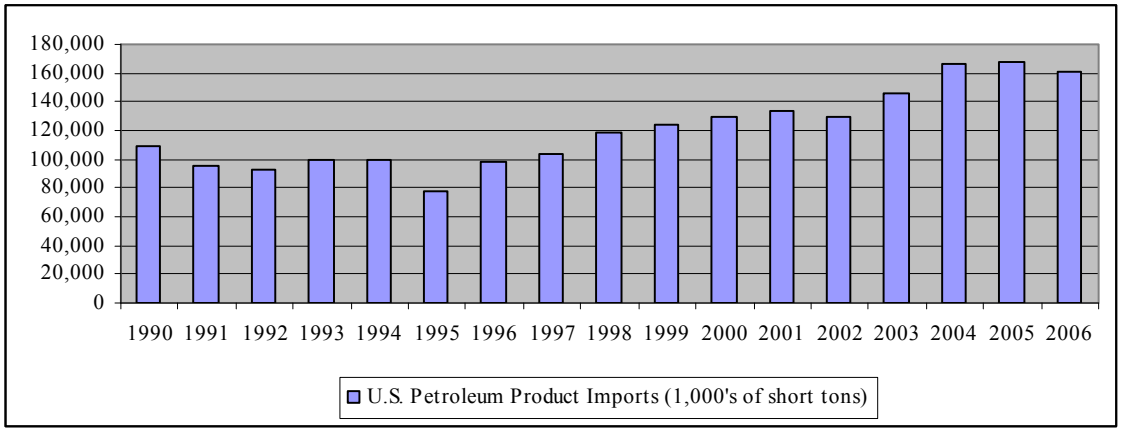
Petroleum Products, excluding crude petroleum (codes 2211–2990)

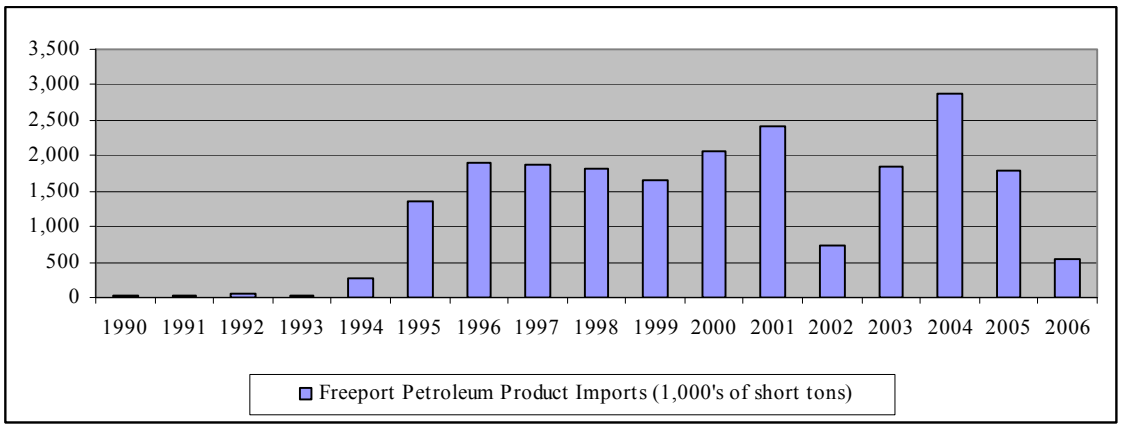
Crude Materials (codes 4110–4900)

Primary Manufactured Goods (codes 5110–5540)

Farm Products, excluding food (codes 6889–6899)

Figure 11
U.S. and Freeport Petroleum Product Imports (1990–2005)





The Freeport regression application incorporates Global Insight's projections into a regression-equation using 1990–2005 Freeport as a function of the value of U.S. exports. The results of the 1990–2005 regression-based application produce an average annual growth rate of 6.0 percent for 2003/2005 to 2030 and 4.8 percent for 2030–2037. Comparison of Freeport's 1990–2005 chemical export growth rate with that for the U.S. shows that Freeport exports grew at an average annual rate of 5.7 percent and U.S. exports grew at a rate of 2.3 percent.

9.13 TRADE ROUTE FORECASTS

9.13.1 Crude Petroleum Imports

The trade route forecast for Freeport's crude petroleum imports is based on analysis of U.S. import forecast and the EIA 2005–2030 trade route and world production forecasts. The U.S. trade route forecast includes both ocean-going and pipeline imports.

Comparison of the U.S. and Gulf Coast distributions with Freeport's shows that Freeport received a lower share of Mexican crude and a higher share of South American and Caribbean crude. Venezuela composes a significant share of Freeport's imports. In comparison to other regions, Freeport has the capacity to refine relatively higher shares of light crude shipped from Venezuela as well as the heavy crudes. It was also found that Venezuela's long-term reserves are significantly higher than Mexico's reserves. This suggests higher future trade volumes. Data collected show that 15 percent of 2003–2005 U.S. crude petroleum imports came from Canada. Canada is the leading supplier of U.S. crude oil, with slightly higher imports than Saudi Arabia. Most of these movements were transmitted by pipeline; however, there are some ocean-going vessel movements. Examination of Freeport's 2006 vessel records, which became available during the review period, showed three vessels that did not show any Canadian crude, and examination of U.S. Gulf Coast imports showed minimal volumes. Freeport's forecast is presented in Table 27.

Table 27
Freeport Crude Oil Tonnage by Trade Route and Decade
2003/2005 and 2014–2064 (1,000s of short tons)

Trade Route	2003–05	2014	2024	2034	2044	2054	2064	AAG (%)
Mexico	902.8	824.4	865.3	964.2	1,065.1	1,176.5	1,298.1	0.6
Central/South America	9,350.6	9,981.8	11,019.1	12,675.8	14,002.0	15,466.9	17,064.7	1.0
Europe & Africa	3,640.7	3,431.0	3,699.3	4,179.5	4,616.7	5,099.8	5,626.6	0.7
Middle East	7,685.3	8,228.0	8,630.3	9,411.3	10,395.9	11,483.6	12,669.8	0.8
Total Tonnage (1,000s)	21,579.4	22,465.2	24,214.0	27,230.8	30,079.7	33,226.8	36,659.2	0.9
Percentage of Tonnage by Route								
Mexico	4.2	3.7	3.6	3.5	3.5	3.5	3.5	
Central/South America	43.3	44.4	45.5	46.5	46.5	46.5	46.5	
Europe & Africa	16.9	15.3	15.3	15.3	15.3	15.3	15.3	
Middle East	35.6	36.6	35.6	34.6	34.6	34.6	34.6	
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	

Source: Application of the AEO 2007 and 2008 forecasts.

9.13.2 Petroleum Products Imports and Chemical Product Exports

For purposes of analysis, the 2003–2006 trade route distribution presented for Freeport's petroleum product imports and its chemical product exports were assumed to remain constant in the future. The 2003–2006 petroleum product import trade route distribution consists primarily of imports from Algeria and the Middle East. The future petroleum product import trade route distribution was assumed to include higher volumes of imports from Latin America than presently occurs. This assumption is based on developing trends towards increased investments in refining and based on general informational discussions in the EIA publications.

The 2003–2006 chemical export trade routes consist primarily of Brazil, Northern Europe, and the Pacific. Demand for chemical product is anticipated to remain strong for markets in the Pacific and Brazil. The transportation cost calculations were estimated using average mileage and the present distribution of ports. Benefits were calculated for 63 percent of petroleum product imports and 15 percent of 2014–2064 chemical export tonnage.

9.14 CHANNEL DEEPENING BENEFITS

The transportation costs and the savings associated with the proposed project depth increase were calculated using commodity-specific vessel class and trade route distributions. Transportation costs were calculated based on the channel depth alternatives and variables associated with vessel design drafts, maximum feet of light-loading, underkeel clearance, mileage traveled, and the number of hours to load and unload. Maximum vessel cargo capacities for crude oil and petroleum products were estimated based on review of the range of load factors obtained from IWR Report 91-R-13, National Economic Development Procedures Manual Deep Draft Navigation, November 1991 and consultation with industry and the BPA. The IWR Report 91-R-13 cargo capacity factors published in the deep-draft manual for dry bulk carriers and tankers are shown in Table 28. Consultation with industry and the BPA revealed that these estimates are reasonable. Table 29 presents representative round-trip mileage for the trade routes or junction points used for the transportation savings computations. Table 30 presents the December 2008 (EGM 08-04) foreign flag double-hull vessel operating costs used in the analysis.

Table 28
Adjustments for Estimating Actual Vessel Capacity
Short Tons of Cargo as a Percentage of Vessel DWT

Vessel DWT	% Cargo to DWT
<20,000	90
20,000 to 70,000	92
70,000 to 120,000	95
>120,000	97

Source: IWR Report 91-R-13, National Economic Development Procedures Manual, Deep-Draft Navigation, November 1991, p. 77 and May 2008 draft.

Table 29
Representative Round Trip Mileage to Freeport Harbor

From	Miles
Coatzacoalcos, Mexico	1,360
U.S. Gulf Coast Lightering/Lightening Zone	160
Venezuela	3,934
Panama Canal	3,132
Salvador, Brazil	9,606
Rotterdam, Netherlands	10,318
Sture, Norway	11,172
North Africa, Algiers	10,556
West Africa (Nigeria and Angola)	13,030
Persian Gulf and Indian Subcontinent via Suez Canal	19,824
Persian Gulf and Indian Subcontinent via Cape of Good Hope	25,066
Singapore via Panama Canal	24,248
Singapore via Cape of Good Hope	26,304

Source: Lloyd's Register-Fairplay, Ports & Terminals Guide 2006

Table 30
Tanker Characteristics and Hourly Operating Cost
FY 08 Double Hull Tankers

DWT	Design Draft (feet)	Immersion Factor	Hourly Operating Cost ($)	
			At Sea	In Port
20,000	32.0	79.0	659	403
25,000	33.0	91.0	696	430
35,000	36.0	113.0	766	481
50,000	39.0	141.4	865	554
60,000	40.7	158.9	952	622
70,000	42.6	175.4	1,001	653
90,000	46.4	205.9	1,058	692
110,000	50.0	234.1	1,107	724
150,000	56.4	285.4	1,192	772
165,000	58.6	303.4	1,369	878
265,000	70.3	410.7	1,439	922
300,000	73.2	444.5	1,900	1,207
320,000	74.5	463.3	2,061	1,306

Source: Application of USACE, Foreign Flag Tanker Costs presented in EGM #08-04, Deep-Draft Vessel Operating Costs, December 2008 unpublished update.

Basic procedures were used to calculate transportation costs using a 110,000 DWT foreign flag tanker. An example of these procedures is contained in Appendix A. Similar computations were made for appropriate distances and vessel sizes for each of the channel depth alternatives. The resulting costs-per-ton computations were calculated over the relevant range of vessels projected for each channel depth improvement, and the associated savings per ton were measured using the net differences in costs between the existing 45-foot channel and the depth alternative.

9.14.1 Crude Petroleum Imports Transportation Savings Benefits

Transportation savings benefits from reductions in the vessel operating costs were calculated based on the relative difference in transportation costs between the without-project and with-project conditions. Table 31 displays the transportation cost by trade route used for the with- and without-project future conditions calculations. The transportation costs shown in Table 31 were applied to Freeport's 2002–2005 base and 2014–2064 tonnage forecast (see Table 27).

Table 31
Freeport Crude Petroleum Imports Transportation Cost and Savings
Calculated Using December 2008 Vessel Costs*
Most Likely Transportation Mode

	Trade Route and Channel Depth					
Trade Route/Depth	**45 feet**	**50 feet**	**52 feet**	**55 feet**	**58 feet**	**60 feet**
Mexico	Direct	Direct	Direct	Direct	Direct	Direct
cost/ton ($)	1.91	1.65	1.59	1.50	1.44	1.42
savings/ton ($)		0.26	0.33	0.42	0.47	0.50
Central and South America	Direct	Direct	Direct	Direct	Direct	Direct
cost/ton ($)	5.14	4.40	4.16	3.88	3.67	3.60
savings/ton ($)		0.74	0.97	1.26	1.47	1.54
West Africa and North Sea	Lighten	Lighten	Lighten	Direct	Direct	Direct
Cost/ton ($)	10.38	10.06	9.51	8.84	8.25	7.91
savings/ton ($)		0.32	0.87	1.54	2.13	2.47
West Africa and North Sea	Lightered (All Depths)					
Cost/ton ($)	8.01	7.85	7.65	7.65	7.65	7.65
savings/ton ($)		0.17	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37
Middle East	Lighter	Lighter	Lighter	Lighter	Direct	Direct
Cost/ton ($)	14.18	14.03	13.82	13.81	13.49	12.87
Savings/ton ($)		0.15	0.36	0.36	0.69	1.31

*December 2008 Deep-draft vessel operating costs provided by IWR.

Transportation costs and savings were calculated for vessels that minimize transportation costs given trade route constraints and BPA rules. One rule that does not change between the without- and with-project conditions is underkeel clearance. The sensitivity of this and other issues is addressed in Section 9.19. The without- and with-project futures reflect changes in trade routes based on traffic forecast data.

Comparison of the direct shipment costs with offshore transfer costs indicate that maximum costs for offshore transfer approach the cost of direct shipment particularly at greater channel depth alternatives. Table 32 presents direct shipment costs for all routes. The transportation cost calculations were based on vessel sizes between 90,000 and 175,000 DWT.

Table 33 provides comparison of the cost per ton by methods of shipment for Africa and North Sea and Middle East**.** The cost calculations are based on the vessel sizes used. Comparison of the trade route costs for Africa, North Sea, and Middle East movements shows potential cost incentives to switch from lightening to direct shipment. The per ton transportation costs used in estimating the transportation savings benefits correspond to the least cost methods of shipment associated with the particular trade route. As channel depth increases, the cost differential between direct shipment and both lightering and lightening is reduced. This reduction introduces cost incentives for potential shifts from lightering and lightening to direct shipments for Africa, North Sea, and Middle East trade routes. Increases in Freeport's channel depth also provide an opportunity to offload a smaller amount of cargo at sea.

Comparison of direct shipment costs with those for lightering or lightening for Africa, the Mediterranean, Europe, and the Middle East revealed that as channel depth increases, the differences in the costs by shipping methods and, in particular, the variance associated with the number of days necessary to complete the offshore transfer process is likely to contribute to a higher percentage of direct shipment than optimal or than least-cost computations might suggest. The transportation cost analysis prepared for this report is based on optimal shuttle sizes and turnaround times. It was found that the efficiencies of offshore transfers are great and have increased in the last 10 to 15 years. A risk of delays, in association with the closeness in costs between shipping methods, contributes to a proportion of direct shipments that is higher than what might occur if the variance associated with the cost of lightering did not overlap with the cost of shipping direct. Examination of the cost data suggests that an increase in channel dimensions would probably result in an increase in direct shipment movements for Africa, Mediterranean, Europe, and Middle East shipments.

Table 32
Crude Petroleum Transportation Cost Per Ton ($) December 2008 Vessel Costs*
for Direct Shipments to Freeport

DWT	45 feet	50 feet	52 feet	55 feet	58 feet	60 feet
	Mexico to Freeport Cost Per Ton by Vessel Size (Direct)					
90,000	1.91	1.69	1.70	1.70	1.71	1.71
100,000	1.92	1.65	1.60	1.61	1.61	1.62
110,000	1.91	1.64	1.55	1.51	1.52	1.52
120,000	1.92	1.66	1.58	1.49	1.50	1.50
135,000	1.94	1.67	1.60	1.49	1.44	1.44
150,000	1.95	1.68	1.60	1.50	1.42	1.39
165,000	1.97	1.70	1.61	1.52	1.44	1.39
175,000	1.96	1.70	1.62	1.52	1.44	1.39
	Central and South America to Freeport Cost Per Ton by Vessel Size (Direct)					
60,000	6.90	5.95	5.95	5.94	5.92	5.91
80,000	5.28	4.97	4.97	4.98	4.98	4.98
90,000	5.21	4.62	4.62	4.63	4.63	4.63
100,000	5.19	4.46	4.34	4.34	4.35	4.35
110,000	5.19	4.44	4.20	4.09	4.09	4.10
120,000	5.10	4.37	4.15	3.89	3.90	3.90
135,000	5.12	4.38	4.15	3.85	3.69	3.69
150,000	5.17	4.41	4.17	3.87	3.62	3.51
165,000	5.23	4.46	4.21	3.91	3.65	3.50
175,000	5.23	4.45	4.21	3.91	3.65	3.50
	West Africa and North Sea to Freeport Cost Per Ton by Vessel Size (Direct)					
80,000	12.24	11.51	11.51	11.51	11.52	11.52
90,000	12.09	10.70	10.70	10.71	10.71	10.71
100,000	12.02	10.30	10.02	10.02	10.03	9.97
110,000	12.02	10.27	9.70	9.45	9.45	9.45
120,000	11.70	10.02	9.49	8.88	8.88	8.89
135,000	11.72	10.02	9.48	8.77	8.36	8.36
150,000	11.85	10.09	9.53	8.80	8.19	7.93
165,000	12.02	10.19	9.61	8.88	8.25	7.88
175,000	12.01	10.19	9.61	8.88	8.25	7.88
	Middle East to Freeport Cost Per Ton by Vessel Size (Direct)					
80,000	20.17	18.96	18.96	18.97	18.97	18.98
90,000	19.93	17.63	17.63	17.64	17.64	17.65
100,000	19.79	16.97	16.50	16.50	16.51	16.45
110,000	19.80	16.91	15.98	15.55	15.56	15.56
120,000	19.22	16.46	15.58	14.56	14.57	14.56
135,000	19.25	16.44	15.54	14.36	13.68	13.69
150,000	19.47	16.55	15.63	14.42	13.40	12.97
165,000	19.75	16.73	15.77	14.54	13.49	12.87
175,000	19.75	16.73	15.77	14.54	13.49	12.87

*December 2008 Deep-draft vessel operating costs provided by IWR.

Table 33
Freeport Crude Petroleum Imports
Cost Per Ton ($) Comparison by Method of Shipment
by Channel Depth Alternative and Trade Route*

Vessel DWT	45 feet	50 feet	52 feet	55 feet	58 feet	60 feet
Direct Shipment: Africa/North Sea Cost/Ton by Channel Depth						
90,000	12.09	10.70	10.70	10.71	10.71	10.71
100,000	12.02	10.36	10.14	10.02	10.03	9.97
110,000	12.02	10.27	9.89	9.45	9.45	9.45
120,000	11.70	10.02	9.67	8.88	8.88	8.89
135,000	11.72	10.02	9.66	8.77	8.36	8.36
150,000	11.85	10.09	9.71	8.80	8.19	7.93
165,000	12.02	10.19	9.81	8.88	8.25	7.88
175,000	12.01	10.19	9.81	8.88	8.25	7.88
Lower 25% Quartile 110,000 to 175,000 DWT	11.79	10.06	9.51	8.84	8.25	7.91
Lightering Cost/Ton: Africa/North Sea Cost/Ton by Channel Depth						
Minimum	7.92	7.73	7.38	7.38	7.38	7.35
Mean	8.01	7.85	7.65	7.65	7.65	7.65
Maximum	8.42	8.36	8.24	8.24	8.24	8.24
Lightening Cost/Ton: Africa/North Sea Cost/Ton by Channel Depth						
Minimum	9.95	9.70	9.46	9.46	9.46	9.46
Mean	10.38	10.07	9.80	9.80	9.80	9.80
Maximum	10.81	10.43	10.15	10.15	10.15	10.15
Direct Shipment: Middle East Cost/Ton by Channel Depth						
80,000	20.17	18.96	18.96	18.97	18.97	18.98
90,000	19.93	17.63	17.63	17.64	17.64	17.65
100,000	19.79	16.97	16.50	16.50	16.51	16.45
110,000	19.80	16.91	15.98	15.55	15.56	15.56
120,000	19.22	16.46	15.58	14.56	14.57	14.56
135,000	19.25	16.44	15.54	14.36	13.68	13.69
150,000	19.47	16.55	15.63	14.42	13.40	12.97
165,000	19.75	16.73	15.77	14.54	13.49	12.87
175,000	19.75	16.73	15.77	14.54	13.49	12.87
Lower 25% Quartile 120,000 to 175,000 DWT	19.25	16.46	15.58	14.42	13.49	12.87
Lightering Cost/Ton: Middle East Cost/Ton by Channel Depth						
Minimum	14.10	13.91	13.55	13.55	13.55	13.53
Mean	14.18	14.03	13.82	13.81	13.81	13.81
Maximum	14.60	14.55	14.42	14.42	14.42	14.42
Lightening Cost/Ton: Middle East Cost/Ton by Channel Depth						
Minimum	14.91	14.48	14.49	14.49	14.49	14.49
Mean	15.34	14.85	14.83	14.83	14.83	14.83
Maximum	15.77	15.22	15.18	15.18	15.18	15.18

*December 2008 Deep-draft vessel operating costs provided by IWR.

Review of the depths at trading ports and detailed analysis of current vessel use indicates that a significant share of Mexico and Latin American shipments would be likely to accrue benefits from increases in channel depth. Recent shipping records showed that nearly 90 percent of crude petroleum shipped from Mexico and Latin America to Freeport was transported in vessels of 90,000 DWT or more. For the 2014–2064 period of analysis, cost calculations for Mexico and Central and South America are based on 95 percent of crude oil being shipped in vessels of 90,000 DWT or more. A vessel DWT of 60,000 was used for the remaining 5 percent of Mexico and Central and South America.

Vessels from 60,000 to 120,000 DWT generally represent the range used for shipments from Mexico and Central and South America, with approximately 90 percent of 2004–2006 imports being shipped in vessels in the 90,000 to 120,000 DWT range. The per ton costs for direct shipment for the Central and South America routing included in Table 32 show significant reductions in costs for Suezmax vessels between 135,000 and 150,000 DWT for the 58- and 60-foot channel depth alternatives. Information obtained from Martin and Associates has indicated that transition would occur.[4] Freeport's 2006 and 2007 vessel transits show the use of Suezmax tankers for crude oil shipped from Brazil.

In spite of uncertainties associated with changes in methods of shipment, an increase in channel depth recognizably reduces the cost per ton for lightering by reducing the number of shuttle vessels used to transport a given volume of crude oil. As noted, the savings for lightering movements result from increases in shuttle loads due to greater channel depth in Freeport. The savings for lightered movements result from decreases in offshore unloading time from the mother vessel to shuttles, with savings realized for channel depth alternatives up to 52 feet. For lightening, the mother vessel is substituting offshore unloading time for dock-side unloading time, with savings realized for channel depth alternatives up to approximately 55 feet.

Based on the transportation cost analysis, the availability of a Freeport depth over 55 feet and widening of the Freeport Jetty Channel to 600 feet would make the use of Suezmax vessels a cost-effective option for direct shipments for most trade routes. Widening of the Jetty Channel is assumed to be performed under the without-project condition. Depths at the shipping origins (see Table 24) indicate that constraints and the origin will not be an impediment for most routings. The AEO 2008 production forecast and projection of U.S. import trade routes show relatively high growth rates of U.S. imports from Latin America. In 2007, the Brazilian government signed contracts for the construction of 10 Suezmax tankers with the goal of modernizing state-run oil company Petrobras's fleet. It was noted that Petrobras plans to acquire a total of 42 new ships between now and 2015.[5] In 2007, 29 percent of vessels over 140,000 DWT using Freeport transported Brazilian crude oil imports.

[4] Personal communication, Martin and Associates, 2008.

[5] Marine Digest and Cargo Business News, Summary for January 29–February 2, 2007.

The analysis for the offshore transfer process was based exclusively on operating costs. The duration of the transfer, and the number of shuttle tankers, supply boats, and equipment was estimated in terms of a "range of time," and the costs for vessels and equipment were determined. The shuttle vessel costs and additional pilot and tug charges were identified.

For the without-project future, the average between the two least-cost shipment methods was used for the Africa and North Sea cost calculation (see Table 33). The effect of 100 percent of Africa and North Sea being lightered is evaluated in Section 9.19. The least-cost transportation costs for Middle East tonnage were calculated using lightering for channel depths of 45 to 55 feet, and direct shipment for channel depths of 58 and 60 feet. Given the reduction in the differential between lightening and direct shipment as channel depth increases, the additional variable affecting shipping choice is the general recognition that direct shipment cost is subject to less uncertainty than the offshore transfer processes such as lightering and lightening due to the reduction in transfer times and associated logistics-related delays inherent with offshore transfer.

Table 34 summarizes the annual transportation cost savings by trade route. The transportation cost savings summarized in Table 34 are based on the range of transportation costs as displayed in Table 33. The direct shipment costs used for the transportation savings calculations are based on the lower 25 percentile costs given the array of vessel sizes and costs shown in Table 32. The lightering and lightening costs summarized in Table 33 were calculated using the average cost for shuttles in the 90,000 to 175,000 DWT range. Table 35 shows the percentage of crude oil imports expected to utilize greater drafts as a result of the cost calculations.

Long-term expectations are that widening from the existing 400-foot width through the Jetty Channel would result in utilization of larger and more-fully loaded vessels. A wider channel at the existing 45-foot Project depth is expected to allow the existing fleet to be more-fully loaded. It will also increase the frequency of larger tankers presently using the channel on a limited based. Review of recent historical data for 2005–2007 showed that 96.8 percent of tonnage is shipped in vessels with design drafts over 40 feet, and 61 percent of tonnage was loaded to 40 feet or greater. Long-term expectations are that channel depths over 50 feet will result in increased transportation efficiencies in the delivery of crude petroleum to Freeport.

Table 34
Freeport Crude Petroleum Imports Annual Transportation Savings by Representative Trade Route and Decade ($1,000s)
Channel Depth Alternative, Year, and Representative Origin
FY 09 Vessel Costs December 2008*

50-foot Channel	2000–2004	2014	2024	2034	2044	2054	2064
Mexico	234	214	224	250	276	305	337
Central/South America	6,919	7,387	8,154	9,380	10,361	11,446	12,628
Europe & Africa	891	840	906	1,023	1,130	1,248	1,377
Middle East	1,153	1,234	1,295	1,412	1,559	1,723	1,900
Total Savings by Decade	9,198	9,675	10,579	12,065	13,327	14,722	16,243
52-foot Channel							
Mexico	294	269	282	314	347	383	423
Central/South America	9,070	9,682	10,688	12,296	13,582	15,003	16,553
Europe & Africa	2,253	2,123	2,289	2,587	2,857	3,156	3,482
Middle East	2,767	2,962	3,107	3,388	3,743	4,134	4,561
Total Savings by Decade	14,384	15,036	16,367	18,584	20,529	22,676	25,019
55-foot Channel							
Mexico	376	343	360	401	443	489	540
Central/South America	11,782	12,577	13,884	15,972	17,642	19,488	21,501
Europe & Africa	3,472	3,272	3,528	3,986	4,403	4,863	5,366
Middle East	2,767	2,962	3,107	3,388	3,743	4,134	4,561
Total Savings by Decade	18,396	19,154	20,879	23,747	26,231	28,975	31,969
58-foot Channel							
Mexico	428	391	410	457	505	558	615
Central/South America	13,745	14,673	16,198	18,633	20,583	22,736	25,085
Europe & Africa	4,547	4,285	4,620	5,220	5,766	6,369	7,027
Middle East	5,303	5,677	5,955	6,494	7,173	7,924	8,742
Total Savings by Decade	24,023	25,026	27,183	30,804	34,027	37,587	41,470
60-foot Channel							
Mexico	447	408	428	477	527	582	643
Central/South America	14,386	15,357	16,953	19,502	21,543	23,796	26,255
Europe & Africa	5,172	4,874	5,256	5,938	6,559	7,245	7,994
Middle East	10,045	10,755	11,280	12,301	13,588	15,010	16,560
Total Savings by Decade	30,051	31,395	33,918	38,219	42,217	46,634	51,451

*December 2008 Deep-draft vessel operating costs provided by IWR.

Note: Totals may not add due to rounding.

Table 35
Percentage of Future Tonnage Loaded to Drafts Approaching Project Depth

Channel Depth (ft)	% of Tonnage Loaded to Drafts Approaching Project Depth			
	Existing Condition a/	Without-Project Future	With-Project Future	
			2014–2024	2034–2064
45	61	61	94	94
50	n/a	n/a	94	94
55	n/a	n/a	94	94
60	n/a	n/a	94	94

9.14.2 Petroleum Product Transportation Savings Benefits

Reductions in the vessel operating costs for Freeport's foreign petroleum product imports were calculated based on the relative difference in transportation costs between the without-project and with-project conditions. As with crude petroleum, transportation costs and savings were calculated for vessels that minimize transportation costs given trade route constraints. Again, long-term fleet selection will continue to reflect goals of minimizing vessel-operating costs. The transportation savings benefits for petroleum products were calculated based on vessels from 85,000 to 100,000 DWT. The vessel sizes for existing conditions are the same as those anticipated for the without- and with-project futures. The transportation costs for chemical products were calculated based on vessels from 50,000 to 65,000 DWT for the existing condition and the without-project future. The with-project future transportation costs were calculated using vessels from 50,000 to 100,000 DWT.

9.15 INCREMENTAL ANALYSIS

Incremental analysis was performed for the two operational reaches that extend through Station 174+00. In terms of vessel traffic and facilities, the first reach starts offshore at Station –350+00 and goes to Station 115+00, and includes the Lower Turning Basin and the Brazosport Turning Basin. This 45-foot-deep reach provides access to crude petroleum tankers using docks operated by Seaway. The maximum-sized vessels using the channel on a regular basis are 820-foot-long by 145-foot-wide crude oil tankers unloaded. The length and beam of these vessels corresponds to a 120,000 DWT vessel.

The benefit calculations are based on the assumption that the channel is widened to 600 feet and that the Jetty Channel is widened to 600 feet under the Section 204 authority. The effect of widening the Jetty Channel under the Federal project is evaluated in Section 9.19.

The maximum-sized crude petroleum carrier presently using the Seaway Terminal and the Brazosport Turning Basin is approximately 160,000 DWT. The with-project future would result in a greater number of 160,000 DWT vessels. Presently, the frequency of transits associated with this vessel size is limited based on the BPA rules. Based on the BPA rules, vessels in the 120,000 to 160,000 DWT range require waivers as lengths and beams cannot exceed 820 by 145 feet, respectively. Waivers are only granted provided that winds are less than 20 knots and that there is no more than a 0.5-knot crosscurrent at the mouth of the jetties. As previously noted, approximately three to four ships per month are granted waivers. A maximum vessel size of approximately 160,000 DWT would remain under the without-project future.

The second major reach of the channel extends from the Brazosport Turning Basin to the Upper Turning Basin near Station 174+00. The Upper Turning Basin is approximately 750 feet in diameter. Facilities in this reach with cargo included in the channel deepening analysis are Dow Chemical and ConocoPhillips. The maximum-sized crude petroleum and product carriers used in the reach extending from the Brazosport Turning Basin to the Upper Turning Basin would not change under the with-project future. The largest-sized crude petroleum and petroleum product tankers presently used are 100,000 DWT. The largest-sized chemical carriers using the Brazosport Turning Basin to the Upper Turning Basin reach are presently about 50,000 DWT. These vessels have design draft of 42 feet. An increase in channel depth above 45 feet would allow for the use of larger chemical carriers. The maximum-sized chemical carrier under the with-project future is anticipated to be approximately 100,000 DWT.

Table 36 presents the economic summary data for the first reach, which starts offshore at Station –350+00 and goes to Station 115+00. This reach includes the Lower Turning Basin and the Brazosport Turning Basin. The results of the analysis show that the 52- to 60-foot alternatives have BCRs over unity. Of the plans presented, the 60-foot alternative has the highest net excess benefits.

Table 37 presents the economic summary data for the second reach, which starts near Station 115+00 and goes to Station 174+00. This reach extends from the Brazosport Turning Basin to the Upper Turning Basin near Station 174+00. As noted, the facilities in this reach with cargo included in the channel deepening analysis are Dow Chemical and ConocoPhillips. The results of the analysis presented in Table 37 show that all alternatives have BCRs over unity. Of the plans presented in Table 37, the 50-foot alternative has the highest net excess benefits.

Table 38 presents the economic analysis for deepening from the offshore Outer Bar Channel through Station 174+00. The table shows channel depth alternatives of 50 through 60 feet and includes two plans providing for 55- and 60-foot channel depths through Station 115+00 and a 50-foot channel depth from Station 115+00 to Station 174+00. These plans that are shown in the last two columns of Table 36 are based on 55- and 60-foot channel depths up to Station 115+00 and a 50-foot channel depth from Station 115+00 through Station 174+00. Comparison of the

plans presented in Table 38 show that a 60-foot depth to Station 115+00 and a 50-foot depth through Station 174+00 produces higher net excess benefits than the other alternatives presented.

Table 36
Crude Petroleum, Petroleum Products, and Chemicals
Outer Bar to Station 0+00 through Station 115+00 (includes Seaway Terminal)
Average Annual Benefits and Costs (4.375% and $1,000)

Channel Alternative	50 feet	52 feet	55 feet	58 feet	60 feet
2014	8,370.9	13,393.4	17,257.4	22,962.6	28,883.0
2024	9,174.7	14,594.0	18,824.5	24,942.1	31,204.4
2034	10,488.4	16,589.6	21,425.5	28,264.7	35,161.2
2044	11,585.7	18,325.3	23,667.0	31,221.8	38,839.9
2054	12,797.9	20,242.5	26,143.1	34,488.3	42,903.4
2064	14,119.9	22,333.6	28,843.8	38,051.0	47,335.4
Average Annual Benefits	10,041.0	15,943.1	20,573.8	27,220.7	33,991.3
First Cost of Construction	177,818.9	198,590.8	229,748.6	274,201.0	303,836.0
Interest During Construction	13,959.8	16,147.4	19,428.7	24,300.7	27,548.7
Total Investment	191,778.6	214,738.1	249,177.3	298,501.7	331,384.7
Average Annual Cost	9,507.8	10,646.1	12,353.5	14,798.9	16,429.1
Average Annual O&M[a]	3,067.3	3,432.4	3,980.0	5,197.2	6,018.1
Total Annual Cost	12,575.2	14,078.5	16,333.5	19,996.0	22,447.3
Average Annual Benefits	10,041.0	15,943.1	20,573.8	27,220.7	33,991.3
Net Excess Benefits	(2,534.3)	1,864.7	4,240.3	7,224.7	11,544.1
B/C Ratios	0.8	1.1	1.3	1.4	1.5

[a]O&M = operation and maintenance

Table 37
Crude Petroleum, Petroleum Products, and Chemicals
Station 115+00 to Station 174+00
(Includes ConocoPhillips and Dow Chemical)
Average Annual Benefits and Costs (4.375 percent and $1,000)

Channel Alternative	50 feet	52 feet	55 feet	58 feet	60 feet
2014	2,145.3	2,145.3	2,145.3	2,145.3	2,145.3
2024	3,388.7	3,388.7	3,388.7	3,388.7	3,388.7
2034	5,262.3	5,262.3	5,262.3	5,262.3	5,262.3
2044	5,954.7	5,954.7	5,954.7	5,954.7	5,954.7
2054	6,095.0	6,095.0	6,095.0	6,095.0	6,095.0
2064	6,210.0	6,210.0	6,210.0	6,210.0	6,210.0
Average Annual Benefits	4,146.3	4,146.3	4,146.3	4,146.3	4,146.3
First Cost of Construction	40,315.5	41,816.8	44,068.8	44,517.7	44,966.6
Interest During Construction	1,274.0	1,321.4	1,392.6	771.2	1,421.0
Total Investment	41,589.5	43,138.2	45,461.4	45,924.4	46,387.5
Average Annual Cost	2,061.9	2,138.7	2,253.8	2,276.8	2,299.8
Average Annual O&M	695.4	722.7	763.4	843.8	890.7
Total Annual Cost	2,757.3	2,861.4	3,017.3	3,120.6	3,190.4
Average Annual Benefits	4,146.3	4,146.3	4,146.3	4,146.3	4,146.3
Net Excess Benefits	1,389.0	1,284.9	1,129.0	1,025.7	955.9
B/C Ratios	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.3

Table 38
Crude Petroleum, Petroleum Products, and Chemicals
Outer Bar to Station 174+00[a]
Average Annual Benefits and Costs (4.375 percent and $1,000)

Channel Alternative	50 feet	52 feet	50/55 feet[b]	55 feet	58 feet	50/60 feet[c]	60 feet
2014	11,103.9	16,476.9	19,825.2	19,825.2	26,469.5	31,086.4	31,086.4
2024	13,141.9	18,944.3	22,617.9	22,617.9	29,764.3	34,613.8	34,613.8
2034	16,337.2	22,874.6	27,084.1	27,084.1	35,098.7	40,398.5	40,398.5
2044	18,196.5	25,415.9	30,067.8	30,067.8	38,918.4	44,775.1	44,775.1
2054	19,625.8	27,598.6	32,739.1	32,739.1	42,513.3	48,985.1	48,985.1
2064	21,146.6	29,941.1	35,614.5	35,614.5	46,396.1	53,538.8	53,538.8
Average Annual Benefits	14,800.4	21,120.4	25,145.8	25,145.8	32,917.3	38,148.5	38,148.5
First Cost of Construction	239,522.9	263,673.0	296,843.0	299,898.1	344,696.6	373,259.0	374,562.3
Interest During Construction	17,203.6	19,501.7	22,852.3	22,948.9	27,926.9	31,204.3	31,245.5
Average Annual Cost	12,727.8	14,039.0	15,849.6	16,005.8	18,473.6	20,052.1	20,118.8
Average Annual O&M	3,771.9	4,160.5	4,743.4	4,743.4	6,042.6	6,908.8	6,908.8
Total Annual Cost	16,499.7	18,199.5	20,593.0	20,749.2	24,516.3	26,961.0	27,027.6
Average Annual Benefits	14,800.4	21,120.4	25,145.8	25,145.8	32,917.3	38,148.5	38,148.5
Net Excess Benefits	-1,699.3	2,920.9	4,552,8	4,396.6	8,401.0	11,187.5	11,120.9
B/C Ratios	0.9	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.3	1.4	1.4

[a]Excludes the Stauffer Channel Modification.

[b]LPP : Based on a 55-foot channel depth for the lower portion of the Main Channel and a 50-foot channel depth for the upper portion of the Main Channel.

[c]NED: Based on a 60-foot channel depth for the lower portion of the Main Channel and a 50-foot channel depth for the upper portion of the Main Channel. The 52-, 55-, and 58-foot alternatives all reflect a 50-foot channel depth for the upper portion of the Main Channel.

9.16 STAUFFER CHANNEL MODIFICATION LOWER REACH

This section presents the analysis of the Federal interest in channel improvement to the lower reach of Stauffer Channel. Work by the non-Federal sponsor on the initial 800 linear feet of dock/1,200 linear feet of berth for Phase I, the anticipated date for receiving the first vessel is January, 2011. At that time the first 20 acres of backland will be completed and the next 15 acres of backland will be under construction. The without-project condition associated with Phase I is based on an off-channel berth area being constructed by the local Sponsor. This berth area is being constructed in two phases and may eventually be as deep as 45 feet; this construction is not part of the Federal project. Phase II includes a total of 80 acres (35 acres as part of Phase I and 45 acres as part of Phase II). The Phase II features include the construction of an additional 1,200 linear feet of berth and 45 acres of backland development to support the additional berth. The schedule is somewhat market-dependent, but it is safe to assume

construction of both the additional berth and the backland will be complete by 2016. The plan would be to have the two projects completed concurrent with each other.

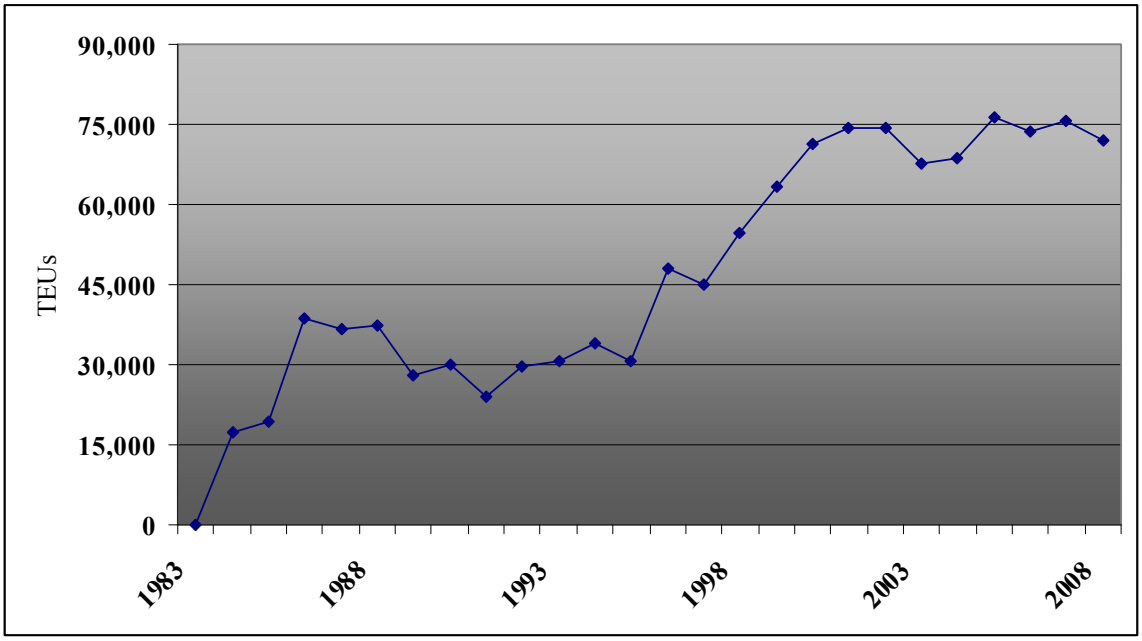
Velasco Terminal, Phase I, which includes the first 800 linear feet of wharf and 20 acres of backland, was completed in October 2010. Water access to the terminal requires a 3,000-foot extension from the upper reach of the existing Federal navigation channel. The future without-project condition is based on the assumption that the non-Federal sponsor obtains a permit to dredge the 3,000-foot-long channel from its existing depth of 18 feet to an operating depth of 40 feet. Based on a future without-project condition depth of 40 feet, optimization of Federal interest in channel depth improvements over 40 feet was subsequently evaluated. For purposes of analysis, the transportation savings benefits for container cargo were calculated from an existing condition depth of 18 feet.

An annual volume of approximately 200,000 TEUs is expected during the first full year of operation with one to two vessels per day. The term TEU refers to twenty-foot equivalent units, or equivalent capacity of one 20-foot container. A 40-foot container is two TEUs. The maximum weight of a standard 40-foot container is 32 metric tons. If both loads and empty containers are considered, the average cargo weight is generally taken as 7.5 metric tons per TEU. A base of 200,000 TEUs represents 0.3 percent of the U.S. container throughput. A full build-out of 800,000 to 1,200,000 TEUs is planned based on three construction phases. The NED benefits were calculated based on Freeport's 2014 volume of 200,000 TEUs increasing to 234,000 TEUs by 2024 and remaining constant.

Discussion of Freeport's traffic forecast is presented in the next sections. The benefit calculations for container cargo presented in this report are based on cargo using Phase I of the Velasco Terminal project. Phase I provides for 800 feet of dock and 35 acres. This area would support a maximum of approximately 234,000 TEUs. The port expects additional expansions; however, the benefits and costs associated with terminal and landside improvements beyond Phase I are not evaluated in this report.

The Velasco terminal is being constructed in partnership agreement with the Spanish-based Dragados SPL. This expected throughput is in addition to Freeport's existing base of container cargo. Port Freeport is currently the only port in addition to Houston that regularly handles containerized cargo. Freeport's container trade is concentrated principally on fresh fruit by producers such as Dole, Chiquita, and Turbana. For 2008, the port throughput totaled 72,000 TEU. This higher total results in part from the containerization of some cargo that previously moved in palletized form. With the acquisition of a mobile harbor crane, the port now unloads a greater percentage of containers as opposed to relying on shipboard cranes. Figure 12 displays Freeport's 1983–2008 container cargo totals.

Figure 12
Freeport Channel Container Cargo 1983–2008 (TEUs)



Source: Compiled from American Association of Port Authorities website, May 2009.

Freeport maintains an abundance of container storage space, and over 7,500 acres available for development of which 1,400 acres are environmentally mitigated[6]. Both the new terminal and existing container and general cargo facilities are within 8 miles of the open waters of the Gulf of Mexico. The port's proximity to deep water provides efficient transportation to Houston and beyond via highway, rail, and the inland waterway system. All of Freeport's docks are located within 4 miles from the GIWW.

The port is accessible from the land side by SH 36, SH 288, and FM 523. Road widening to four lanes from two lanes of SH 36 is in TxDOT's Transportation Improvement Program (TIP). SH 36 provides a direct access to SH 90 and Interstate 10, which provides direct access to San Antonio. SH 288 is accessible going northward from the port on SH 332, with the latter turning into SH 288 north of Lake Jackson. The right-of-way for FM 2004, which is presently two lanes, will accommodate four lanes. FM 2004, which intersects with SH 288 north of Lake Jackson, goes from Freeport to Interstate 45. Interstate 45 provides direct access from Houston to Dallas.

Container traffic is also generally grouped as either local or intermodal. Local cargo can be delivered by truck within one day's drive. Intermodal is generally rail bound for more-distant locations. Information shown in the Texas Transportation Institute 2007 Center for Transportation Research's study indicates that over 90 percent of Houston container cargo is

[6] http://www.portfreeport.com/about.htm

transported through the port by truck.[7] Traffic associated with Phase I of Freeport's Velasco Terminal will all be transported by truck. The Texas Transportation Institute noted that Freeport's potential growth of the Velasco site for containers could be aided by a number of factors. For one, the proximity to Barbours Cut and Bayport, while producing direct competition, also gives Freeport access to the Houston network of trucking firms, distribution centers, and other port support assets. As with Houston, the role of rail in the future development of Freeport's container operation is noted to be likely minor and that intermodal activity originating from Freeport would most likely rely on a dray move to a nearby intermodal yard. Union Pacific Railroad's planned relocation of its major east-west intermodal yard from Englewood to Rosenberg may aid Freeport in offering dray rates that are competitive with Barbours Cut and Bayport.[8]

While Freeport is initially anticipated to serve as a truck port, and the transportation benefit calculations presented in this document are limited to truck, enhancements to rail capabilities in Brazoria County, including replacement of a World War II–era rail bridge over the old Brazos River channel in downtown Freeport that is insufficient to serve rapidly increasing rail cargo volumes, are planned. Efficient rail access is recognized as being important to container ports. Three Class 1 railroads operated 81 percent of Texas's total track miles in 2003. Class 1 represents the major railroad companies moving significant amounts of freight over long distances and owning track spanning several states. The three Class I railroads serving Texas are Burlington Northern Santa Fe Railway, Kansas City Southern Railroad, and Union Pacific Railroad. For the Port of Freeport, Union Pacific has a direct connection to the port's Brazosport and Dow Chemical loading areas. Port officials are working with the Texas Transportation Commission on advancing both highway and railway improvement.

9.16.1 Regional and National Trends

Freeport's new container terminal is being construction in response to capacity limitations at Freeport's existing facilities, located within the confines of the Brazos Harbor Turning Basin. Modification of the existing facilities would undermine existing wharfage. These limitations prompted development of the Velasco Terminal located on property bordering the existing 45-foot Project and the Stauffer Channel. Construction of the terminal is also in response to regional population and state population growth.

Figures 13 and 14 provide comparisons of U.S. West Coast, East Coast, and Gulf Coast 1999–2008 container throughputs. The figures show that the Gulf Coast traffic increased relative to the West Coast, and also to the East Coast, but to a lesser extent.

[7] University of Texas Center for Transportation Research, Planning for Container Growth along the Houston Ship Channel and Other Texas Seaports, November 2006 revised February 2007, p. 15

[8] TxDOT, Texas Rail System Plan, October 2005, p. 2-4.

Figure 13
U.S. East Coast and West Coast Container Cargo (TEUs)
Billions of Chained 2000 Dollars (1999–2008)

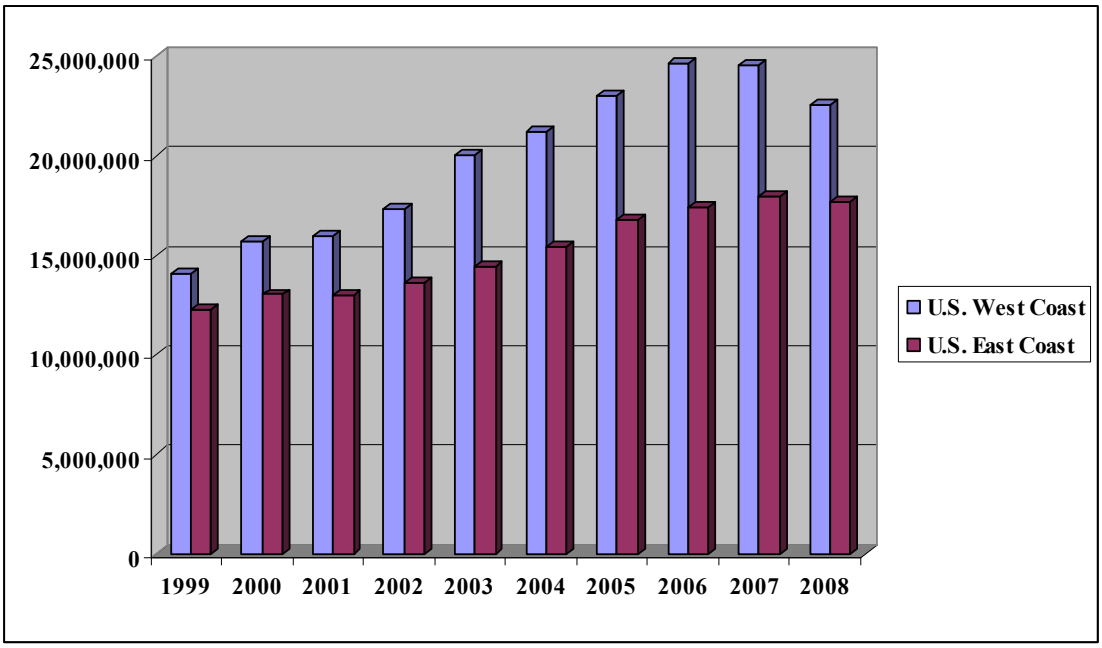
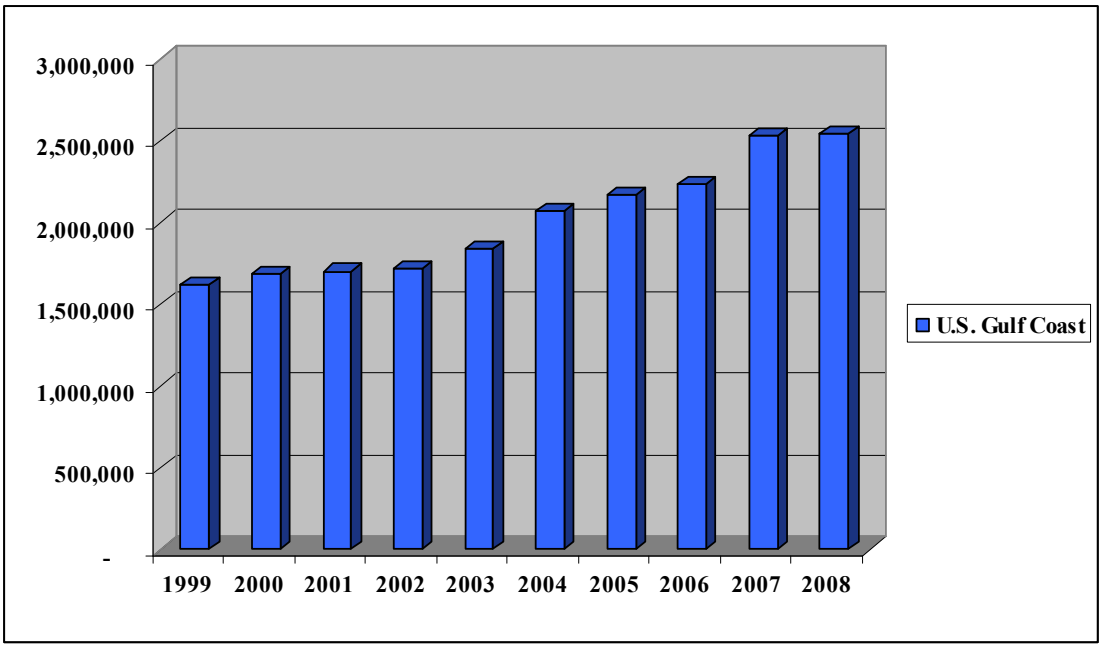


Figure 14
U.S. Gulf Coast Container Cargo (TEUs)
Billions of Chained 2000 Dollars (1999–2008)



Transportation infrastructure limitations have been cited as contributing to changes in regional distribution of the U.S. container market. Examples of transportation infrastructure limitations and associated affects limiting trade flow were cited in several trade journals. In the 1990s, the use of post-Panamax containerships and the existing constraints at the Panama Canal shifted post-Panamax ships from using the all-water route to using double-stack trains to move goods from West Coast ports eastward. The increased volumes railed to the East Coast were noted as testing the limits of port and intermodal infrastructure at the shipping and receiving ends.[9] In addition to greater reliance on rail due to the inability of post-Panamax ships to transit the canal, direct ship movements to the East and Gulf coasts have occurred due to congestion at West Coast ports. At the same time and due to congestion at Los Angeles/Long Beach (LA/LB), it was noted that some shippers have greatly increased their utilization of the canal, particularly for all-water services from Asia to the U.S. Gulf and East coasts because, while there are delays associated with the canal, the delays may be more predictable and easier to plan for than delays at LA/LB.

From 2001 to 2005, the TEU capacity of containerships transiting the canal increased by 59 percent, the number of containerships transiting the canal rose by 47 percent, and average vessel size increased 21 percent. "By the end of 2011, the total post-Panamax containership fleet will consist of approximately 670 ships with a capacity of almost 4.6 million TEUs, close to double the capacity of the existing post-Panamax fleet," according to the Panama Canal Authority (ACP). The Panama Canal Authority used a post-Panamax vessel of 366 meters long, 49 meters wide, and 15 meters deep as the reference for establishing the ideal lock chamber sizes.

Regional and national container markets, such as Freeport, are developed based on long-term expectations. In reviewing the forecast indicators, it should be noted that in serving similar markets as Houston, Freeport's cargo mix is anticipated to likewise consist of a high volume of exports. While improvements have been made, conditions of U.S. railroads vary widely and inefficiencies are frequently cited in relation to container cargo distribution. The emphasis on "just in time delivery" cited by many and growing congestion at existing ports and landside transportation networks has prompted growth at smaller and new ports.

9.16.2 Regional Population Growth and Market Expectations

At the aggregate level, U.S. demand for imported containerized goods is recognized as a function of domestic income, population, and other factors influencing demand, such as exchange rates.[10] Demand for containerized exports depends upon economic activity in other countries, exchange

[9] Inbound Logistics, Breaking Ports Perform Under Pressure by Lisa H. Harrington, June 2006

[10] University of Rhode Island Transportation Center, Comprehensive Framework for Sustainable Container Port Development for the United States East Coast: Year One Final Report, October 2001, p. I-9

rates, and other factors. The geographic pattern of U.S. demand for container port services depends upon (1) the location of domestic consumers with respect to foreign sources for imports, (2) the location of manufacturers, farms, resource industries, and other exporting businesses relative to foreign markets for their goods, and (3) the availability and relative costs of intermodal transport from sources to markets. Correlation between population and container volume, particularly imports, is cited by several analysts. While population is one of several variables affecting traffic growth, it is recognizably a key variable particularly for this study region where over 90 percent of existing container tonnage is served by trucks. Population growth for the counties within the Freeport and Houston port areas is presented in Table 39. While the population forecast shows fairly high growth for the region included in the HGB Statistical Metropolitan Area, review of 2009 data shows that regional population has increased at higher rates than expected. Table 40 displays regional 2008 population data obtained from the U.S. Census.

Table 39
Metropolitan Statistical Area Population Projections
Texas Counties Adjacent to Freeport, Texas

County	2000	2010	2020	2030	2040	2050	2060	Average Annual Growth Rate (%) 2000–2060
Brazoria County	241,767	285,850	331,731	375,664	416,157	459,078	503,894	1.2
Harris County	3,321,660	3,869,179	4,416,793	4,964,463	5,512,168	6,059,895	6,607,635	1.2
Fort Bend	354,452	490,072	630,624	802,486	979,196	1,210,945	1,475,761	2.4
Wharton County	41,188	43,560	46,045	47,647	48,567	48,590	48,074	0.3
Galveston	250,158	268,714	284,731	294,218	298,057	300,915	302,774	0.3
Matagorda	37,957	40,506	43,295	44,991	45,925	45,793	45,377	0.3

Source: Texas Water Development Board, 2006 Regional Water Plan, County Population Projections 2000–2060.

Table 40
Houston-Galveston Statistical Metropolitan Area
2000–2008 Population Estimates, Select Counties

County	2000	2008	2000–2008 Actual Growth Rate (%)	2000–2010 Anticipated Growth Rate* (%)
Brazoria County	241,767	301,004	2.8	1.9
Harris County	3,321,660	3,984,349	2.3	1.7
Fort Bend	354,452	532,141	5.2	3.7
Wharton County	41,188	40,791	–0.1	0.6
Galveston	250,158	288,239	1.8	0.8
Matagorda	37,957	37,265	–0.2	0.7
Total	4,247,182	5,183,789	2.5	1.8

Source: U.S. Bureau of Census, State and County Quick Facts, 2009.
*Texas Water Development Board, 2006 Regional Water Plan, County Population Projections

The distance from Freeport to towns and cities within and adjacent to Freeport was examined to determine the immediate market area. Table 41 displays mileages from Freeport to towns and cities within and adjacent to Brazoria County. In addition to relative distances from Freeport, the location of "distribution centers" (DCs), also referred to as "inland ports," was examined. It is noted that the inland ports of Alliance (Forth Worth), Wilmer (Dallas), and Kelly (San Antonio) are part of the Texas freight distribution network. The inland ports are noted to complement the overland border ports of entry, where consolidation of North American Free Trade Agreement–related trade transfers can take place. It is recognized that DCs previously functioned primarily as warehouses but currently are involved in repackaging cargo for retailers and adding value to commodities. These centers are established along supply chains to service retail outlets such as Wal-Mart, Target, Home Depot, and Lowes. While Houston has clear mileage advantages over Freeport for cargo traveling to Dallas/Fort Worth, the comparative one-way distance to San Antonio is less than 5 miles. Plans to widen the Panama Canal to accommodate larger container vessels will increase Texas container traffic. Over the next 20 years, Texas ports, waterways, highways, and rail facilities will handle between 50 and 85 percent more freight, depending on the mode of transportation, according to "Texas Ports 2007–2008 Capital Program," a report by the Texas Department of Transportation.

Table 41
Mileage Comparison to
Cities Within or Adjacent to Brazoria County

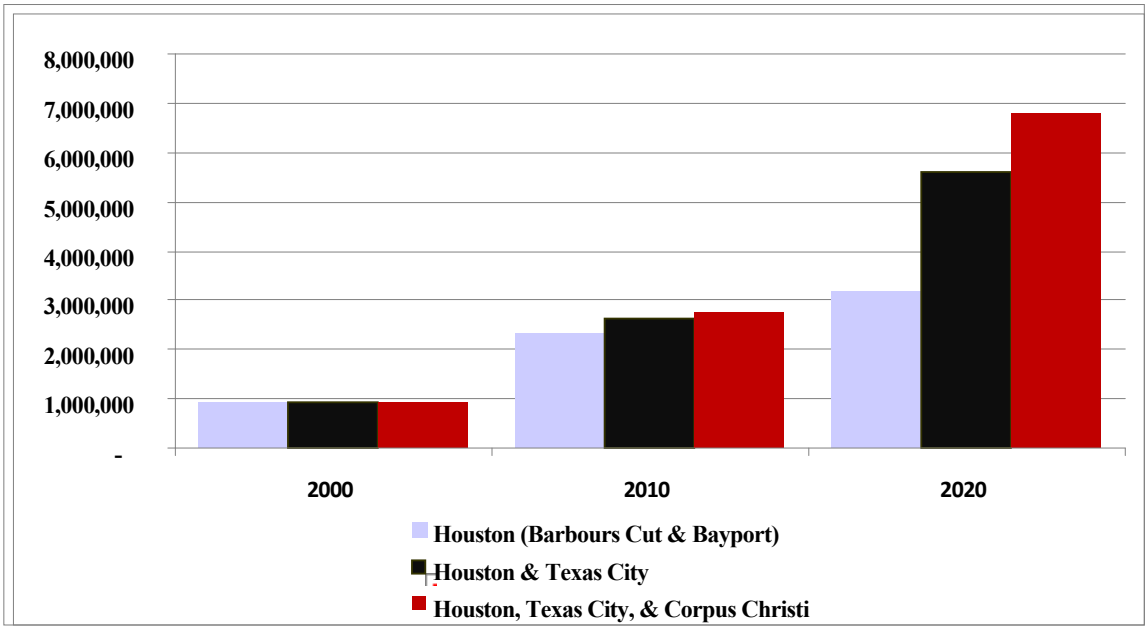
City	Freeport miles	LaPorte miles	Freeport Advantage Plus (+)	2008 City Population	County
Lake Jackson	10	64	54	27,614	Brazoria
Rosenberg	58	58	0	24,043	Ft. Bend
Bay City	49	90	41	18,667	Matagorda
Angleton	27	54	27	18,130	Brazoria
Freeport	0	74	74	12,708	Brazoria
El Campo	101	102	1	10,945	Wharton
Clute	8	69	61	10,424	Brazoria
Wharton	60	82	22	9,772	Wharton
Palacios	72	128	56	5,153	Matagorda
West Colombia	26	66	40	4,199	Brazoria
Sweeny	27	75	48	3,624	Brazoria
Brazoria	18	66	48	2,974	Brazoria
Jones Creek	8	72	64	2,130	Brazoria
Danbury	25	41	16	1,611	Brazoria

9.16.3 Market Demand

Market demand for an additional U.S. Gulf Coast container terminal, such as Freeport, is a function of ability of competing terminals to meet consumer and producer demand. Figure 15 shows 2000, 2010, and 2020 regional market supply based on terminal availability of Barbours Cut, Bayport, and the potential additions of new terminals in Texas City and Corpus Christi, and a 60 percent expansion of Bayport TEU capacity.

The effect of the 2010 market supply levels of 2.3 to 2.8 million TEU shown on Figure 15, and 2010 regional market demand between 2.2 and 2.4 million TEU produced using average annual growth rates of 7.5 and 11 percent indicate that additional capacity is not needed in 2010. However, the effect of the 2020 market supply levels of 4.5 and 7.0 million TEU shows insufficient regional container capacity without the planned expansion of Bayport and construction of the Texas City and Corpus Christi terminals. The results of this analysis suggest that the Freeport terminal, which is presently under construction, would fill a market gap in the absence of the Bayport expansion and the Texas City and Corpus Christi terminals. The results suggest that construction of Texas City and Corpus Christi and expansion of Bayport would alternatively reduce the market gap filled by Freeport. Expected completion of the Freeport terminal in 2009 indicates that Freeport is posed to capture overflow traffic.

Figure 15
Texas Container Cargo (TEUs) 2000–2020



Source: Compiled from port publications and general literature.

9.16.4 Design Vessel and Vessel Utilization Expectations

The ERDC ship simulation modeling was performed using the 1,138-foot-long by 140.8-foot *Susan Maersk* containership. The results of the modeling revealed that none of the pilots controlling the *Susan Maersk* were able to bring the ship safely into the turning basin. In order to safely accommodate this vessel, several other improvements to the channel, including widening, would be necessary. Widening would be needed around the Big Bend area inbound from the Seaway Dock at the lower end of the channel in order to accommodate the *Susan Maersk*. While the ERDC modeling showed that the 104,696 DWT *Susan Maersk* could not navigate past Station 180+00, study results indicated that smaller containerships could. Containerships from 60,000 to 68,000 DWT are representative of mid-sized container vessels and use Houston on a regular basis. These vessels, which have design drafts up to 45 feet, are also representative of the upper end of Panamax containerships.

Given Freeport's channel dimensions, the ERDC ship simulation results, U.S. Gulf Coast utilization, and world fleet availability, the design vessel for Phase I of Freeport's container terminal expansion is 965 feet long by 106 feet wide and is approximately 4,650 TEU and 68,000 DWT. The vessels shown in Table 42 represent the upper size range expected to use the Freeport container terminal.

Table 42
Largest Container Vessels Expected to Use Freeport
Representative Vessels

Vessel Name	DWT	TEU Capacity	Design Draft (feet)	LOA (feet)	Beam (feet)	Year Built
APL Beijing	67,022	5,029	45	964	106	2004
APL Virginia	66,644	5,018	45	965	106	2005
Bellavia	66,478	5,117	44	965	106	2005
CMA CGM Capri	67,300	5,089	44	964	106	2007
CMA CGM Chateau D'If	68,281	5,089	44	965	106	2007
CMA CGM Orca	65,890	5,041	44	965	109	2006
CMA CGM Scala	68,240	5,085	44	964	106	2007
Hyundai Grace	63,439	4,700	44	965	106	2007
Hyundai Unity	63,439	4,571	44	965	106	2007
Ital Laguna	68,038	5,090	44	964	106	2006
Ital Lirica	68,138	5,090	44	964	106	2007
Ital Lunare	68,009	5,090	44	964	106	2007
Maersk Daesan	68,017	5,060	44	964	106	2005
Maersk Dartmouth	66,583	5,043	45	965	106	2005
Maersk Davao	68,168	5,060	44	965	106	2005
Maersk Denver	66,983	5,043	45	965	106	2004
Mol Earnest	62,964	4,803	44	965	106	2007
Mol Efficiency	63,160	4,646	44	965	106	2003
Mol Endowment	62,949	4,800	44	965	106	2007
Mol Experience	62,953	4,803	44	965	106	2007
MSC Benedetta	68,126	5,050	44	965	106	2006
MSC Bremen	67,000	5,029	45	965	106	2007
MSC Debra	68,080	5,050	44	965	106	2006
NYK Constellation	65,919	4,882	44	965	106	2007
Safmarine Mafadi	61,433	4,154	44	958	106	2007
YM New Jersey	65,123	4,923	44	964	106	2006
Zim Beijing	66,939	5,075	45	965	106	2005

Source: Lloyd's Register-Fairplay (August 2008).

While expectations concerning the distribution for 2024 through 2064 are subject to uncertainty, the general pattern follows the shift of larger container vessels to the U.S. Gulf that occurred between 2003 and 2006. At the same time, it is recognized that the increased concentration of loaded drafts over 40 feet is presently confined to the U.S. East and West coasts where there are container terminal access channels with project depths over 40 feet (Table 43). Table 44 shows U.S. total containership trips by loaded draft. Figure 16 provides a general illustration of regional changes in loaded draft patterns for 2003–2006 and shows a higher concentration of loaded drafts over 40 feet in 2006 than in previous years.

Table 45 displays the estimated 2010–2014 period distribution of tonnage by channel depth and vessel DWT for the range of vessels anticipated to use Freeport's container terminal.

9.16.5 Anticipated Traffic Volume

Container vessels carry any cargo that can be stowed into any of the following container types: general purpose, high cube, hardtop, open top, flat, platform, insulated, ventilated, bulk, refrigerated (reefer), and tank-type containers. Cargo can include merchandise in cartons, bales, drums, cars, furniture, electronics, food, livestock, chemicals, and machinery. Oversized cargo such as heavy machinery, trucks, earthmoving equipment, and pleasure boats can be placed in or on open-top, open-side, or flat-rack containers or secured to the tops of several containers in a row. The range and diversity of container cargo have evolved.[11] The earliest cargo ships carried a plethora of industrial boxes and packages, but today's container ships have a range of containers to deal with their diverse cargo. There are refrigerated containers that plug into special power sockets; there are containers for grain, liquids, and cars; even containers with clothes hanging inside, ready to go straight onto shop floors. Flat-rack containers make a bed for outsized items such as yachts and heavy industrial machinery.

Freeport officials anticipate an estimated range of 107,000 to 230,000 TEUs as Phase I commences. This base represents approximately 0.3 percent of the U.S. container throughput, and 11 percent of Houston's 2008 throughput of 1.8 million TEUs. As previously noted, Bayport Container Terminal will be able to handle 2 million TEUs upon full build-out in 2015. While construction of Freeport's additional terminal is primarily in response to capacity limitations at Freeport's existing facilities located within the confines of the Brazos Harbor Turning Basin, the terminal is also expected to meet increased long-term demand resulting from higher than anticipated regional population growth. As shown in Table 40, regional population growth from 2000 through 2008 exceeded earlier expectations.

[11] Seafarer, *The Rise of the Supership*, Summer 2005, p. 12

Table 43
U.S. Total Container Vessel Trips by Region and Loaded Draft (2006)

Vessels by Loaded Draft (feet)							
Region	**≤30**	**31–35**	**36–40**	**41–44**	**45–49**	**≥50**	**Total**
California	767	1,641	1,865	408	15	2	4,698
Northwest	254	594	390	105	3	–	1,346
Northeast	776	1,311	1,482	95	7	–	3,671
Southeast	2,813	2,854	2,009	107	13	–	7,796
Gulf Coast	621	615	102	–	–	–	1,338
Houston	343	423	54	–	–	–	820
Freeport	104	–	–	–	–	–	104
Other	602	149	43	1	–	–	795
Total	5,833	7,164	5,891	716	38	2	19,644

Table 44
U.S. Total Containership Trips by Loaded Draft
2004–2006

	Vessel Trips By Loaded Draft (feet)			
Loaded Draft (feet)	**2003**	**2004**	**2005**	**2006**
≤30	6,330	5,679	5,683	5,833
31–35	7,695	7,052	7,384	7,164
36–38	3,082	3,816	3,843	4,468
39	384	619	667	879
40	200	394	282	544
41	84	273	166	316
42	81	171	127	232
43	5	26	16	108
44	3	16	6	60
45	1	7	14	31
46	1	3	6	3
47	1	1	–	2
48	–	3	1	1
49	–	–	–	1
50	–	–	2	–
>50	–	–	4	2
Total Vessels	17,867	18,060	18,201	19,644

Source: USACE, NDC, Entrance and Clearance (public data), 2006

Figure 16
U.S. Total Containership Trips
Percentage of Trips by Loaded Draft (2003–2006)

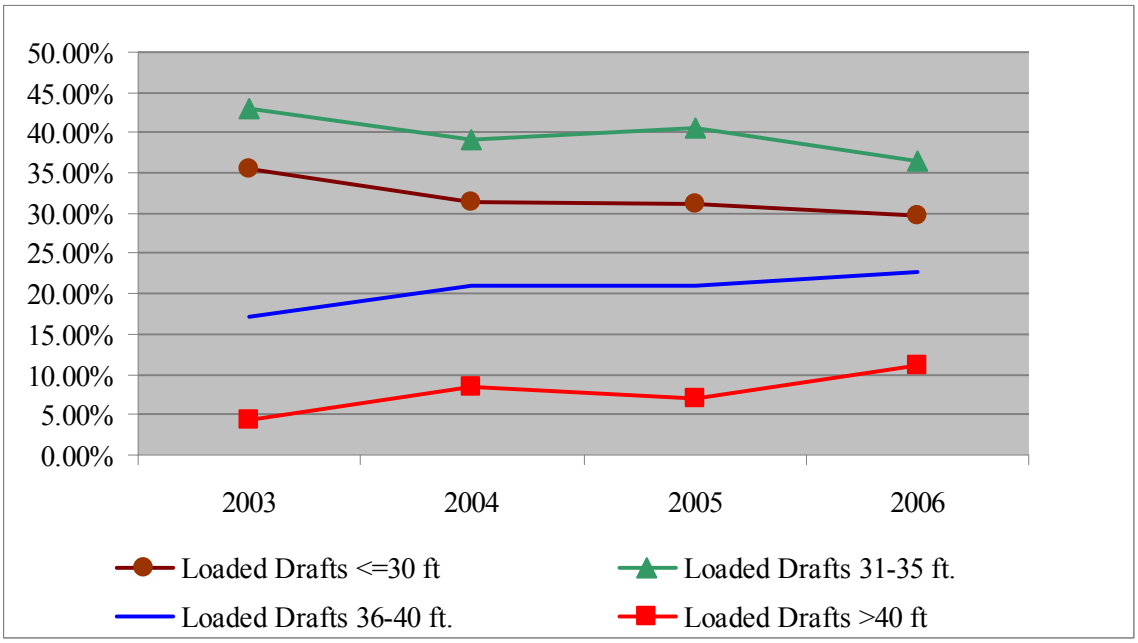


Table 45
Houston 2006 and Freeport Expected Container Tonnage by Vessel DWT*

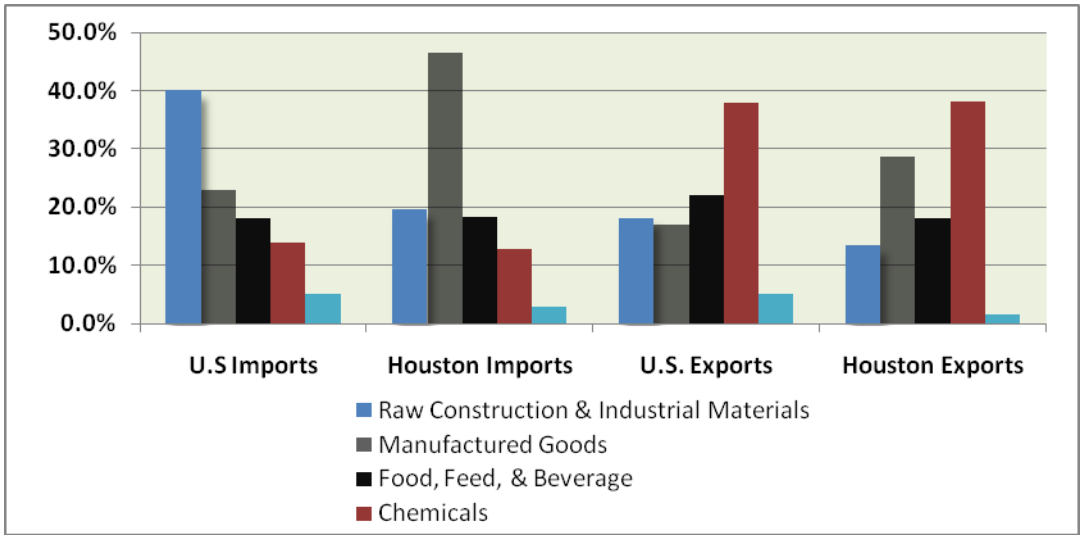
Vessel DWT	Vessel TEU	% of Houston 2006 Short Tons by Vessel Size	Distribution of Freeport's Container Tonnage by Vessel Size* (%)		
			Adjusted Regional Share	U.S. Distribution Adjusted.	Average of Houston & U.S. Share
22,900	1,400	11.4	40.8	68.2	20.4
33,900	2,300	18.1	21.5	23.4	27.7
45,400	3,400	37.3	22.0	4.6	37.3
55,600	4,000	24.0	14.1	2.9	12.0
62,949	4,800	2.1	1.6	0.9	2.6
67,652	5,000	5.1	–	–	–
≥80,596	6,500	2.0	–	–	–
Total		100	100	100	100

*Based on the results of the ERDC ship modeling, vessels larger than 5,000 TEUs were not used for Freeport's benefit calculations.

The benefit calculations associated with channel deepening were based on a 2014 annual throughput of 200,000 TEUs. If both loaded and empty containers are considered, the average cargo weight is generally taken as 7.5 metric tons per TEU. Freeport's annual tonnage volume is estimated to be approximately 1.5 million short tons in 2014. Traffic will initially consist of about two vessels per week. Each vessel would drop off and pick up approximately 300 TEUs per each vessel visit.

Freeport's commodity distribution is anticipated to reflect Houston's distribution. Comparison of Houston and U.S. imports shows that the region's relative percentage of imports of manufactured goods is twice that for the Nation. Manufactured metal and monumental and building stone compose nearly 20 percent of Houston's manufactured goods total and represent the single largest subgroup. Other manufactured goods include furniture (6.6 percent); iron and steel products (6.5 percent); baby carriages, toys, games, and sporting goods (5.8 percent); appliances (4 percent); and specialized machinery (3.6 percent). Figure 17 displays percentage distributions of U.S. and Houston imports and manufactured goods (17 percent), food and farm products (22 percent), and other (5 percent) exports by major group.

Figure 17
U.S. and Houston Container Cargo (2006–2007 Period)
Percentage of Imports and Exports by Major Commodity Group



Source: USACE, Navigation Data Center.

9.16.6 Container Cargo Transportation Savings Benefits

As part of the current analysis, optimization of the depth for the channel modification was evaluated. Based on a future-without-project condition depth of 40 feet, optimization of Federal interest in channel depth improvements over 40 feet was subsequently evaluated in the absence of a Federal project. The Galveston District was advised by IWR that the most likely threshold or

depth that would be necessary for container port operations would be between 35 and 40 feet. Additionally, Freeport's proximity to Houston and the 40-foot depth at its container terminal suggested that the "threshold depth" should be used for the Freeport container terminal. Given Freeport's channel dimensions, the ERDC ship simulation results, U.S. Gulf Coast utilization, and world fleet availability, the design vessel for Phase I of Freeport's container terminal expansion is 965 feet long by 106 feet.

As part of the current analysis, the future without-project condition is also based on the assumption that the non-Federal sponsor obtains a permit to dredge a 3,000-foot-long off-channel berth area for their new container facility from its existing depth of 18 feet to an operating depth of 40 feet. This berth area is being constructed in two phases and may eventually be as deep as 45 feet; this construction is not part of the Federal project. The future-without-project condition for the lower Stauffer Channel is the existing Stauffer Channel, which is 200 feet wide at a current depth of approximately 18 feet and the locally constructed 40-foot berth area. Based on a future without-project condition depth of 40 feet, optimization of Federal interest in channel depth improvements over 40 feet was subsequently evaluated.

During the initial formulation, channel depth alternatives of 36, 40, 42, and 45 feet were identified as a likely range of depths for evaluation. An additional depth alternative of 50 feet was added based on input from the non-Federal sponsor. A channel depth of 40 feet was used as a "threshold depth" for purposes of defining the without-project future. In 2008, in coordination with HQ, it was determined that, for economic analysis, a "threshold depth" of 40 feet was reasonable from which to begin economic incremental analysis. This "threshold depth" is the minimum depth necessary for the facility to function (i.e., the probable or most likely depth that would need to be in place to "call" a new or currently nonexistent operation/facility of concern into existence). The Galveston District was advised by IWR that the most likely threshold or depth that would be necessary for container port operations would be between 35 and 40 feet. Additionally, Freeport's proximity to Houston and the 40-foot depth at its container terminal suggested that the "threshold depth" that should be used for the Freeport container terminal would be more likely to be 40 feet. A threshold of 40 feet was selected as best representing the threshold for the without-project condition. The transportation costs and the savings associated with the proposed project depth increase were initially evaluated using foreign flag container vessels ranging in size from 45,000 to 103,000 DWT. The corresponding TEU vessel class ranges from 3,000 to 8,000. The per ton transportation costs associated with this range were reviewed to determine the most efficient range of vessels. Table 46 presents the FY 09 foreign flag container vessel operating costs used in the analysis. Table 47 displays the specific range of vessel sizes used for the Freeport study and the corresponding vessel operating costs. There are some differences in the dimensions associated with vessels at the upper range. The 60,000 to 68,000 DWT vessels expected to use Freeport's fleet are longer and narrower than comparable DWT range contained in EGM 08-07 (IWR December 2008 Update).

Table 46
Foreign Flag Container Vessel Operating Costs (FY 2009)

DWT	TEU	LOA	Beam (feet)	Design Draft (feet)	Immersion Factor	Speed (knots)	Hourly Vessel Cost ($)	
							At Sea	In Port
9,500	600	431.6	69.1	25.2	54.7	16.3	523	335
15,000	1,000	502.3	79.1	29.5	75.2	17.7	698	441
17,800	1,200	536.8	83.1	31.1	84.7	18.2	819	502
22,900	1,400	596.9	89.4	33.5	100.9	18.7	993	580
23,200	1,600	600.4	89.7	33.6	101.9	19.2	971	599
30,700	2,000	682.3	97.2	36.3	123.8	20.0	1,181	708
31,900	2,200	694.7	98.2	36.6	127.2	20.4	1,199	729
34,800	2,500	724.0	100.7	37.5	135.1	20.9	1,369	797
40,300	2,800	776.4	104.9	38.8	149.7	21.3	1,445	840
42,800	3,000	798.9	106.6	39.4	156.1	21.6	1,456	859
46,400	3,500	829.8	109.0	40.2	165.1	22.2	1,617	923
55,600	4,000	901.2	114.5	41.9	187.3	22.8	1,842	1,014
65,000	4,800	962.7	119.5	43.4	208.8	23.7	2,078	1,135
70,500	6,000	1,044.3	127.0	45.5	245.5	24.7	2,815	1,363
80,700	6,500	1,039.4	126.5	45.4	242.8	25.1	3,062	1,494
103,000	8,000	1,092.6	134.8	47.7	287.8	26.1	3,310	1,690

Source December 2008 Deep-draft vessel operating costs provided by IWR.

Table 47
Freeport Foreign Flag Container Vessel Operating Costs (FY 09) Freeport Application

DWT	TEU	LOA (feet)	Beam (feet)	Design Draft (feet)	Immersion Factor	Speed Knots	Hourly Vessel Cost ($)	
							at Sea	In Port
22,900	1,400	682.3	89.4	34	100.9	18.7	993	580
33,900	2,300	683.0	98.0	37	134.6	20.5	1,273	758
45,400	3,400	759.0	106.0	40	166.5	22.0	1,585	911
55,600	4,000	901.2	114.5	42	187.3	22.8	1,842	1,014
62,949	4,800	965.0	106.0	44	189.3	23.5	2,019	1,105
67,652	5,000	964.5	105.6	45	193.4	24.3	2,324	1,211
80,596	6,500	997.1	131.2	46	222.5	26.4	2,980	1,472
86,750	7,000	1,068.4	130.9	47	266.7	25.4	3,063	1,527

Source: December 2008 Deep-draft vessel operating costs provided by IWR.

In addition to the differences associated with the 60,000 to 68,000 DWT vessels shown in Table 47 from those in the EGM, 80,596 and 86,750 DWT vessels were added to Freeport's fleet range. The design drafts and other dimensions differ from those in the EGM; however, both the 60,000 and 80,000 DWT vessels are representative of the fleet using Houston. The inclusion of the 80,000 DWT vessels allowed for evaluation of vessels with design drafts over 45 feet that could use Freeport but that are smaller than the *Susan Maersk*. Table 48 was prepared based on the distribution of loaded drafts for Houston 2006 container cargo.

Table 48
Distribution of Regional Cargo Tonnage by Loaded Draft (feet)

Vessel DWT	Loaded Draft (feet)			Standard Deviation
	Minimum	Median	Maximum	
22,900	17	28	37	3.25
31,900	25	32	39	2.67
40,300	25	32	38	2.30
42,800	23	32	39	2.61
46,400	26	32	39	3.06
55,600	27	33	40	2.36
65,000	26	36	40	2.81
≥80,700	32	35	39	1.86
Percentage of Tonnage by Loaded Draft and DWT Range				
DWT				
22,900	1	97	2	100
31,900	13	72	15	100
40,300	12	86	2	100
42,800	19	77	3	100
46,400	12	66	21	100
55,600	10	81	8	100
65,000	3	63	34	100
≥80,700	10	64	27	100

Source: USACE, Navigation Data Center (2006).

Transportation costs were calculated based on the channel depth alternatives and variables associated with vessel design drafts, maximum feet of light-loading, underkeel clearance, mileage traveled, and the number of hours to load and unload. A round-trip mileage of 10,000 was used for the cost calculations. This mileage is representative of the round-trip travel distance from the U.S. Gulf Coast to Europe, the Mediterranean, and Brazil. Other origins and destinations for U.S. Gulf Coast container vessels include Mexico, the Far East, and the Middle East. Travel distances to the Far East and Middle East are greater than 10,000 miles, and the distance to Mexico is considerably less.

Port personnel have indicated that representative routes will most likely include Europe, the Mediterranean, and the Far East. The transportation costs per ton show that vessels between 45,000 and 65,000 DWT produce the lowest costs at most channel depths. These vessels produce the lowest costs for the vessel classes anticipated to use the project. A fully loaded 65,000 DWT vessel carrying approximately 6,500 TEUs and loaded to approximately 49 feet will be able to transit the expanded Panama Canal. An alternative traffic distribution based on a shift from the 2010–2014 base to a scenario based on an increased concentration of larger vessels in 2024 was also evaluated. The alternative distribution was estimated based on the average of Houston percentage of tonnage by vessel DWT and the 2010–2014 estimated Freeport distribution.

Comparison of the plan alternatives with the project construction cost estimates is shown in Table 49**.** The analysis is based on an "existing" or "threshold" project depth of 40 feet. Incremental analysis of benefits was then performed between 40 and 50 feet. The B/C analysis accounts for the benefits from the "threshold depth" to 50 feet; however on the cost side, the cost of removing the material starting at the without-project existing channel depth of 18 feet must be included in the project cost. The results of the analysis show that the maximum net excess benefits are associated with the approximately 45-foot depth alternative.

9.17 STAUFFER CHANNEL MODIFICATION UPPER REACH

This section presents the analysis of the Federal interest in the Stauffer Channel upper reach modification between stations 222+00 and 256+00. The channel area is just below the Freeport Tide Gate. The docks located in the channel reach are operated by Freeport Launch, VIT Marine, and Baron Marine. The Freeport Launch dock and yard are inside the U.S. Department of Homeland Security secured gated area adjacent to the channel. VIT is located immediately north of Freeport Launch. Both facilities are on the west side of the channel. Baron Marine is on the east side of the channel.

As noted, the Stauffer Channel is located at the end of the Freeport Channel, less than 1 mile from the port's vibrant commerce activities. The specific project location for the upper reach of the Stauffer Channel begins at Station 222+00 and ends at Station 256+00. During the late 1970s, USACE completed construction of the Freeport Tidal Gate. The tidal gate is immediately upriver from the Stauffer Navigation Channel. Shortly after the completion of Freeport Tidal Gate, the Stauffer Channel began to experience silting and loss of water depths.

Table 49
Lower Stauffer Container Terminal Channel Benefits and Costs ($1,000s) for 41- to 50-foot Depth Increments (4.375%)

Channel Depth	First Cost ($)	Interest During Construction (%)	Total Investment	Average Annual Cost	Average Annual O&M ($)	Total Annual Cost ($)	Average Annual Benefits ($)	Net Excess Benefits ($)	BCR
Base Fleet Application: Average of Houston Tonnage and U.S. Trip Percentages (Adjusted to Exclude Vessels over 65,000 DWT									
41 feet	6,432.9	82.7	6,515.6	323.0	732.1	1,055.1	795.5	–259.7	0.8
42 feet	6,778.2	87.1	6,865.3	340.4	738.1	1,078.4	1,509.2	430.7	1.4
43 feet	7,123.5	91.6	7,215.0	357.7	744.0	1,101.7	2,152.2	1,050.5	2.0
44 feet	7,468.7	96.0	7,564.7	375.0	750.0	1,125.0	2,409.1	1,284.1	2.1
45 feet	7,814.0	100.4	7,914.4	392.4	755.9	1,148.3	2,618.9	1,470.5	2.3
46 feet	8,153.4	104.8	8,258.2	409.4	762.1	1,171.6	2,638.5	1,467.0	2.3
47 feet	8,492.8	109.2	8,602.0	426.5	768.3	1,194.8	2,656.6	1,461.8	2.2
48 feet	8,832.2	113.5	8,945.7	443.5	774.5	1,218.1	2,656.6	1,438.6	2.2
49 feet	9,171.6	117.9	9,289.5	460.5	780.7	1,241.3	2,656.6	1,415.3	2.1
50 feet	9,511.0	122.3	9,633.3	477.6	786.9	1,264.5	2,656.6	1,392.1	2.1
Vessel Fleet Distribution Sensitivity No. 1: Based on U.S. Trip Distribution (Adjusted to Exclude Vessels over 65,000 DWT)									
41 feet	6,432.9	82.7	6,515.6	323.0	732.1	1,055.1	169.6	–885.6	0.2
42 feet	6,778.2	87.1	6,865.3	340.4	738.1	1,078.4	321.7	–756.7	0.3
43 feet	7,123.5	91.6	7,215.0	357.7	744.0	1,101.7	458.8	–642.9	0.4
44 feet	7,468.7	96.0	7,564.7	375.0	750.0	1,125.0	514.8	–610.3	0.5
45 feet	7,814.0	100.4	7,914.4	392.4	755.9	1,148.3	561.3	–587.0	0.5
46 feet	8,153.4	104.8	8,258.2	409.4	762.1	1,171.6	572.3	–599.3	0.5
47 feet	8,492.8	109.2	8,602.0	426.5	768.3	1,194.8	582.4	–612.4	0.5
48 feet	8,832.2	113.5	8,945.7	443.5	774.5	1,218.1	582.4	–635.6	0.5
49 feet	9,171.6	117.9	9,289.5	460.5	780.7	1,241.3	582.4	–658.9	0.5
50 feet	9,511.0	122.3	9,633.3	477.6	786.9	1,264.5	582.4	–682.1	0.5

9.17.1 Navigation Problems

A channel that is non-federally maintained presents a navigational hazard in the form of higher accident probabilities. Nonmaintained water depth also presents a financial hazard to the businesses located at the end of the channel. Additionally, it represents a navigation hazard in that the BPA has concluded that the Stauffer Channel represents an unacceptable navigational risk. The Upper Stauffer presently has an operating depth of approximately 18 feet. The channel was authorized to 30 feet and had an operating depth of 25 feet in the mid-1950s. In 1955, the channel was placed in an inactive status and subsequently deauthorized in 1974 under Section 12, Appendix C, PL 93-251. Channel depth alternatives from 20 to 30 feet were evaluated. The benefits for deepening of the project reach were based on reductions in travel time.

9.17.2 Past Conditions

Before 1985, the Stauffer Channel had an approximate water depth of 25 feet. Vessel traffic on the channel was destined for the offshore oilfields and other traffic back and forth to the main segment of the port. Oilfield shipments primarily consisted of fuel, water, supplies, drill pipes, drill mud, and chemicals along with barges and rigs that needed to be repaired. Over the years, business on the Stauffer Channel has declined due to insufficient water depth. According to users, during the 1970s and 1980s, an average weekly vessel movement at the channel would consist of approximately 20 to 25 vessels (6–8 crewboats and 18–21 supply boats).

Crew vessels made daily trips to the rigs. Crew and supply vessels had a draft range of 15–18 feet. Supply vessels, which made six to seven trips per week, had a draft range of 20–30 feet.

9.17.3 Existing Conditions

Channel traffic consists of offshore supply vessels, offshore platform rigs, and research/seismic vessels. Oilfield shipments primarily consist of fuel, water, supplies, drill pipes, drill mud, and chemicals along with barges and rigs that needed repair. The majority of traffic falls under the general classification of offshore supply vessels (OSVs). In addition to offshore vessels, the channel currently provides cargo vessel repair and layberth service and informally serves as a harbor of refuge. Cargo vessels are generally in ballast and are there for repairs. The channel is also used informally as a harbor of refuge in order to avoid the effects of tropical storms and hurricanes.

The largest vessels using the channel are approximately 400 feet long. Longer vessels cannot be turned and would have to be backed into the channel. The Upper Stauffer presently serves approximately 30 to 40 offshore vessels per month. This compares to a count of 20 to 30 vessels per week when more depth was available.

The OSVs using the channel are generally based out of Louisiana. The fleet, which includes U.S. and foreign-flagged vessels, comprises crewboats, platform supply vessels, and anchor tugs. Crewboats, platform supply vessels, and anchor tugs come into Freeport for fuel and general restocking or to wait 1 to 2 days between jobs or due to inclement weather. It was noted that for longer stays, OSV based in Louisiana would likely go to their homeport in order to avoid port charges if idle times exceed a few days.

Channel traffic presently consists of a limited number of seismic and crew vessels. Discussions with channel users and company officials indicated that under existing conditions, maneuvering vessels in the silted channel and maintaining a proper alignment for safe passage is hazardous. The difficulty results from under-hull clearance, which the BPA prefers to be 10 percent of the channel plus 2 feet. The depth clearance is extremely important to vessels that might have liquid cargo such as oil and or vessels carrying expensive and highly technical equipment. Lack of required underkeel clearance and associated hull damage and liability concerns have resulted in a loss of vessel traffic.

Offshore energy production is potentially one of the largest sources of revenue for the Stauffer Channel. Newly authorized programs will generate billions of dollars for the area. Presently the channel is servicing some seismic vessels. However, vessels have been turned away due to the lack of sufficient water depth. Seismic vessels are normally out to sea no more than 50 to 55 days, then they return to dock for a week and go back out to sea for another 50 to 55 days. Channel users estimate that with deeper water they would attract approximately 50–60 vessels per year with each vessel returning to dock for fuel and repairs approximately four times per year.

9.17.4 Without-project Condition

The without-project condition is characterized by shoaling-induced depth reductions. A channel depth of 18 feet was assumed to be available for 2014–2064. Under the without-project future, the channel would continue to serve OSVs. As noted, discussions with channel users and company officials indicated that maneuvering vessels on the silted channel and maintaining a proper alignment for safe passage is hazardous; this condition would continue. Additionally, the ability of the channel to serve as a harbor of refuge will deteriorate under the without-project future.

Galveston represents the most likely alternative port for vessel operators that wish to use the Stauffer Channel for layberth and supplies. The without-project, as well as the with-project, future is characterized by increases in offshore exploration and associated activities. Offshore energy production is potentially one of the largest sources of revenue for the Stauffer Channel. Recent programs associated with energy independence initiatives have the potential to generate billions of dollars for the area. On April 30, 2007, Secretary of the Interior Dirk Kempthorne

issued a press release announcing a "major Federal initiative to boost oil and natural gas production on the U.S. Outer Continental Shelf in the Gulf of Mexico and off Alaska. The program could produce 10 billion barrels of oil and 45 trillion cubic feet of natural gas over 40 years, generating almost $170 billion in today's dollars, in net benefits for the Nation."

The U.S. Department of Energy's *2009 Annual Energy Outlook* shows U.S. Gulf of Mexico production growing at an average annual rate of approximately 2.3 percent from 2006 to 2030 and 4.1 percent through 2018. Additionally, the Mineral Management Service (MMS, now the Bureau of Ocean Energy Management, Regulation and Enforcement [BOEM]) 2009–2018 U.S. Gulf of Mexico forecast shows production potentially reaching 1.8 million BPD and increasing at an average annual rate of approximately 3.1 percent between 2006 and 2018.

9.17.5 With-project Condition

Channel depth alternatives from 20 and 30 feet were evaluated. The benefits from an increase in operating depth of 18 feet were based on reductions in travel time, with Galveston representing the most likely alternative port.

Noted advantages that Freeport has over other ports are open yard space and permission for vessel operators to work on their own boats. This practice is not normally allowed at other locations. The extra room is an advantage for seismic vessels, which characteristically carry 4 to 5 miles, or about 24,000 feet, of cable. It was also noted that while there may only be four or five seismic vessels operating in the entirety of the U.S. Gulf, the Freeport yard is a common destination due to yard space and security.

The availability of adequate underkeel clearance was emphasized as being of particular importance by industry for expensive specialized seismic vessels and tugs used to transport offshore rigs. An investigation of vessel types presently using the Stauffer Channel included six vessels typed as "research survey vessels." The subtype classification for these six vessels is "seismic vessel." It was noted that it was a challenge docking the *GSI Admiral,* which was at Freeport Launch in late 2008. Frequently, captains cannot bring vessels in due to written rules requiring specific underkeel clearance; however, the captains are under strict order from the operating companies or vessel owners. The concerns associated with these rules may relate to being unfamiliar with the channel bottom sediment, which is relatively soft.

It was noted that research vessels are frequent layberth customers. Dwell time for layberthing generally ranges from 4 to 6 months. It was noted that the *Kondor Explorer,* which moved to Galveston, will be returning to Freeport because the berthing charges are lower in Freeport and the port provides better security. On March 9, 2009, a 24.6-foot-draft vessel requesting to come in for layberth was turned away due to insufficient channel depth.

Expansion of Freeport's OSV fleet is expected to include a similar range of loaded drafts presently using Galveston and Bayou Lafourche. The Galveston Channel has an operating depth of 40 feet, and Bayou Lafourche has an authorized and operating channel depth of 24 feet. Tables 50 and 51 summarize the range of loaded drafts for vessels presently using Galveston and Bayou Lafourche. The vessel drafts shown in tables 50 and 51 represent the range of vessels that Freeport has lost due to insufficient water depth and hazardous conditions. The focus of comparative port and fleet investigations was to determine sailing drafts, light drafts, and associated vessel characteristics. An additional focus was to help determine the range of loaded drafts for ports with less-restrictive depths.

Table 50
Offshore Supply Vessels
Range of Design and Loaded Drafts (feet)
Bayou Lafourche, Galveston, and Freeport (2006)

Inbound Offshore Supply				Outbound Offshore Supply			
Vessel Design Draft (feet)	Loaded Draft (feet)			Vessel Design Draft (feet)	Loaded Draft (feet)		
	Minimum	Median	Maximum		Minimum	Median	Maximum
15	6	12	15	15	12	15	15
16	6	12	16	16	7	10	10
17	7	12	15	17	12	17	17
18	10	14	17	18	14	18	18
19	12	16	18	19	16	18	18
20	6	17	20	20	7	14	14
21	7	15	21	21	–	–	–
22	7	17	20	22	16	19	19
23	18	19	19	23	19	19	19
24	–	–	–	24	–	–	–
25	–	–	–	25	–	–	–
26	–	–	–	26	–	–	–
27	–	–	–	27	15	21	21
28	–	–	–	28	10	13	13
29	–	–	–	29	14	15	15

Source: USACE, compiled from NDC Entrance and Clearances File, 2006.

Table 51
Seismic and Research Vessels
Range of Design and Loaded Drafts (feet)
Bayou Lafourche, Galveston, and Freeport (2006)

Inbound Seismic and Research Vessels				Outbound Seismic and Research Vessels			
Vessel Design Draft (feet)	Loaded Draft (feet)			Vessel Design Draft (feet)	Loaded Draft (feet)		
	Minimum	Median	Maximum		Minimum	Median	Maximum
15	–	–	–	15	–		–
16	–	–	–	16	16	14	16
17	–	–	–	17	12	12	12
18	–	–	–	18	17	17	17
19	–	–	–	19	12	12	12
20	–	–	–	20	6	10	18
21	20	20	20	21	–	–	–
22	17	17	17	22	16	17	17
23	17	17	17	23	17	17	17
24	19	19	19	24	19	19	19
25	21	22	23	25	–	–	–

Source: USACE, compiled from NDC Entrance and Clearances File, 2006.

9.17.6 Vessel Utilization Data

This section discusses vessel utilization and data sources. Under Federal law, vessel-operating companies must report domestic waterborne commercial movements to the USACE. The types of vessels include dry cargo ships and tankers, barges (loaded and empty), fishing vessels, towboats (with or without barges in tow), tugboats, crewboats and supply boats to offshore locations, and newly constructed vessels from the shipyards to the point of delivery. Vessels remaining idle during the monthly reporting period are also required to report. Although vessels are required to report, the Galveston District concluded, based on examination of 2000–2007 dock records available from the USACE NDC and subsequent discussion with center personnel, that vessel activities that are not associated with cargo discharge frequently go unreported. The District's search of vessel records associated with Freeport, Galveston, and other Texas ports for the period 2001–2007 showed one less than five offshore supply vessels.

Additional data were obtained from examination of the USCG and Lloyd's Register-Fairplay records. These examinations were limited to the vessel types presently using the channel and the maximum vessel sizes that have been served. Freeport Launch and the BPA said that the maximum-sized vessel that can be turned in the Stauffer Turning Basin has a maximum overall length of 400 feet. It was noted that longer vessels could not turn and would have to be backed in.

As noted, the largest-sized vessels that can be turned in the Stauffer Turning Basin have a maximum overall length of 400 feet. A BPA pilot is required for all foreign flag vessels regardless of size. A pilot is also required for any U.S. flag vessel coming from a foreign port. U.S. vessels coming from the international waters of the Gulf of Mexico do not require pilotage.

The 2006 trip statistics obtained from the entrance and clearance records include an annual count of four vessels for Freeport. An annual count of four vessels is significantly less than the average of 30 to 40 vessels per month noted by industry to be using the Upper Stauffer facilities. The NDC entrance and clearance records showed nearly 100 vessels per month for Galveston and nearly 200 for Bayou Lafourche. NDC personnel noted that offshore vessels are underreported.

9.17.7 Offshore Supply Fleet Trends

This section provides an overview of the OSV fleet and related trend data. The information presented provides information associated with vessel size, flag, and home base. As noted in industry literature, the OSV fleet primarily serves exploratory and developmental drilling rigs and production facilities and supports offshore construction and subsea maintenance activities.[12] OSVs are noted to differ from other types of marine vessels in their cargo-carrying flexibility and capacity to transport deck cargo. OSVs carry pipe or drummed material and equipment, liquid mud, potable and drilling water, diesel fuel, dry bulk cement, and personnel between shore bases and offshore rigs and facilities.

The OSV fleet working in the Gulf of Mexico consists of U.S. and foreign flag vessels. The classification of foreign flag OSVs is addressed under 46 CFR Subchapter L as published in the Federal Register of 19 September 1997. OSVs of 500 gross tons (U.S. Regulatory Tonnage) but less than 6,000 gross tons meet the requirement of 46 CFR Subchapter L and additional requirements from Subchapter I (Industrial Vessels) that are applicable to OSVs carrying less than 36 offshore workers. Current legislation allows foreign flag vessels to operate within the U.S. boundaries of the outer continental shelf. The calculations performed for the Stauffer Channel analysis are based on the assumption that current practices of allowing foreign flag vessel access will continue for the 50-year planning period. Foreign flag OSVs are generally exempt from Section 27 of the 1920 Merchant Marine Act, commonly referred to as the Jones Act. The Jones Act restricts U.S. coastwise trade to U.S.-built, U.S. coastwise citizen-owned, and U.S. flagged vessels. The Jones Act was extended to the U.S. outer continental shelf by the Outer Continental Shelf Lands Act of 1953, as amended in 1978.

The U.S. Gulf Coast OSV fleet includes five subtypes. The subtypes are anchor-handling tug supply vessels, crew supply vessels, offshore tug supply vessels, pipe carriers, and platform supply vessels. Table 52 displays the world OSV fleet by vessel type major classification. Table 53 shows the world fleet by design draft and U.S. versus foreign flag. The fleet statistics shown

[12] Hornbeck Oil Services, webpage information

in tables 52 and 53 include vessels operating in the U.S. Gulf of Mexico. Platform Supply Vessels (PSVs) are specially designed for transport of supplies to/from offshore installations, mainly to supply fields in production. This involves the transport of individual items, mainly in containers on deck. In addition, a PSV transports in segregated systems a variety of different products such as methanol, preblended drill fluids, brine, water, and oil. The various fluids are contained in epoxy-painted tanks, with individual pumps and hoses. Dry bulk cargo such as cement, barite, and bentonite are also transported. At the installations, this cargo is discharged by using compressed air. PSVs and anchor-handling and supply tugs are characteristically the largest vessels in the OSV general grouping. The boom in offshore exploration and surveying has made seismic vessels key to the industry. Seismic vessels are used by the oil and gas industry for acquiring drilling data.

Table 52

Offshore Supply Vessels
World Fleet, Active Vessels, and Vessels on Order

Year Built	Anchor-Handling Tug Supply Vessel	Crew Supply Vessel	Tug Supply Ship	Pipe Carrier	Platform Supply Vessel	Grand Total
Number of Vessels						
1974 to 1978	127	41	133	18	194	513
1979 to 1983	267	97	144	21	453	982
1984 to 1988	144	60	46	30	92	372
1989 to 1993	28	83	14	18	39	182
1994 to 1998	45	78	20	3	112	258
1999 to 2003	154	140	30	2	260	586
2004 to 2008	466	190	76	1	421	1,154
2009 to 2012	427	38	34	–	226	725
Total	1,658	727	497	93	1,797	4,772
Percentage of Vessels						
1974 to 1978	7.7	5.6	26.8	19.4	10.8	10.8
1979 to 1983	16.1	13.3	29.0	22.6	25.2	20.6
1984 t o 1988	8.7	8.3	9.3	32.3	5.1	7.8
1989 to 1993	1.7	11.4	2.8	19.4	2.2	3.8
1994 to 1998	2.7	10.7	4.0	3.2	6.2	5.4
1999 to 2003	9.3	19.3	6.0	2.2	14.5	12.3
2004 to 2008	28.1	26.1	15.3	1.1	23.4	24.2
2009 to 2012	25.8	5.2	6.8	0.0	12.6	15.2
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0

Source: Lloyd's Register-Fairplay, PC Register of Ships, November 2008.

Table 53
World Offshore Supply Vessel Fleet by Design Draft
U.S. Flag and non-U.S. Flag
Vessels Built After 1974 or Under Construction as of November 2008

Design Draft (feet)	Flag					
	U.S. Flag		Foreign Flag		Total Vessels	
3	–	0.0%	109	2.8%	109	2.3%
7	121	14.3%	367	9.4%	488	10.2%
10	186	21.9%	506	12.9%	692	14.5%
13	312	36.8%	863	22.0%	1,175	24.6%
16	152	17.9%	962	24.5%	1,114	23.4%
20	63	7.4%	751	19.1%	813	17.0%
23	13	1.5%	258	6.6%	271	5.7%
26	–	0.0%	103	2.6%	103	2.2%
30	3	0.3%	4	0.1%	6	0.1%
Total	849	100.0%	3,923	100.1%	4,772	100.0%

Source: Lloyd's Register-Fairplay, PC Register of Ships, November 2008.

In addition to the OSV statistics in the Lloyd's Register-Fairplay, statistics associated with OSVs registered with the USCG in 2006 and operating in U.S. offshore were compiled. For the 551 USCG vessel records available from the USACE's web page, vessel design draft and other characteristics were compiled. Comparisons show the largest increases are primarily associated with design drafts over 20 feet. The data were used to identify the range of vessel drafts associated with the fleet that includes vessels using Freeport.

9.17.8 Research Vessel Fleet (Seismic Vessels)

Seismic vessels are usually similar in size to oilfield supply vessels. They can range from 100 to over 350 feet in length and require drafts up to 30 feet. Over the past 10 years, many foreign seismic vessels have utilized Freeport for a base of operations and conducted refitting projects. Activities include vessel refitting for mobilization at Gulf of Mexico and in foreign exploration sites. It was noted during discussion with industry that during the early to mid-1970s most seismic vessels generally ranged in size from 80 to 150 feet and seldom required drafts of more than 15 feet. Table 54 presents comparison of the percentage of research vessels built after 1974 with the percentage built after 2000. The comparison shows the largest increase is associated with design drafts over 20 feet.

Table 54
World Research Vessel Fleet
Comparison of Percentage of Vessels Built After 1974 and 2000

Design Draft (feet)	Constructed After 1974		Constructed After 2000 or "On Order"		% Constructed After 2000 or
	Number	%	Number	%	"On Order "
≤12	321	47.1	55	45.1	17.1
13–14	96	14.1	2	1.9	2.5
15	39	5.7	2	1.9	6.2
16	31	4.6	1	0.8	3.2
17	31	4.6	7	5.7	22.6
18	18	2.6	1	0.8	5.6
19	45	6.6	5	4.1	11.1
20	18	2.6	8	6.6	44.4
21	15	2.2	6	4.9	40.0
22	17	2.5	13	10.7	76.5
23	11	1.6	2	1.6	18.2
24	10	1.5	2	1.6	20.0
25	13	1.9	8	6.6	61.5
26	8	1.2	5	4.1	62.5
27	4	0.6	4	3.3	100.0
28	3	0.4	0	0.0	0.0
29	0	0.0	0	0.0	–
30	1	0.1	0	0.0	0.0
Totals	681	100.0	122	100.0	17.9

Source: Lloyd's Register-Fairplay, PC Register of Ships, November 2008.

9.17.9 Cargo Vessels and Other Vessel Traffic

In addition to oilfield-related vessels, the Stauffer Channel provides layberth and associated repair services for small cargo vessels, fishing vessels, and other miscellaneous craft. The maximum-sized vessel that can be turned in the Stauffer Turning Basin has a maximum overall length of 400 feet. Based on the criterion of a maximum overall length of 400 feet, the fleet distribution of the vessels other than oilfield classifications was compiled from the Lloyd's Register-Fairplay and Texas Gulf Coast ports. Table 55 summarizes the percentage of vessels by draft for the world fleet and Texas Gulf Coast ports. For purposes of analysis, Freeport's layberths were assumed to be representative of the average of the world fleet and Texas Gulf Coast fleet.

Table 55
Percentage of World Vessel Fleet and Texas Gulf Coast
(Excluding Offshore Vessels)
Maximum Vessel Length of 400 feet

Design Draft (feet)	World Fleet (Maximum Length of 400 feet) Vessels Constructed After 2000 (%)	Texas Gulf Coast Fleet (%)	Freeport's Estimated Repair Layberth Cargo Vessels	Percentage
≤12	n/a	3.4	2	3.4
13–14	20.3	9.2	4	9.2
15	7.3	10.1	5	10.1
16	7.2	8.4	4	8.4
17	6.8	3.4	2	3.4
18	8.3	2.5	1	2.5
19	8.8	1.7	1	1.7
20	9.1	8.4	4	8.4
21	7.5	8.4	4	8.4
22	7.6	5.9	3	5.9
23	5.1	6.7	3	6.7
24	1.9	10.9	5	10.9
25	3.1	5.0	2	5.0
26	1.9	2.5	1	2.5
27	1.1	0.0	0	0.0
28	1.9	4.2	2	4.2
29	0.8	4.2	2	4.2
30	0.9	5.0	2	5.0
31	0.5	–	0	–
	100.0	100.0	48	100.0

Source: Lloyd's Register-Fairplay, PC Register of Ships, November 2008 and USACE, detailed vessel files.

9.17.10 Total Base Traffic

Channel users estimated that prior to the channel shoaling, 20 to 30 vessel movements per week were noted. This compares to an existing estimate of 30 to 40 vessels per month. Recent follow-up discussions suggested that maintenance of an average of five vessel movements per week or 30 to 40 offshore supply vessels per month would be reasonable based on the combination of existing traffic and requests and permanent loss of traffic to Galveston. An additional effect of an increase in channel depth would be an increase in the range of vessel drafts. For the base condition, 35 monthly and 420 annual trips were used.

It is reasonable to expect Freeport's offshore vessel traffic to increase during the 2014–2064 planning period. The BOEM 2009–2018 U.S. Gulf of Mexico shows production potentially peaking at 1.8 million BPD. The BOEM full-potential forecast is based on offshore production increasing at an average annual rate of 4.1 percent from 2006/2008 through 2018. The AEO 2006/08 to 2018 growth rate is 4.1 percent. The AEO shows U.S. Gulf of Mexico production growing at an average annual rate of 2.3 percent from 2006 to 2030. The AEO and BOEM forecasts both are based on increasingly deep wells. The AEO forecast was published in April 2009 and reflects Provisions of the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act

In the absence of a historical base and associated uncertainties with offshore projection volumes, the transportation savings benefits for the Upper Stauffer Channel were evaluated based on a consideration of the AEO and BOEM production forecasts. The average of growth rates of 3.1 to 4.1 percent were used through 2018. These growth rates correspond to the AEO 2006–2030 and the BOEM 2009–2018 production forecast. For 2018–2064, a growth rate of 1 percent was used. Sensitivity analyses using lower 1 to 2 percent growth rates were also prepared.

An annual seismic vessel count of 55 was used for the 2008-period base. The seismic vessel count is based on application of three seismic vessels being in port in March 2009, in combination with the results of industry noting that seismic vessels are normally out to sea no more than 50 to 55 days, which suggests one vessel would make six to seven trips per year. Application of three vessels making 6 to 7 return trips results in 19 trips per year (three vessels presently in port – 6 to 7 return trips per year). For the base condition, 55 annual trips were used.

Cargo vessels were noted to presently come in about four times per month for repair or layberth. The port expects this count to increase based on an increase in channel depth and estimated that an annual increase of approximately 95 vessels could occur based on improved access. For the base, an annual count of 48 vessels was used with the expectation of increases over the planning period.

Distribution of Upper Stauffer Channel vessel traffic by design draft was calculated using the total number of vessels and the fleet distributions for supply, seismic, and cargo vessels. Application of the fleet distribution is summarized in Table 56.

Table 56
Number of Vessels Per Year for 2008-Period Base
(With-Project Future)

Vessel Design (feet)	Number and Percentage of Vessels by Type					
	Offshore Supply		Seismic		Cargo/Other	
≤12	81	19.1	25	45.5	8	16.6
13–14	21	5.0	1	1.8	5	10.7
15	36	8.5	1	1.8	2	4.7
16	67	15.8	0	0.0	4	8.1
17	31	7.3	3	5.5	1	2.3
18	12	2.8	0	0.0	4	9.0
19	43	10.2	2	3.6	4	8.8
20	48	11.3	4	7.3	3	7.1
21	25	5.9	3	5.5	3	5.5
22	27	6.4	6	10.9	2	4.6
23	8	1.9	1	1.8	2	3.2
24	5	1.2	1	1.8	3	6.6
25	5	1.2	4	7.3	2	3.6
26	10	2.4	2	3.6	2	3.8
27	1	0.2	2	3.6	0	0.2
28	3	0.7	0	0.0	1	1.7
29	0	0.0	0	0.0	1	1.5
30	0	0.0	0	0.0	1	1.8
Total*	423	100.0	55	100.0	48	100.0

Source: Application of vessel fleet distributions prepared using Lloyd's Register-Fairplay, PC Register of Ships, November 2008 and Freeport vessel trip estimates.

9.17.11 Transportation Cost Analysis

The benefits of the proposed channel dredging were evaluated based on transportation costs between Freeport and the most likely alternative port, Galveston. Transportation savings benefits were calculated for offshore, seismic, and cargo vessels. Transportation cost savings were calculated for channel depth alternatives between 20 and 30 feet. A 3-foot underkeel clearance was used. The effect of less underkeel clearance was evaluated as a sensitivity analysis.

The availability of channel improvements would allow for a 2-hour transportation savings that would lead to improved operational efficiency and economic benefits to the Nation. For analysis of vessels serving offshore rigs, identification of the location of rigs was determined through examination of BOEM maps and discussions with Freeport industry representatives. Five travel zones were developed for purposes of analysis. The rig universe, calculated based on the BOEM

maps and proximity to Freeport and Galveston, consisted of a total of 175 rigs. Approximately 92 rigs are in close proximity to Freeport and 83 are close to Galveston (Table 57). The five zones are outlined as follows:

Table 57
Freeport Harbor (Stauffer Channel)
Number of Offshore Rigs
Freeport and Galveston Vicinity

Zone Description	Freeport	Galveston
zone A = 20 miles or less	28	22
zone B = 40 miles or less	41	21
zone C = 60 miles or less	5	23
zone D = 80 miles or less	10	3
zone E =115 miles or less	8	14
Total Rigs	92	83

Source: Compiled from BOEM Maps, 2006.

The estimated transit time savings for the rig zones are shown in Table 58. The transportation benefits were calculated based on 420 supply vessels saving 4 hours traveling time and 55 seismic vessels saving four hours traveling time. The difference in travel time for cargo ships between Freeport and Galveston was found to be primarily represented by the reduction in the number of hours to travel from the open waters of the Gulf of Mexico inward through the Freeport Jetties to the launch/supply service and seismic vessel fueling and repair docks in comparison to travel distance through the Galveston Jetties to similar facilities. The travel time for cargo vessels was estimated to be 2 hours round-trip.

Table 58
Stauffer Channel Difference in Transit Time (Hours)

Zone	Freeport Time	Galveston Time	Freeport Reduced Time
Zone A = 20 miles or less	2	4	2
Zone B = 40 miles or less	4	6	2
Zone C = 60 miles or less	6	8	2
Zone D = 80 miles or less	8	10	2
Zone E =115 miles or less	13	15	2

Source: Compiled from BOEM Maps, 2006.

Transportation savings were calculated using December 2008 EGM deep-draft vessels updated by IWR Foreign flag general cargo vessel costs were used because their cost structure is generally representative of work ships, supply vessels, and seismic vessels. Costs for smaller vessels of less than 5,000 horsepower were estimated based on application of the shallow-draft

vessel operating costs provided to IWR by *Informa Economics* in August 2008. The shallow-draft costs contained in the *Informa Economics* publication are based on U.S. flag vessels. The costs for the applicable range of vessel horsepower using or expected to use the channel were recalculated based on an adjustment factor of 0.4, with foreign flag hourly operating costs being 40 percent less than U.S. flag vessels. Table 59 summarizes the application of the USACE vessel operating cost data to the vessel listing compiled from Freeport Launch.

Table 59
Limited Vessel List of Stauffer Channel Offshore Vessels

Vessel Name	Horsepower	Vessel Type	Hourly Operating Cost ($)	
			At Sea	In Port
Brenda Lee	2050	Platform Supply Ship	462	336
Brooks McCall	2400	Research Survey Vessel	579	418
Christina	5384	Chemical Tanker	524	416
GGS Atlantic	2248	Research Survey Vessel	203	122
GSI Admiral	4801	Research Survey Vessel	462	336
GSI Pacific	2180	Research Survey Vessel	203	122
Jonathan Chouest	2248	Research Survey Vessel	462	336
Kit Kat	2040	Crewboat	462	336
Kondor Explorer	6004	Seismic Survey Vessel	551	455
Milky Way	2050	Crewboat	462	336
Miss Flo	1200	Platform Supply Ship	364	272
Paul Candies	5697	Offshore Tug	462	336
Slora	8000	Bulk Carrier	417	345
Stanco Traveler	1875	Platform Supply Ship	524	416
Sunday Silence	2040	Crewboat	254	210
Twix	2040	Crewboat	462	336

Source: Freeport Launch Company photo files.

The hourly costs shown in Table 60 and the associated vessel horsepower were subsequently used to estimate the hourly costs for horsepower groups not included in the port's photo file. Estimation of the hourly operating costs for the full range of vessels using or expected to use the channel was made based on regression equations from the range of costs contained in Table 59. Table 60 displays the Stauffer Channel fleet and corresponding hourly operating costs.

Table 60
Hourly Vessel Operating Cost by Vessel Horsepower

Vessel Design Draft (feet)	Horsepower	At Sea Foreign Flag Vessel Economic Speed ($)	In Port Foreign Flag Vessel Maneuvering Cost ($)
12	1,250	288	228
13	1,488	297	247
14	1,725	306	242
15	1,963	315	262
16	2,200	324	295
17	2,900	350	319
18	3,510	373	341
19	3,494	372	340
20	3,494	372	340
21	3,217	362	331
22	7,037	506	465
23	5,811	460	422
24	10,226	626	577
25	16,296	854	791
26	18,000	918	851
27	19,000	956	886
28	20,000	994	921
29	20,500	1,012	956
30	21,000	1,031	956
31	25,000	1,182	1,097

Source: Application of EGM 09-01 (IWR) and shallow-draft vessel costs (Informa Economics, August 2008).

Transportation costs were calculated based on channel depth alternatives from 20 to 30 feet. Transportation costs for offshore supply and seismic vessels were calculated based on the "at sea" costs**.** Transportation costs for cargo vessel were calculated based on the "in port" costs. The transportation benefits were calculated based on the estimated number of vessels that presently need a channel depth over 18 feet. Estimation of the number of vessels that presently need a channel depth over 18 feet was made based on the relationship between vessel design draft and loaded draft for comparable vessels using Galveston and Bayou Lafourche. The relationship between design draft and loaded draft found from the Galveston and Bayou Lafourche vessel records was applied to the Freeport base of 420 offshore supply vessels, 55 seismic vessels, and 48 cargo vessels. Transportation savings were calculated based on offshore supply and seismic vessels saving 4 hours travel time. The difference in travel time for cargo ships between Freeport and Galveston was found to be primarily represented by the reduction in the number of hours to travel from the open waters of the Gulf of Mexico inward through the Freeport jetties to the launch/supply service and seismic vessel fueling and repair docks in

comparison to travel distance through the Galveston jetties to similar facilities. The travel time for cargo vessels was estimated to be 2 hours round-trip.

The 2008-period base transportation savings benefits shown in Table 61 were forecasted for a 50-year period of analysis from 2014 to 2064 using an average annual growth rate of 1.7 percent. The annual savings for 2014 to 2064 and the average annual transportation savings are displayed in Table 62.

Table 61
Upper Stauffer Channel Annual 2008-Period Base Savings by Vessel Type and Size ($)

Channel Depth (feet) Alternative	Offshore & Supply Vessels	Seismic Vessels	Cargo Vessels	Total Base Savings by Channel Depth Alternative	Accumulated Annual Savings by Channel Depth
20	94,818	15,048	0	109,866	109,866
21	18,514	7,949	0	26,463	136,329
22	16,384	10,329	3,716	30,429	166,758
23	17,874	0	0	17,874	184,632
24	1,448	5,462	3,858	10,767	195,400
25	14,160	9,927	4,629	28,717	224,116
26	14,707	0	0	14,707	238,823
27	0	0	0	0	238,823
28	0	3,306	0	3,306	242,129
29	0	0	0	0	242,129
30	3,824	0	0	3,824	245,953

Economic Summary. Table 63 presents the economic summary data. The average annual benefits and costs were calculated at 4.375 percent interest and in October 2008 dollars. The results of the analysis show that the 26-foot depth alternative produces the maximum net excess benefits. The project benefits were calculated based on current traffic levels as a base. The 2014–2064 average annual benefits were calculated using a growth rate of 1.7 percent per annum.

Sensitivity Analyses. Several sensitivity analyses were evaluated. The sensitivity analysis was run using 1 foot of underkeel clearance. Table 64 presents the economic summary data associated with the sensitivity analysis. The results of the analysis show that the 24-foot depth alternative produces the maximum net excess benefits.

Table 62
Upper Stauffer Channel Annual Benefits
by Channel Depth Alternative
2008 Base and 2014–2064 Forecast
October 2008 Dollars and 4.375%

Channel Depth (feet) Alternative	2008	2014	2024	2034	2044	2054	2064	Average Annual Savings 2014–2064
20	109,866	127,866	151,343	179,132	181,837	184,583	187,371	159,636
21	136,330	158,664	187,797	222,279	225,635	229,043	232,502	198,086
22	166,759	194,078	229,714	271,892	275,998	280,166	284,397	242,300
23	184,633	214,881	254,335	301,035	305,581	310,195	314,880	268,271
24	195,400	227,412	269,168	318,590	323,402	328,285	333,243	283,916
25	224,117	260,833	308,725	365,411	370,930	376,531	382,217	325,641
26	238,823	277,949	328,984	389,390	395,270	401,239	407,299	347,009
27	238,823	277,949	328,984	389,390	395,270	401,239	407,299	347,009
28	242,129	281,797	333,538	394,780	400,742	406,794	412,937	351,813
29	242,129	281,797	333,538	394,780	400,742	406,794	412,937	351,813
30	245,953	286,247	338,806	401,015	407,071	413,218	419,458	357,369

Table 63
Upper Stauffer Channel
Economic Summary by Channel Depth Alternative
October 2008 Dollars and 4.375%
2014–2064 Period of Analysis

Channel Depth (feet) Alternative	First Cost	Interest During Construction	Total Investment	Average Annual O&M	Average Annual Cost	Average Annual Transportation Savings	Net Excess Benefits	BCR
20	1,003,336	1,829	1,005,165	22,300	72,133	159,636	87,502	2.2
21	1,276,269	2,327	1,278,595	24,913	88,302	198,086	109,784	2.2
22	1,549,202	2,824	1,552,026	24,913	101,858	242,300	140,442	2.4
23	1,822,134	3,322	1,825,456	17,868	108,369	268,271	159,902	2.5
24	2,095,067	3,819	2,098,886	19,961	124,018	283,916	159,898	2.3
25	2,368,000	4,317	2,372,317	22,300	139,913	325,641	185,728	2.3
26	2,673,758	4,874	2,678,632	24,913	157,712	347,099	189,325	2.2
27	2,979,517	5,431	2,984,948	27,526	175,511	347,009	171,526	2.0
28	3,285,275	5,989	3,291,264	30,138	193,310	351,813	158,531	1.8
29	3,591,034	6,546	3,597,580	32,751	211,109	351,813	140,731	1.7
30	3,896,792	7,104	3,903,896	35,364	228,908	357,369	128,489	1.6

Table 64
Upper Stauffer Channel Economic Summary by Channel Depth Alternative
Underkeel Clearance and Lower Traffic Sensitivity Analysis
October 2008 Dollars and 4.375%
2014–2064 Period of Analysis

Channel Depth (feet)	Average Annual Project Cost	1-foot Underkeel Sensitivity			1-foot Underkeel Sensitivity and Lower Traffic Forecast		
		Average Annual Transportation Savings	BCR	Net Excess Benefits	Average Annual Transportation Cost Savings	BCR	Net Excess Benefits
20	72,133	44,214	0.6	–27,920	31,115	0.4	–41,018
21	88,302	70,184	0.8	–18,118	44,053	0.5	–44,249
22	101,858	85,829	0.8	–16,029	57,546	0.6	–44,312
23	108,369	127,554	1.2	19,186	90,334	0.8	–18,035
24	124,018	143,358	1.2	19,340	101,526	0.8	–12,392
25	139,913	148,923	1.1	9,010	111,626	0.8	–28,287
26	157,704	153,727	1.0	–3,985	116,412	0.7	–41,300
27	175,495	153,727	0.9	–21,784	116,412	0.7	–59,099
28	193,286	159,283	0.8	–34,027	121,948	0.6	–71,362
29	211,077	159,283	0.8	–51,826	121,948	0.6	–89,161
30	228,867	159,283	0.7	–69,625	121,948	0.5	–106,960

Table 65
Upper Stauffer Channel
Economic Summary by Channel Depth Alternative
October 2008 Dollars and 4.375%
2014–2064 Period of Analysis

Channel Depth (feet) Alternative	Average Annual Transportation Cost Savings	First Cost	Interest During Construction	Total Investment	Average Annual O&M	Average Annual Total Cost	BCR	Net Excess Benefits
20	78,322	1,003,336	1,829	1,005,165	22,300	72,133	1.1	6,188
21	104,108	1,276,269	2,327	1,278,595	24,913	88,302	1.2	15,806
22	128,558	1,549,202	2,824	1,552,026	24,913	101,858	1.3	26,701
23	162,053	1,822,134	3,322	1,825,456	17,868	108,369	1.5	53,684
24	176,267	2,095,067	3,819	2,098,886	19,961	124,018	1.4	52,248
25	195,397	2,368,000	4,317	2,372,317	22,300	139,913	1.4	55,484
26	205,716	2,673,758	4,874	2,678,632	24,913	157,712	1.3	48,004
27	205,716	2,979,517	5,431	2,984,948	27,526	175,511	1.1	30,205
28	211,015	3,285,275	5,989	3,291,264	30,138	193,310	1.1	17,705
29	211,015	3,591,034	6,546	3,597,580	32,751	211,109	1.0	-94
30	211,015	3,896,792	7,104	3,903,896	35,364	228,908	0.9	–17,894

Additional sensitivities were evaluated using the combination of lower traffic forecasts and 1-foot underkeel clearance. The results of these sensitivities show that the BCR remains above unity if the 2008–2064 traffic growth rate of 1.1 percent is accurate; however, the BCRs fall below unity for all alternatives if the traffic growth forecast falls below 0.9 percent. The results of analysis show that the 25-foot depth alternative produces the maximum net excess benefits (Table 65). The project benefits were calculated based on current traffic levels as a base.

9.18 ECONOMIC SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

This section provides a summary of the economic analyses and contains additional sensitivities not presented in the other sections of the report. Table 66 presents the economic summaries for the NED and the LPP. Incremental analysis of the NED components shows that the highest net excess benefits are for the Freeport Channel 50/60-foot depth alternative (see Table 38). The maximum net excess benefit for the Lower Stauffer Channel is at the 45-foot depth alternative (see Table 49). The maximum net excess benefits for the Upper Stauffer Channel maximized at 25 feet (see Table 63).

Table 66
Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification
NED and LPP Economic Summary
Average Annual Values at 4.375% and $1,000s

	NED Plan			
		Stauffer Modification		
	Freeport Channel 50/60 feet	Lower Reach 45 feet	Upper Reach 25 feet	Totals
First Cost of Construction	373,259.0	7,814.0	2,368.0	383,441.0
Interest During Construction	31,204.3	100.4	4.3	31,309.1
Total Investment	404,463.3	7,914.4	2,372.3	414,750.1
Average Annual Cost	20,052.1	392.4	117.6	20,562.1
Average Annual O&M	6,908.8	755.9	22.3	7,687.0
Total Annual Cost	26,960.9	1,148.3	139.9	28,249.1
Average Annual Benefits	38,148.5	2,618.9	195.4	40,962.7
Net Excess Benefits	11,187.6	1,470.6	55.5	12,713.6
B/C Ratios	1.4	2.3	1.4	1.5

Table 66 (Cont'd)

	LPP			
		Stauffer Modification		
	Freeport Channel 50/55 feet	Lower Reach 50 feet	Upper Reach 25 feet	Totals
First Cost of Construction	296,843.0	9,511.0	2,368.0	308,722.0
Interest During Construction	22,852.3	122.3	4.3	22,978.9
Total Investment	319,695.3	9,633.3	2,372.3	331,700.9
Average Annual Cost	15,849.6	477.6	117.6	16,444.8
Average Annual O&M	4,743.4	786.9	22.3	5,552.7
Total Annual Cost	20,593.0	1,264.5	139.9	21,997.5
Average Annual Benefits	25,145.8	2,656.6	195.4	27,997.8
Net Excess Benefits	4,552.8	1,392.1	55.5	6,000.3
B/C Ratios	1.2	2.1	1.4	1.3

Note: Totals may not add due to rounding.

The LPP provides for a 55-foot channel depth through Station 115+00 and a 50-foot depth through Station 174+00. The LPP will provide 55-foot channel depth access to the Seaway dock and a 50-foot project depth from the Brazosport Turning Basin to the Upper Turning Basin. The major terminals served in this reach include Dow Chemical and ConocoPhillips. Application of the alternative fleet distribution produces a BCR above unity. The LPP includes a 30-foot project depth for the Upper Stauffer Channel. The docks located in the Upper Stauffer Channel, which will utilize the project depth, are operated by Freeport Launch, VIT Marine, and Baron Marine.

Calculation of the average annual benefits and costs at 7 percent are shown in Table 67.

9.19 SENSITIVITY ANALYSIS

Commodity tonnage and vessel underkeel and fleet selection variables are evaluated in Appendix A. These evaluations are outlined at the end of the Main Channel and the Lower and Upper Stauffer Channel presentations. Five sensitivity analyses are presented. The first sensitivity pertains to channel widening. The second sensitivity evaluates the effect of utilization of an offshore oil terminal on Freeport's crude oil import volumes. The third sensitivity evaluates the effect using 1-foot underkeel clearance for Freeport's crude petroleum and petrochemical product vessels. The fourth sensitivity evaluates the effect of lower utilization expectations. The fifth sensitivity evaluates the effect of reduced construction cost contingencies on plan optimization.

Table 67
Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification
NED and LPP Economic Summary
Average Annual Values at 7.0% and $1,000s

	NED Plan			
		Stauffer Modification		
	Freeport Channel 50/60 feet	Lower Reach 45 feet	Upper Reach 25 feet	Totals
First Cost of Construction	373,259.0	7,814.0	2,368.0	383,441.0
Interest During Construction	51,636.4	161.4	6.9	51,804.7
Total Investment	424,895.4	7,975.4	2,374.9	435,245.7
Average Annual Cost	30,787.9	577.9	172.1	31,537.8
Average Annual O&M	6,944.5	756.0	22.3	7,722.8
Total Annual Cost	37,732.3	1,333.9	194.4	39,260.6
Average Annual Benefits	38,148.5	2,588.5	195.4	40,932.4
Net Excess Benefits	416.2	1,254.6	1.0	1,671.8
B/C Ratios	1.0	1.9	1.0	1.0
	LPP			
		Stauffer Modification		
	Freeport Channel 50/55 feet	Lower Reach 50 feet	Upper Reach 25 feet	Totals
First Cost of Construction	296,843.0	9,511.0	2,368.0	308,722.0
Interest During Construction	37,720.8	196.5	6.9	37,924.2
Total Investment	334,563.8	9,707.5	2,374.9	346,646.2
Average Annual Cost	24,242.4	703.4	172.1	25,117.9
Average Annual O&M	4,759.9	782.0	22.3	5,564.2
Total Annual Cost	29,002.3	1,485.4	194.4	30,682.2
Average Annual Benefits	25,145.8	2,625.8	195.4	27,967.0
Net Excess Benefits	3,856.5	1,140.4	1.0	2,715.2
B/C Ratios	0.9	1.8	1.0	0.9

Note: Totals may not add due to rounding.

9.19.1 Channel Widening

The base analysis used for the feasibility study assumes that the channel is widened. An alternative scenario, where channel widening is included as part of the Federal project, is addressed in the economic summary portion of Appendix A (Section 10). The sensitivity analysis includes discussions of alternative import volumes and recent press releases that the U.S. Department of Energy granted permission to export LNG imported into Freeport's new receiving terminal.

The Freeport Section 204 widening analysis includes detailed analysis of Freeport's LNG market. Import volumes of 84.2 billion cubic feet per day are forecasted for 2010, while volumes increasing to 712 billion cubic feet by 2018 are shown in the Section 204 report. The vessel sizes and expected throughput prompted the non-Federal sponsor to pursue widening of the offshore Outer Bar and Jetty channels from 400 to 600 feet under the Section 204 authority of WRDA 86 as amended in 1990. Phase I of the terminal is presently in operation, and vessel traffic commenced in April 2008. While LNG provided the impetus for the 204 study, channel widening would also benefit existing and future traffic. The base analysis used for the feasibility study assumes that the channel is widened.

The purpose of this section of the report is to outline plan optimization, the effects of including various ranges of NED benefits associated with LNG and crude petroleum traffic, and the additional cost of widening the channel to 600 feet.

The benefit calculations and the vessel descriptions contained in this section were extracted from the Section 204 economic analysis prepared by Martin Associates.[13] Specific notation of the data taken from that report is identified in the paragraphs that follow.

As outlined in the Section 204 report, Freeport LNG operation will experience cost savings due to channel widening as larger LNG vessels of the Q-Flex and Q-Max class are expected to be deployed to serve the terminal with a 600-foot channel. Based on current simulation studies under way in support of the Freeport LNG operation at Port Freeport, the design vessel used for the existing 400-foot channel width is an LNG carrier with a 140,000-m^3 capacity and dimensions of 920 feet length overall (LOA) and a 142-foot beam. This vessel has a draft of 40 feet. For the 600-foot channel, a Q-Max vessel is deployed in the simulation studies. This vessel has a capacity of 264,000 m^3 and dimensions of 1,131 feet LOA with a 177-foot beam. A channel width of 400 feet represents the without-project future.

[13] "Economic Benefits of Widening the Port Freeport, Texas Shipping Channel," Prepared for HDR/Shiner Mosely by Martin Associations, November 25, 2008.

As noted in the Section 204 report, the expected composition of the LNG fleet that will be deployed with a channel width of 400 feet will consist of LNG vessels ranging from 125,000 m^3 to 155,000 m^3. Under a 500-foot channel width, the current simulation studies use a Q-Flex LNG vessel with dimensions of 1,033 feet LOA and a 164-foot beam. The capacity is 217,000 m^3. For the 600-foot channel, a Q-Max vessel is deployed in the simulation studies. This vessel has a capacity of 264,000 m^3 and dimensions of 1,131 feet LOA with a 177-foot beam.

As noted in the Section 204 report, the present value of the cost savings over the 50-year period was then computed, using a discount rate of 4.375 percent. Based on the projected volumes and the estimated cost savings for voyage costs, the widening of the project to 600 feet will yield an annual NED value of $15.0 million.

In addition to the $15 million annual benefits to the transport of LNG, other cargo moving in the Freeport Channel will also benefit from the widening of the channel from 400 to 600 feet. The results of the NED benefits of a 600-foot channel width on crude petroleum shown in the Section 204 report showed that a 600-foot channel width would yield $2.9 million annual net benefits for crude petroleum imports. Review of the crude petroleum widening benefits performed by the Corps yielded a maximum savings of $3.8 million for crude petroleum imports based on an increase in channel width from 400 to 600 feet. Table 68 displays the estimated range of annual savings associated with channel widening. The benefits shown in Table 68 are labeled "minimum" or "recommended/maximum." The minimum category was added for purposes of the sensitivity analysis.

Table 68
Freeport Widening Benefits 2014–2064
Reduction in Transportation Costs
Average Annual Savings at 4.375%
($1,000s)

Commodity	Minimum	Recommended/Maximum
LNG Imports	3,750.0	15,000.0
Crude Oil Imports	2,900.0	3,773.0

Similar to the LNG vessels, the transportation savings for crude oil tankers is based on the ability to use larger and wider vessels. Freeport's existing crude petroleum tankers are subject to vessel size limitations due to the existing 400-foot channel width. The maximum ship dimensions permitted by the BPA, without written waiver, are 820 feet LOA and 145 feet maximum. The beam of 145 feet is frequently associated with 820-foot-long vessels. The maximum DWT associated with these dimensions is approximately 120,000 DWT. Vessel length limitations are enforced because crosswinds and crosscurrents force tankers to "crab" at an angle through the

Outer Bar and Jetty channels. Ships of greater length than 820 feet are not able to clear the jetties under adverse wind and current conditions. Waivers are only granted provided that winds are less than 20 knots and that there is no more than a 0.5-knot crosscurrent at the mouth of the jetties. Approximately three to four vessels per month are granted waivers. Daylight-only operation is enforced for vessels greater than 750 feet long or 107 feet wide. Additionally, the beam constraints for existing traffic and introduction of LNG and container vessels are anticipated to exasperate traffic delays.

Transportation savings for crude oil tanker traffic were calculated based on the ability to use larger vessels. It was noted that with a channel width of 500 feet, vessels with an LOA of 1,000 feet will be allowed to transit the channel, and at a 600-foot width, simulation studies have shown that vessels with an LOA in excess of 1,100 feet and beam of 164 feet can transit the ship channel. It is further emphasized that these larger vessels will be light loaded to correspond to the current 45-foot channel depth. Currently, vessels are restricted to a 42-foot sailing draft and will continue to move at this draft under a 600-foot channel width. The widening benefits do not account for the ability to load to 43 or 44 feet. The widening benefits calculations are based on 42 feet. Discussion with the BPA revealed that even with a deeper channel, the requirement of 3 feet underkeel clearance would not change. Table 69 summarizes the application of minimum savings for LNG and crude oil vessels shown in Table 68. Table 70 displays the results of using the recommended savings as displayed in the Section 204 report and shown in Table 68. The result of this sensitivity showed that the 60-foot channel depth continues to produce the highest net excess benefits among the array of depth alternatives.

9.19.2 Offshore Alternative Sensitivity Analysis

There are no plans for connections to either the Seaway or ConocoPhillips docks from the proposed Texas Offshore Oil Port System (TOPS) alternative. TOPS is a proposed offshore terminal project that would provide feedstock to Texas City, Houston, and Port Arthur. Freeport's Seaway dock also serves Texas City and Houston. Additionally, TOPS will not provide connections to Cushing, Oklahoma, which the Freeport refineries serve. The terminal operating on the Freeport Channel and those in Port Arthur have noted that TOPS will serve as an addition to and complement the existing method of importing crude petroleum and is not intended as a substitute for existing modes of shipment. TOPS would reduce volume of Freeport crude oil transported by vessels. For purposes of this sensitivity, a portion of Freeport's Middle East and Africa crude oil imports were assumed to use TOPS. The percentage reductions in tonnage used for the offshore alternative sensitivities are limited to shipments from the Middle East and Africa. Crude oil originating from these routes includes VLCCs, and the TOPS market is VLCC traffic. The results of the analysis show that if 100 percent of Freeport's Middle East and Africa crude oil imports used the offshore terminal, the BCRs for the NED and LPP fall below unity for the Main Channel (Table 71). If 60 percent of Middle East and Africa crude oil imports used the offshore terminal, the BCR for the NED and LPP are above unity (Table 72).

The result of this sensitivity showed that the 60-foot channel depth continues to produce the highest net excess benefits among the array of depth alternatives.

Table 69
Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification
NED and LPP Economic Summary Based on
Channel Widening Costs and Minimum Widening Benefits
Average Annual Values at 4.375% and $1,000s

	NED Plan			
	Freeport Channel 60 feet	**Stauffer Modification**		**Totals**
		Lower Reach 45 feet	**Upper Reach 25 feet**	
First Cost of Construction	408,168.0	7,814.0	2,368.0	418,350.0
Interest During Construction	34,048.9	100.4	4.3	34,153.6
Total Investment	442,216.9	7,914.4	2,372.3	452,503.6
Average Annual Cost	21,923.9	392.4	117.6	22,433.8
Average Annual O&M	6,561.3	755.9	22.3	7,339.5
Total Annual Cost	28,485.2	1,148.3	139.9	29,773.4
Average Annual Benefits	44,460.0	2,618.9	195.4	47,274.3
Net Excess Benefits	15,974.9	1,470.5	55.5	35,139.9
B/C Ratios	1.6	2.3	1.4	1.6
	Locally Preferred Plan (LPP)			
	Freeport Channel 50/55 feet	**Stauffer Modification**		**Totals**
		Lower Reach 50 feet	**Upper Reach 25 feet**	
First Cost of Construction	344,867.0	7,814.0	2,368.0	355,049.0
Interest During Construction	28,768.4	100.4	4.3	28,873.1
Total Investment	373,635.4	7,914.4	2,372.3	383,922.1
Average Annual Cost	18,523.8	392.4	117.6	19,033.8
Average Annual O&M	5,543.7	755.9	22.3	6,322.0
Total Annual Cost	24,067.5	1,148.3	139.9	25,355.7
Average Annual Benefits	29,731.8	2,618.9	195.4	32,546.1
Net Excess Benefits	5,664.3	1,470.5	55.5	22,059.0
B/C Ratios	1.2	2.3	1.4	1.3

Note: There may be slight differences in totals due to rounding.

Table 70
Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification
NED and LPP Economic Summary Based on Channel Widening Costs
and Section 204 Widening Benefits
Average Annual Values at 4.375% and $1,000s

	NED Plan			
		Stauffer Modification		
	Freeport Channel 50/60 feet	**Lower Reach 45 feet**	**Upper Reach 25 feet**	**Totals**
First Cost of Construction	408,168.0	7,814.0	2,368.0	418,350.0
Interest During Construction	34,048.9	100.4	4.3	34,153.6
Total Investment	442,216.9	7,914.4	2,372.3	452,503.6
Average Annual Cost	21,923.9	392.4	117.6	22,433.8
Average Annual O&M	6,561.3	755.9	22.3	7,339.5
Total Annual Cost	28,485.2	1,148.3	139.9	29,773.4
Average Annual Benefits	55,965.1	2,618.9	195.4	58,779.3
Net Excess Benefits	27,479.9	1,470.5	55.5	35,139.9
B/C Ratios	2.0	2.3	1.4	2.0
	LPP			
		Stauffer Modification		
	Freeport Channel 50/55 feet	**Lower Reach 50 feet**	**Upper Reach 25 feet**	**Totals**
First Cost of Construction	344,867.0	7,814.0	2,368.0	355,049.0
Interest During Construction	28,768.4	100.4	4.3	28,873.1
Total Investment	373,635.4	7,914.4	2,372.3	383,922.1
Average Annual Cost	18,523.8	392.4	117.6	19,033.8
Average Annual O&M	5,543.7	755.9	22.3	6,322.0
Total Annual Cost	24,067.5	1,148.3	139.9	25,355.7
Average Annual Benefits	41,236.9	2,618.9	195.4	44,051.2
Net Excess Benefits	17,169.4	1,470.5	55.5	22,059.0
B/C Ratios	1.7	2.3	1.4	1.7

Note: There may be slight differences in totals due to rounding.

Table 71
Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification
NED and LPP Economic Sensitivity
Based on 100 Percent of Freeport's Middle East and Africa
Crude Oil Imports Using U.S. Gulf Coast Offshore Terminals
Average Annual Values at 4.375% and $1,000s

	NED Plan			
	Freeport Channel 50/60 feet	**Stauffer Modification**		**Totals**
		Lower Reach 45 feet	**Upper Reach 25 feet**	
First Cost of Construction	346,145.0	8,492.8	2,095.1	356,732.9
Interest During Construction	28,885.7	109.2	3.8	28,998.7
Total Investment	375,030.7	8,602.0	2,098.9	385,731.6
Average Annual Cost	18,593.0	426.5	104.1	19,123.5
Average Annual O&M	6,908.8	768.3	20.0	7,697.1
Total Annual Cost	25,501.8	1,194.8	124.0	26,820.6
Average Annual Benefits	21,190.4	2,618.9	195.4	24,004.7
Net Excess Benefits	–5,770.5	1,470.5	55.5	–4,244.5
B/C Ratios	0.8	2.3	1.4	0.8
	LPP			
	Freeport Channel 50/55 feet	**Stauffer Modification**		**Totals**
		Lower Reach 50 feet	**Upper Reach 25 feet**	
First Cost of Construction	270,064.1	9,511.0	2,095.1	281,670.2
Interest During Construction	20,702.7	122.3	3.8	20,828.8
Total Investment	290,766.8	9,633.3	2,098.9	302,499.0
Average Annual Cost	14,415.4	477.6	104.1	14,997.0
Average Annual O&M	4,743.4	786.9	20.0	5,550.3
Total Annual Cost	19,158.8	1,264.5	124.0	20,547.4
Average Annual Benefits	18,538.0	2,656.6	195.4	21,390.0
Net Excess Benefits	–2,055.0	1,392.1	55.5	–607.5
B/C Ratios	0.9	2.1	1.4	1.0

Note: There may be slight differences in totals due to rounding.

Table 72
Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification
NED and LPP Economic
Sensitivity Based on 60 Percent of Freeport's Middle East and Africa
Crude Oil Imports Using U.S. Gulf Coast Offshore Terminals
Average Annual Values at 4.375% and $1,000s

	NED Plan			
	Freeport Channel 50/60 feet	**Stauffer Modification**		**Totals**
		Lower Reach 45 feet	**Upper Reach 25 feet**	
First Cost of Construction	346,145.0	8,492.8	2,095.1	356,732.9
Interest During Construction	28,885.7	109.2	3.8	28,998.7
Total Investment	375,030.7	8,602.0	2,098.9	385,731.6
Average Annual Cost	18,593.0	426.5	104.1	19,123.5
Average Annual O&M	6,908.8	768.3	20.0	7,697.1
Total Annual Cost	25,501.8	1,194.8	124.0	26,820.6
Average Annual Benefits	21,190.4	2,618.9	195.4	24,004.7
Net Excess Benefits	–5,770.5	1,470.5	55.5	–4,244.5
B/C Ratios	0.8	2.3	1.4	0.8
	LPP			
	Freeport Channel 50/55 feet	**Stauffer Modification**		**Totals**
		Lower Reach 50 feet	**Upper Reach 25 feet**	
First Cost of Construction	270,064.1	9,511.0	2,095.1	281,670.2
Interest During Construction	20,702.7	122.3	3.8	20,828.8
Total Investment	290,766.8	9,633.3	2,098.9	302,499.0
Average Annual Cost	14,415.4	477.6	104.1	14,997.0
Average Annual O&M	4,743.4	786.9	20.0	5,550.3
Total Annual Cost	19,158.8	1,264.5	124.0	20,547.4
Average Annual Benefits	18,538.0	2,656.6	195.4	21,390.0
Net Excess Benefits	–2,055.0	1,392.1	55.5	–607.5
B/C Ratios	0.9	2.1	1.4	1.0

Note: There may be slight differences in totals due to rounding.

9.19.3 Underkeel Clearance Sensitivity Analysis

Table 73 presents the results of a scenario using 1 foot of underkeel clearance instead of 3 feet for crude petroleum and petrochemical products. The Upper Stauffer Channel calculations reflect an average of 1 to 3 feet underkeel clearance. A minimum underkeel clearance of 3 feet was used for the Lower Stauffer Channel container analysis. The container vessel transportation costs were calculated based on 85 percent of tonnage being transported in vessels with loaded draft of 40 feet or less. The result of the sensitivity presented in Table 73 continues to show that the 60-foot channel depth produces the highest net excess benefits among the array of depth alternatives.

Table 73
Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification
NED and LPP Economic Summary Based on
1 foot of Underkeel Clearance for Crude Petroleum and Petrochemical Products
Average Annual Values at 4.375% and $1,000s

	NED Plan			
	Freeport Channel 60/50 feet	Stauffer Modification		Totals
		Lower Reach 45 feet	Upper Reach 25 feet	
First Cost of Construction	346,145.0	8,492.8	2,095.1	356,732.9
Interest During Construction	28,885.7	109.2	3.8	28,998.7
Total Investment	375,030.7	8,602.0	2,098.9	385,731.6
Average Annual Cost	18,593.0	426.5	104.1	19,123.5
Average Annual O&M	6,908.8	768.3	20.0	7,697.1
Total Annual Cost	25,501.8	1,194.8	124.0	26,820.6
Average Annual Benefits	36,752.7	2,618.9	195.4	39,566.9
Net Excess Benefits	9,791.8	1,470.5	55.5	11,317.8
B/C Ratios	1.4	2.3	1.4	1.4
	LPP			
	Freeport Channel 55/50 feet	Stauffer Modification		Totals
		Lower Reach 50 feet	Upper Reach 25 feet	
First Cost of Construction	270,064.1	9,511.0	2,095.1	281,670.2
Interest During Construction	20,702.7	122.3	3.8	20,828.8
Total Investment	290,766.8	9,633.3	2,098.9	302,499.0
Average Annual Cost	14,415.4	477.6	104.1	14,997.0
Average Annual O&M	4,743.4	786.9	20.0	5,550.3
Total Annual Cost	19,158.8	1,264.5	124.0	20,547.4
Average Annual Benefits	23,373.0	2,656.6	195.4	26,225.0
Net Excess Benefits	2,780.0	1,392.1	55.5	4,227.5
B/C Ratios	1.1	2.1	1.4	1.2

Note: There may be slight differences in totals due to rounding.

9.19.4 Lower Utilization Expectations

The purpose of this sensitivity was to evaluate the effect of a lower percentage of crude petroleum being loaded to drafts approaching the without and with project future channel depth constraint. Table 74 displays the percentage of tonnage used for the sensitivity analysis. The second part of the table shows the percentage of tonnage used for the base calculations as shown in the Economics Appendix.

Table 74
Freeport Crude Petroleum Imports
Percentage of Future Tonnage Loaded
to Drafts Approaching Project Depth

Channel Depth (ft)	**Sensitivity % of Tonnage Loaded to Drafts Approaching Project Depth**			
	Existing Condition a/	Without Project Future	With Project Future	
			2014–2024	2034–2064
45	61	61	61	94
50	n/a	n/a	61	94
55	n/a	n/a	47	72
60	n/a	n/a	43	66

Channel Depth (ft)	**% of Tonnage Loaded to Drafts Approaching Project Depth (Table 68)**			
	Existing Condition a/	Without Project Future	With Project Future	
			2014–2024	2034–2064
45	61	94	94	94
50	n/a	n/a	94	94
55	n/a	n/a	72	72
60	n/a	n/a	66	66

a/ 2005–2007 Average

Table 75 displays the results of the sensitivity of using a lower percentage of crude petroleum for the benefit calculations. The results show that the net excess benefits for the NED plan remain above unity; however, the net excess benefits for the LPP fall below unity.

Table 75
Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification
Based on 60% of Crude Petroleum Imports Using Channel Depth
NED and LPP Economic Summary Based on
Average Annual Values at 4.375% and $1,000s

	NED Plan			
	Freeport Channel 50/60 feet	Stauffer Modification		Totals
		Lower Reach 45 feet	Upper Reach 25 feet	
First Cost of Construction	346,145.0	8,492.8	2,095.1	356,732.9
Interest During Construction	28,885.7	109.2	3.8	28,998.7
Total Investment	375,030.7	8,602.0	2,098.9	385,731.6
Average Annual Cost	18,593.0	426.5	104.1	19,123.5
Average Annual O&M	6,908.8	768.3	20.0	7,697.1
Total Annual Cost	25,501.8	1,194.8	124.0	26,820.6
Average Annual Benefits	27,741.7	2,618.9	195.4	30,555.9
Net Excess Benefits	780.8	1,470.5	55.5	2,306.8
B/C Ratios	1.0	2.3	1.4	1.1
	LPP			
	Freeport Channel 50/55 feet	Stauffer Modification		Totals
		Lower Reach 50 feet	Upper Reach 25 feet	
First Cost of Construction	270,064.1	9,511.0	2,095.1	281,670.2
Interest During Construction	20,702.7	122.3	3.8	20,828.8
Total Investment	290,766.8	9,633.3	2,098.9	302,499.0
Average Annual Cost	14,415.4	477.6	104.1	14,997.0
Average Annual O&M	4,743.4	786.9	20.0	5,550.3
Total Annual Cost	19,158.8	1,264.5	124.0	20,547.4
Average Annual Benefits	14,707.2	2,656.6	195.4	17,559.2
Net Excess Benefits	-5,885.8	1,392.1	55.5	-4,438.3
B/C Ratios	0.7	2.1	1.4	0.8

Note: There may be slight differences in totals due to rounding.

9.19.5 Reduced Construction Cost Contingencies

The purpose of this sensitivity was to evaluate the effect of reduced construction cost contingencies. Table 76 displays the project construction cost by construction contract. In accordance with economic analysis procedures, all of the calculations were performed using economic costs that reflect the inclusion of cost contingencies.

Table 76
Freeport NED and LPP Construction Cost by Contract
NED Project Construction Cost ($1,000)

Contract	Contract Description	Cost ($)	Total Cost Including Contingency ($)
NED Project Construction Cost ($1,000)			
1	New Extension & Part of Outer Bar Channel	81,722.0	102,969.0
2	Remaining Outer Bar & Jetty channels	96,571.0	121,679.0
3	Lower Turning Basin	12,516.0	16,147.0
4	Placement Area Jetty Grouting	490.5	569.0
5	Dredge to Brazosport to Brazosport Turning Basin	46,476.0	62,280.0
6	Dredge to Upper Turning Basin	30,884.0	42,309.0
7	Stauffer	7,893.7	10,587.9
	Lower	6,058.0	8,492.8
	Upper	1,835.7	2,095.1
8	Mitigation	163.0	192.0
	Total Cost	276,716.2	356,732.9
LPP Project Construction Cost ($1,000)			
1	New Extension & Part of Outer Bar Channel	49,079.0	61,838.5
2	Remaining Outer Bar & Jetty channels	78,056.0	98,351.5
3	Lower Turning Basin	11,733.0	15,137.0
4	Placement Area Jetty Grouting	490.0	569.0
5	Dredge to Brazosport to Brazosport Turning Basin	40,046.0	53,660.6
6	Dredge to Upper Turning Basin	29,427.0	40,315.5
7	Stauffer	9,207.0	10,587.9
	Lower	7,372.0	8,492.8
	Upper	1,835.0	2,095.1
8	Mitigation	163.0	192.0
	Total Cost	218,201.0	280,652.0

The result of using 15 percent contingency instead of 29 percent is summarized in Table 77. The result of this sensitivity showed that the 60-foot channel depth produces the highest net excess benefits among the array of depth alternatives.

Table 77
Freeport Channel and Stauffer Modification
NED and LPP Economic Summary Based on
Reductions in Construction Cost Contingencies from 29% to 15%
Average Annual Values at 4.375% and $1,000s

	NED Plan			
		Stauffer Modification		
	Freeport Channel 50/60 feet	Lower Reach 45 feet	Upper Reach 25 feet	Totals
First Cost of Construction	324,573.0	6,794.8	2,059.1	333,427.0
Interest During Construction	27,077.9	87.2	3.7	27,168.8
Total Investment	351,650.9	6,881.9	2,062.9	360,595.8
Average Annual Cost	17,433.9	341.2	102.3	17,877.3
Average Annual O&M	6,006.7	657.3	19.4	6,683.4
Total Annual Cost	23,440.6	998.5	121.7	24,560.7
Average Annual Benefits	38,148.5	2,618.9	195.4	40,962.7
Net Excess Benefits	14,707.9	1,620.3	73.7	16,402.0
B/C Ratios	1.6	2.6	1.6	1.7
	LPP			
		Stauffer Modification		
	Freeport Channel 50/55 feet	Lower Reach 50 feet	Upper Reach 25 feet	Totals
First Cost of Construction	258,124.3	8,270.4	2,059.1	268,453.9
Interest During Construction	19,871.6	106.3	3.8	19,981.6
Total Investment	277,995.9	8,376.7	2,062.9	288,435.6
Average Annual Cost	13,782.2	415.3	102.3	14,299.8
Average Annual O&M	4,124.7	684.3	19.4	4,828.4
Total Annual Cost	17,907.0	1,099.6	121.7	19,128.2
Average Annual Benefits	25,145.8	2,656.6	195.4	27,997.8
Net Excess Benefits	7,238.8	1,557.0	73.7	8,869.6
B/C Ratios	1.4	2.4	1.6	1.5

Note: There may be slight differences in totals due to rounding.

9.20 REGIONAL ECONOMIC BENEFITS

This section contains discussions and table displays of the regional benefits of port-related activity. The tables and associated discussions are displayed "as presented" in the Martin Associates' "The Local and Regional Economic Impacts of Port Freeport." The Freeport regional impact analysis was prepared by Martin Associates for the port of Freeport in 2006.[14] The current report represents an update from an original report prepared in 2003.

The regional benefits contained in the 2006 report and presented here are based on total project effects. While the incremental effects of the Federal action were not calculated, it is generally expected that the proposed deepening project will result in incremental increases beyond the existing base. The expectation that the Federal project will generate increases in regional benefits is based on general conclusions contained in the Martin Associates report that illustrate that Freeport terminal expansions and cargo increases have resulted in increases in jobs, personal earnings, business revenue, and State and local taxes. Additionally, a general observation of multiport analyses is that incremental changes in project depth provide assurances that a port will, at a minimum, maintain its regional benefit base. A comparative analysis of the effect on total tonnage throughput and vessel utilization among ports would be helpful measuring postproject on a regional and national level. Compilation and comparison of tonnage data between ports could be aggregated relatively easily.

It is recognized that for the communities within the study area, the Freeport Harbor Channel is responsible for benefits to the local and regional economy. Freeport has one of the largest petrochemical complexes in the world. In 2007, Freeport ranked 16th in the Nation in terms of foreign trade and 25th in terms of total tonnage. Petroleum and chemical products represent approximately 95 percent foreign trade in 2006.[15] The remaining 5 percent of foreign trade includes bulk materials and agricultural products. Freeport exports 6 percent of U.S. rice and imports 6 percent of U.S. bananas. Approximately 1,700 vessels called at the port in 2006.

Port activities contribute to the local and regional economy by generating business revenues to local and national firms providing vessel and cargo handling services at the marine terminals. Businesses, in turn, provide employment and income to individuals. The port's marine and cargo terminals and refinery complexes generate revenue throughout the local, State, and national economies. Port facilities include a diverse range of public and private marine terminals. The public marine terminals are those owned by the port and leased to terminal operators and marine terminal tenants. The port's tenants include Dole Fresh Fruit Company, Turbana Corp., Chiquita Brands, Inc., Bryan Coastal Stevedoring, P&O Ports, Vulcan Materials,

[14] Martin Associates, "The Local and Regional Economic Impacts of Port Freeport, August 2006,

[15] Complete statistics are not available for 2007 as of January 15, 2009. The most recent annual data available from the USACE NDC at the time of report preparation are presented.

and American Rice, Inc. The port's general cargo base also includes a variety of temperature-sensitive cargos such as meat and vegetables. P&O, a multinational container terminal operator and stevedore, currently provides container and terminal operations in Freeport for the special requirements of the Dole, Chiquita, and Turbana fruit distributors. Freeport's refrigerated cargo facility has been in operation since 1984. The port's private marine terminals include Dow Chemical, BASF Corp., ConocoPhillips, and Teppco Seaway Pipeline Company. In addition to its established base of terminals, the without-project future includes an LNG and a container terminal. The LNG terminal became operational by late 2008 and was constructed by a partnership that includes ConocoPhillips and Dow Chemical. The terminal is located along the northern edge of the Freeport Harbor Jetty and Outer Bar channels near Station 65+00. The port includes a foreign trade zone (FTZ No. 149), which was created in 1988. The FTZ provides customs duty deferent and manufacturing and inventory management benefits. The first phase of the Velasco Container Terminal (800-foot berth and 35 acres of supporting backland) on the Stauffer Channel will be substantially completed prior to the initiation of construction of the Stauffer Channel portion of the project.

Revenue generated by the port is produced by firms providing services to the commodity and vessel activity at the terminals, revenue from trucking firms, railroads, pipeline operations, terminal operations, and associated refineries and chemical plants (from loading and discharging vessels), handlers, agents, pilots, towing companies, and maritime support firms. This revenue is used to purchase employment (direct jobs), to provide services, to pay stockholders and for retained earnings, and to purchase goods and services from local firms, as well as national and international firms. Businesses also pay taxes from their business revenue.

According to the Martin Associates report used in preparation of this section of the report, marine cargo activity at Freeport's public and private marine terminals in the navigation district is responsible for 11,131 direct jobs with local firms. The estimated 11,131 jobs account for nearly $1.1 billion in personal annual incomes. Seventy-five percent of these direct jobs were found to be held by residents of Brazoria County. The activity at the public port facilities is noted to create 970 of the direct jobs. The 10,161 jobs created by the movement of petroleum and petrochemicals at the private terminals are primarily associated with local refineries and chemical plants with private marine terminals. Table 78 shows total direct jobs associated with port activities.

Table 78
Employment Impact by Sector and Job Category
Number of Jobs

Job Sector	Public Terminals	Private Terminals	Total Jobs
Surface transportation			
Rail	3	56	59
Truck	260	459	720
Maritime services			
Terminal employees/consignees	456	9,541	9,997
ILA/dockworkers	100	0	100
Towing	6	14	20
BPA	3	6	9
Agents	1	7	8
Surveyors/chandlers	1	1	2
Forwarders	54	0	54
Maritime services	8	10	18
Government	24	30	53
Marine construction/shipyards	22	8	31
Barge	0	29	29
Port authority	31	NA	31
Total Jobs	970	10,161	11,131

Source: Martin Associates, "The Local and Regional Economic Impacts of Port Freeport, August 2006, Table II-1, page 21.

It is noted that through local and regional purchases by those 11,131 individuals holding the direct jobs, an additional 14,700 induced jobs are supported in the regional economy. The report found that 9,886 indirect jobs were supported by $903.6 million of local purchases by businesses supplying services at the marine terminals and by businesses dependent upon the port for the shipment and receipt of cargo. In addition to the direct, induced, and indirect job impacts, an estimated 20,422 jobs in the State of Texas were found to be related to the cargo exported and imported over marine terminals at the port. It is noted in the report that while these 20,422 jobs are considered to be related to port activity, the degree of dependence on the marine terminals is difficult to quantify and should not be considered as dependent on the port as are the direct, induced, and indirect jobs.

Table 79 displays the summary of economic impacts in 2006 dollars generated by the port's public and private marine terminals as presented in the 2006 Martin Associates document. The report shows that marine activity supported $4.4 billion of total personal wage and salary income and local consumption expenditures for Texas residents. The $4.4 billion income is noted to include $3.4 billion of direct, indirect, induced, and local consumption expenditures, while the

remaining $1.0 billion was received by the related port users. The 11,131 direct jobholders received $1.1 billion of direct wage and salary income for an average salary of $95,130. Additionally, a total of $302.9 million of State and local tax revenue was generated by maritime activity at the port, and $93.7 million of State and local taxes were created due to the economic activity of the related users of the cargo moving via the marine terminals.

Table 79
Summary of the Local and Regional Economic Impacts Generated by Port Freeport *

Variable	Public Terminals	Private Terminals	Total
Jobs	970	10,161	11,131
Induced	674	14,026	14,700
Indirect	609	9,277	9,886
Related jobs	2,514	17,908	20,422
Total	4,766	51,372	56,139
Personal income ($1,000)			
Direct	39,049	1,019,806	1,058,854
Respending/consumption	67,183	1,754,576	1,821,759
Indirect	28,945	455,596	484,541
Related income	62,600	978,164	1,040,764
Total	197,777	4,208,142	4,405,919
Economic value ($1,000)			
Direct revenue	71,227	864,929	936,156
Local purchases	65,946	837,676	903,621
Related output	354,712	6,838,030	7,192,742
Total	491,885	8,540,635	9,032,519
State & local taxes ($1,000)			
Direct, induced and indirect	12,166	290,698	302,864
Related state and local taxes	5,634	88,035	93,669
Totals	17,800	378,733	396,533

Source: Martin Associates, "The Local and Regional Economic Impacts of Port Freeport, August 2006, Table E-2, page 4.

*Totals may not add due to rounding; based on 2006 dollars.

The port noted that the 2006 Martin Associates report figures reflect substantial gains over those reported in a similar study conducted by Martin Associates in 2003.[16] Specifically, comparison of the 2003 and 2006 reports showed that the number of direct local jobs that rely upon Port Freeport increased by 38 percent, or 3,041 jobs. It is noted that the job growth is in part due to expansion of the Dow Chemical operation as well as the growth in cargo, particularly chemicals,

[16] http://www.thefacts.com/downloads/PORT%20FREEPORT%20FINAL_1.pdf

general cargo, limestone, and crude petroleum. Since the 2003 economic impact study, the port has experienced a 1.6 million ton increase of cargo.[17]

As shown in Table 79, Freeport's 2005 marine cargo activity generated a total of $9.0 billion of total economic activity in the State of Texas. Of the $9.0 billion, $936.2 million is noted to be direct business revenue received by the firms directly dependent upon the port and providing maritime services and inland transportation services to the cargo handled at the marine terminals and the vessels calling at the port.

The report also includes an assessment of the job impacts on a "per 1,000 ton basis," which is noted to provide a tool for port planners to use in evaluating the relative importance of different commodities as economic generators. Table 80 presents the job impacts per 1,000 tons for each commodity moving through the public and private marine terminals. The relatively large impact per 1,000 tons for resin reflects the relatively small tonnage handled. Despite the fact that petroleum generated the second largest direct job impact, on a per 1,000 ton basis, petroleum generates 0.05 jobs per 1,000 tons. Dry bulk cargoes, such as limestone, also generate relatively small numbers of jobs per 1,000 tons. The jobs impact per 1,000 tons for chemicals reflects the large number of terminal and plant employees employed by the petrochemical industry in the Freeport Port District that are using private terminals to ship and receive petrochemicals. The finding that the petroleum and bulk cargoes generate relatively small direct jobs per 1,000 tons of throughput reflects the fact that the handling of liquid bulk and dry bulk cargoes is much less labor intensive than handling general cargo, and further, the supporting infrastructure of agents, freight forwarders, and customhouse brokers, warehousing and terminal operators is greater for general cargo such as break-bulk fruit, containerized cargo, and bagged grain. If the dependent shippers/consignees were not included in the direct job impacts per 1,000 ton measure, the difference in the labor intensity of general cargo, versus liquid bulk cargo would be even more pronounced.

9.21 OTHER SOCIAL EFFECTS

The LPP would not likely have an effect on population growth trends within the study area. As a result of the LPP, demand for community facilities, services, and housing would not increase in the study area. The proposed project would not be located within a minority area. The minority and low-income populations living within the study area would likely experience no adverse changes to the demographic, economic, or community cohesion characteristics within their respective neighborhoods as a result of the LPP.

[17] The Economic Impact of Port Freeport, 2003, Martin Associates, August 2004.

Table 80
Job Impacts per 1,000 Tons

	Public	Private	Portwide
Dry Containers	0.35	–	0.35
Reefer Containers	0.67	–	0.67
General Cargo	0.56	–	0.56
Resin	0.74	–	0.74
Bagged Rice	1.00	–	1.00
Bulk Rice	0.77	–	0.77
Limestone	0.04	–	0.04
Breakbulk fruit	0.42	–	0.42
Petroleum		0.05	0.05
Chemical		0.66	0.66

Source: Martin Associates, "The Local and Regional Economic Impacts of Port Freeport, August 2006, Exhibit II-3, page 23.

With the LPP, the study area would continue to have large industrial facilities and would not result in negative impacts to the local economy**.** During project construction, the study area might have a slight increase in construction employment and local purchases of construction materials, but this would be temporary, if it changes at all. The primary economic bases of the study area include petrochemical processing, construction, mineral extraction, tourism, and commercial fishing. As a result of the LPP, the positive economic effects to the study area would be moderate at the least and substantial at best. The construction of the LPP would have minimal negative effects on recreation within the study area.

9.22 SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Review of the Martin Associates report and specific evaluation in relation to the proposed deepening project suggest that incremental increases in jobs as a result of channel deepening would be relatively small. This conclusion is based on the finding that *petroleum and bulk cargoes generate relatively small direct jobs per 1,000 tons of throughput* and the fact that incremental increase beyond 45 feet for the main portion of the Freeport Channel is nearly exclusively associated with petroleum and benefits for induced tonnage were not included in the benefit calculations. In regard to induced tonnage associated with petroleum, it is generally believed that induced tonnage effects would be minimal due to the large fixed infrastructure associated with petroleum refining and established feedstock requirements as well as regional and national pipeline distribution networks. As previously noted, a comparative analysis of the effect on total tonnage throughput and vessel utilization among ports would be helpful measuring postproject on a regional and national level. Compilation and comparison of tonnage data between ports could be aggregated relatively easily.

While changes in job effects for petroleum will be minimal, the effects associated with the operation of the Velasco Container Terminal will recognizably impact jobs to a greater extent than petroleum. The general effects associated with overall container cargo associated with the Velasco Terminal should be similar to general cargo and dry containers but would likely not exceed the general cargo effects. The incremental effect on jobs and regional income based on the range of channel depths between 40 and 50 feet evaluated for the Lower Stauffer Channel is recognized to be much smaller.

The effects on jobs and personal income associated with the Upper Stauffer Channel fall under the marine construction and shipyard activity and appear to provide significant increases in regional income. Vessel traffic on the Upper Stauffer is associated with offshore oilfields and other traffic back and forth to the main segment of the port. Oilfield shipments primarily consisted of fuel, water, supplies, drill pipes, drill mud, and chemicals along with barges and rigs that needed to be repaired. As shown in Table 78, there are 31 jobs associated with marine construction and shipyard activity. The current job count of 31 is considerably less than in the 1970s and 1980s when a channel operating depth of 30 feet was available. According to users, during the 1970s and 1980s, an average weekly vessel movement at the channel would range between 20 to 30 vessels (6–8 crewboats and 18–21 supply boats). The current depth on the Upper Stauffer results in a situation where vessels are turned away due to the lack of sufficient water depth. Offshore energy production is potentially one of the largest sources of revenue for the Stauffer Channel. The boom in offshore exploration and surveying has made seismic vessels key to the industry. Seismic vessels are used by the oil and gas industry for acquiring drilling data. On April 30, 2007, Secretary of the Interior Dirk Kempthorne issued a press release announcing a "major Federal initiative to boost oil and natural gas production on the U.S. Outer Continental Shelf in the Gulf of Mexico and off Alaska. The program could produce 10 billion barrels of oil and 45 trillion cubic feet of natural gas over 40 years, generating almost $170 billion, in today's dollars, in net benefits for the Nation."

10.0 ENVIRONMENTAL EVALUATION OF THE TENTATIVELY RECOMMENDED PLAN AND PROPOSED MITIGATION

A DEIS that addresses the potential impacts of the tentatively Recommended Plan (LPP) upon human and environmental resources was prepared and is appended to this feasibility report. Project impacts are summarized below.

10.1 PHYSIOGRAPHY

The proposed channel improvements would increase storm surge elevations by about 0.16 foot (5 centimeters) locally, inside the jetties. However, this increase is considered small given the general inundation of the greater Freeport area during a significant storm surge, and will not have a substantial effect on the level of protection offered by the current levee system.

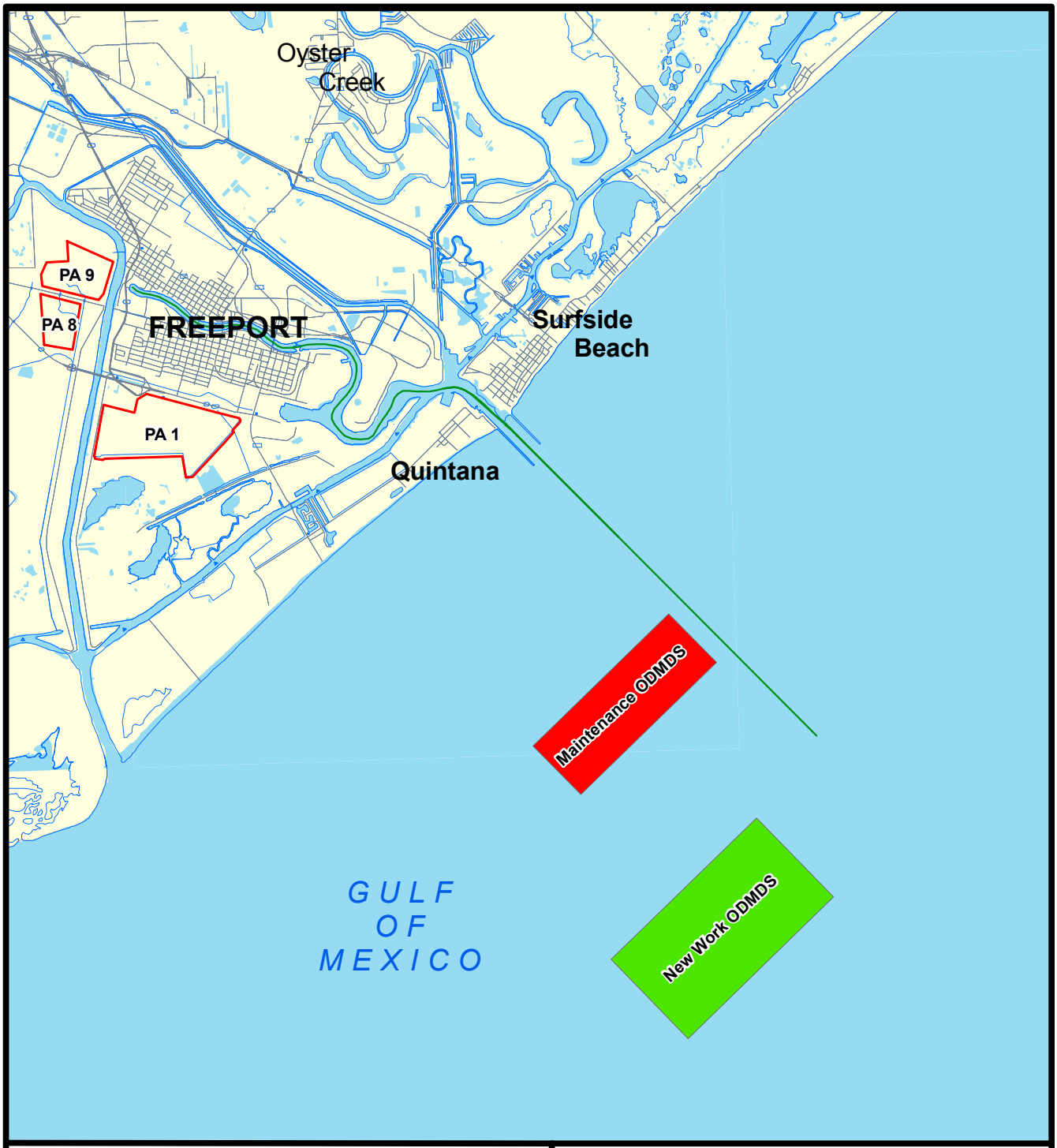
Similarly, proposed project improvements would have only minor impacts on adjacent shorelines for approximately 3 to 4 miles from the Outer Bar Channel jetties.

10.1.1 Terrestrial and Wetland Habitats

The LPP would require construction of two new upland confined PAs (8 and 9) resulting in the loss of approximately 418 acres of habitat, consisting of 21 acres of riparian forest, 39 acres of ephemeral freshwater wetlands, and 358 acres of grasslands currently used as pasture land. PAs are shown on Figure 18. The Habitat Evaluation Procedure (HEP) was used to model and quantify ecological impacts to develop the project mitigation plan, which fully mitigates impacts to wetlands and riparian forest, as discussed below.

10.1.1.1 Aquatic Ecology

In addition to upland confined placement of new work and maintenance dredged material, dredged material will also be deposited at two existing ODMDSs – the New Work ODMDS and the Maintenance ODMDS. Placement of material at the ODMDSs will result in temporary impacts to aquatic communities (primarily benthos) from increased sedimentation and turbidity. However, these effects are expected to be temporary in nature, and affected benthic organisms and other communities should rapidly recover.



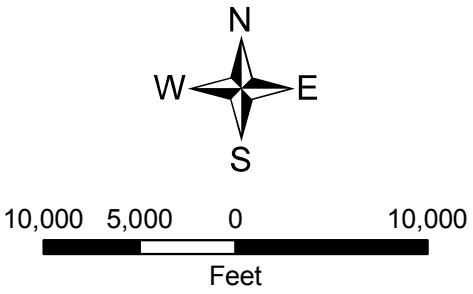


Figure 18

Freeport Harbor Channel Improvement Project

Dredged Material Placement Area Alternatives

Prepared for: USACE, Galveston District	
Job No.: 044190100	Scale: 1:120,000
Prepared by: A. Christiansen	Date: 08/06/2008
File: N:/Clients/U_Z/USACE/Projects/Freeport/044190100/figure_16.mxd	

10.1.2 Clean Water Act

Sections 401 and 404(b)(1) of the CWA apply to the tentatively Recommended Plan. In Texas, Section 401 is regulated by TCEQ through their Water Quality Certification Program. A 404(b)(1) evaluation is presented in Appendix G of the DEIS. Compliance with both 401 and 404(b)(1) is documented in the DEIS, and water quality certification will be requested from TCEQ.

10.1.3 Section 103 of the Marine Protection, Research, and Sanctuaries Act

This Act requires a determination that dredged material placement in the ocean will not appreciably degrade or endanger human health, welfare, amenities, or the marine environment, ecological systems, or economic potential (shellfish beds, fisheries, or recreation areas). Modeling indicates the existing Maintenance and New Work ODMDSs are large enough to accommodate dredged material for the project life of both the Permit Widening and the Federal project. Consequently, USACE has gained EPA concurrence for using the existing ODMDSs for placement of new work and maintenance material from the proposed project. EPA does not require a separate ODMDS EIS for utilizing these sites because they were previously designated by EPA for placement of Freeport dredged material, and no expansion of the sites is required to accommodate projected new work and maintenance dredging volumes. Appendix B of the DEIS contains a Marine Protection, Research and Sanctuaries Act Section 102/103 evaluation report for proposed placement activities and an approved ODMDS Site Monitoring and Management Plan.

10.1.4 Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act

NMFS was coordinated with regard to identification of EFH in the project area. Submittal of the DEIS to NMFS will initiate formal consultation. The DEIS documents there will be no significant impacts to EFH.

10.1.5 Coastal Zone Management Act

In Texas, the Coastal Coordination Council (CCC) administers the Texas Coastal Management Program (TCMP). The CCC reviews all Federal actions that may affect any natural resource in the coastal zone for consistency with the TCMP goals and policies. The DEIS concludes that the project is compliant with the Coastal Zone Management Act (see DEIS Appendix J).

10.1.6 Fish and Wildlife Coordination Act

USACE has coordinated with USFWS and TPWD, the State fish and wildlife resource agencies, concerning impacts to resources from proposed project improvements. These agencies actively participated in identifying sensitive resources and project impacts, and provided

recommendations for the project mitigation plan. USFWS has prepared a Coordination Act Report documenting its recommendations, found in Appendix A to the DEIS.

10.1.7 Marine Mammal Protection Act of 1972

The Marine Mammal Protection Act was passed in 1972 and amended through 1997. It is intended to conserve and protect marine mammals and establish the Marine Mammal Commission, the International Dolphin Conservation Program, and a Marine Mammal Health and Stranding Response Program. The tentatively Recommended Plan is in compliance with this Act. Proposed project improvements are not expected to impact any marine mammals as they are unlikely to occur in the project area.

10.1.8 Coastal Barrier Improvement Act of 1990

There are two Coastal Barrier Improvement Acts (CBRAs)–designated areas near the project area**:** Follets Island Unit T04 and Brazos River Complex T05/T05P. T04 begins roughly 3.9 miles northeast of the North Jetty and continues roughly 10 miles up the coast, with a few exempted areas. There are no Otherwise Protected Areas (OPAs) — undeveloped coastal barriers within the boundaries of lands reserved as wildlife refuges, parks, or for other conservation purposes—in T04 along the coastline. T05 begins roughly 0.75 mile to the southwest of the South Jetty and, with one 0.4-mile break, extends to roughly 5.0 miles southwest of the South Jetty. T05P, an OPA, begins roughly 5.0 miles southwest of the South Jetty and extends beyond the relocated Brazos River mouth. Exceptions to the Federal expenditure restrictions include maintenance of constructed improvements(s) to existing Federal navigation channels and related structures (e.g., jetties), including the disposal of dredged material related to maintenance and construction. Thus, the tentatively Recommended Plan is exempt from the prohibitions identified in this Act.

10.1.9 Farmland Protection Policy Act of 1981 and the Council on Environmental Quality Memorandum Prime or Unique Farmlands

Construction of PA 9 will impact approximately 250 acres of prime farmland. Coordination with NRCS regarding these impacts has determined that the site's score is below the 160 threshold for additional coordination.

10.1.10 Executive Order 11988, Floodplain Management

This Executive Order (EO) directs Federal agencies to evaluate the potential effects of proposed actions on floodplains. Such actions should not be undertaken that directly or indirectly induce growth in the floodplain unless there is no practical alternative. The tentatively Recommended Plan is not expected to significantly affect floodplains.

10.1.11 Executive Order 12898, Environmental Justice

An evaluation of potential Environmental Justice (EJ) impacts was completed and is presented in the DEIS. The tentatively Recommended Plan is not expected to adversely affect low-income or minority populations.

10.2 AIR QUALITY

The project study area is located within a severe nonattainment area for ozone. New work dredging activities associated with the LPP are expected to exceed the conformity threshold of 25 tons per year volatile organic compounds or for NO_X, which contribute to ozone formation. During construction, the LPP is expected to generate 718 peak estimated tons per year of NO_X, which contributes to ozone formation. Therefore, a General Conformity Determination will be submitted to TCEQ and EPA, and coordination will be initiated to determine whether the proposed project is compliant with the SIP, which establishes emissions budgets for air quality control.

10.3 NOISE

During construction, noise impacts during dredging operations would be about 3 to 6 dBA (A-weighted sound level) higher at the nearest noise receptors than what is experienced during current maintenance dredging. Construction would be essentially equivalent to increased noise levels currently heard during maintenance dredging.

10.4 HAZARDOUS, TOXIC, AND RADIOACTIVE WASTE

An HTRW assessment revealed that no known regulated sites or hazardous materials exist within the LPP project footprint. Additionally, historic and current sediment data for the existing channel indicate no contaminant concerns. It should also be noted that proposed improvements would remove new work material consisting primarily of clay, which is highly impermeable to contaminant migration, located beneath existing maintenance overburden. Based on this information, HTRW is not expected to be encountered during proposed channel improvements.

10.5 THREATENED AND ENDANGERED SPECIES

Construction activities utilizing hopper dredges could result in the incidental takes of federally protected sea turtles (Kemp's ridley, loggerheads, and green sea turtles). However, compliance with the terms and conditions of a project-specific NMFS Biological Opinion (BO) would reduce the potential for these impacts. A BA has been prepared for the proposed project. Submission of the BA with the DEIS will initiate consultation with the Services. The BA concludes that the project is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of federally listed species and will not impact critical habitat.

10.6 CULTURAL RESOURCES

Additional investigations of the possible Civil War gun battery at PA 9 will be conducted under the terms of the PAg. Similarly, any mitigation, if needed, would be handled under the PAg (see Appendix E of the EIS).

10.7 CUMULATIVE IMPACTS

Cumulative impacts have been evaluated based on 13 existing and reasonably foreseeable projects in the Freeport area, ranging from existing waterways such as the GIWW, to new ship channel industries such as an LNG facility, construction of a new containership berth and a marina, and construction of other industrial and commercial facilities. Total cumulative impacts from these projects are not expected to adversely affect human health, socioeconomic well-being, or the environment of the project area.

10.8 PROJECT MITIGATION

Construction of the two new upland PAs 8 and 9 would result in both wetland and riparian forest impacts. The PAs would be developed on land owned or leased by the project Sponsor and will contain approximately 33 mcy of new work and maintenance material from the proposed channel improvements. Impacts to these areas were evaluated using HEP and IWR-Plan to develop a project mitigation plan. The proposed PAs are currently degraded pasture with ephemeral wetland swales that are seasonally dry, and some second-growth riparian forest adjacent to the Brazos River Diversion Channel (Diversion Channel). The pastures are overgrazed and contain substantial numbers of nonnative invasives including pasture grasses and Chinese tallow trees (tallow) and native species indicative of disturbance.

Construction of PAs 8 and 9, including pipeline corridors and effluent ditches, would impact 418 acres of land, including 21 acres of secondary riparian forest, 39 acres of ephemeral wetlands, and 358 acres of degraded pasture with some scrub shrub. Of these habitats, mitigation is proposed for the riparian forest and wetland impacts.

Resource agency personnel from the USFWS and the TPWD participated in site visits and in collecting the required field data for conducting the HEP analysis for impacted wetlands and riparian forest, and provided valuable advice in completing the analysis. The agencies also provided significant input for siting and design of project mitigation features. During agency coordination for siting project mitigation features, emphasis was placed on in-kind mitigation located in close proximity to impacted habitats. Areas considered for project mitigation and coordinated with the resource agencies included land to the north and east of PA 9 adjacent to the Diversion Channel, and land east of PA 8 to the Diversion Channel (see Figure 18). The area

between the proposed PAs and the Diversion Channel contains riparian forest and areas suitable for wetland mitigation.

The agencies made a number of recommendations USACE could not concur with for project mitigation. For example, USFWS recommended that the entire riparian forest between the PAs and the Diversion Channel be selectively cleared of tallow, replanted with a combination of hard mast and flood-tolerant native trees, and be protected in perpetuity by a conservation easement. As demonstrated below, however, this would have resulted in excessive mitigation for project impacts and will not be implemented.

TPWD requested preservation in perpetuity of a 5-acre ephemeral wetland swale located between PA 8 and SH 36 as a mitigation feature. However, the port does not wish to make this property available for project mitigation. The resource agencies also requested mitigation for the 358 acres of pasture impacted by PAs 8 and 9. The agencies classify these pastures as wet coastal prairie. USACE does not concur with this habitat classification. Although the land at one time may have been coastal prairie, it is now degraded grassland planted to and primarily consisting of nonnative pasture grasses of limited wildlife habitat value that does not merit mitigation.

A project mitigation plan to address unavoidable impacts to significant habitat resulting from the construction of PAs 8 and 9 was developed that satisfies the USACE's cost effectiveness and incremental cost analysis (CE/ICA) requirements as outlined in ER 1105-2-100, Appendix C. The plan considers the quality and regional significance of the impacted habitats and focuses on mitigating impacts to high-quality habitat while minimizing additional land acquisition costs. HEP models were considered adequate for both the riparian forest and wetland habitats impacted by this project. Once unavoidable project impacts had been identified, several tracts of land owned by the port were considered for mitigation—Peach Point and lands surrounding PAs 8 and 9. Peach Point is located west of Freeport near Jones Creek and consists primarily of tidally influence wetlands near the GIWW. These wetlands would not provide acceptable mitigation because they are out-of-kind mitigation substitutes for the freshwater, ephemeral wetlands impacted by the project and were not considered further. Two additional sites near Peach Point were also considered for mitigation, but were dropped because they too would have provided out-of-kind mitigation like Peach Point. The port-owned lands adjacent to PAs 8 and 9 provide for in-kind, on-site mitigation, which is desirable. In addition, the port is willing to grant a conservation easement that will protect the riparian forest mitigation tract in perpetuity. A detailed evaluation of these lands based on HEP modeling is documented below. HEP modeling was used to quantify project impacts and mitigation compensation. CE/ICA was also performed to identify an optimal mitigation plan that fully compensates for project impacts.

10.9 HABITAT EVALUATION PROCEDURE

A HEP analysis was used to determine the amount of mitigation required to compensate for project impacts. HEP uses evaluation species as representative of habitat quality by determining a Habitat Suitability Index (HSI) for each species using a particular habitat. Each species has an associated HSI model, which is based upon the assumption that a positive relationship exists between the HSI and habitat carrying capacity, and that habitat suitability can be summarized on a scale ranging from 0.0 to 1.0 (USFWS, 1996). Data from field measurements of habitat variables is run through the respective suitability index model to generate a baseline HSI for each species or group of species utilizing the same habitats.

The number of habitat units (HU) available in the habitat is calculated by multiplying the HSI by the area of habitat being analyzed. The final step in the process is to project the condition of the habitat into the future, over the period of analysis, and determine what the value of the habitat will be at certain points in time (target years [TY]), when a change in habitat conditions is likely to occur. HUs are then summed for each species and divided by the years in the period of analysis.

The foregoing procedure provides the average annual habitat units (AAHUs) that can be compared to the AAHUs calculated for the same habitat type and species at different locations or different conditions (management plans) at the same location. AAHUs for the future with-project and without-project conditions are calculated in this manner. The difference between these two conditions is used to calculate project impact and determine the mitigation needed to compensate for habitat losses to the evaluation species.

10.10 SITE DESCRIPTION AND SELECTION OF EVALUATION SPECIES

PA 8 is utilized as a pasture. The site retains perhaps 30 percent of its original prairie habitat function and value and is vegetated by a large number of nonnative invasives and species indicative of pasture maintenance, such as mowing. Species found at the site include rattlebox, Gulf cordgrass, St. Augustine grass, sedges, and tallow. Sparse concentrations of seacoast sumpweed, Carolina wolfberry, marsh-hay cordgrass, and sea-ox eye daisy were also observed. Evidence of overgrazing exists. PA 8 also contains two small stock ponds. At the time of the site visit, these ponds were dry and vegetated with common arrowhead, seacoast sumpweed, and tallow and were surrounded by Gulf cordgrass, marsh-hay cordgrass, and scattered native flowers.

PA 9 is adjacent to the Diversion Channel, and although similar to PA 8, is drier and the ground cover is sparser. The majority of the site consists of heavily overgrazed pasture vegetated with bermudagrass, rattlebox, frog fruit, and scattered Gulf cordgrass. The pasture retains perhaps

10 percent of its original prairie habitat function and value and is considered substantially degraded. It also includes two areas of riparian forest totaling 21 acres, both of which are situated adjacent to the Diversion Channel. The riparian forest is an open, second-growth, mixed-species forest, approximately 40 years in age, with a grazed understory. The forest consists of a diverse range of nonnative invasive and native tree and brush species including sugar hackberry, cedar elm, tallow, toothache tree, pecan, red mulberry, gum bumelia, yaupon, palmetto, and other species. The height of this mixed-species canopy reaches 35 feet, and its density, maturity, diversity, and location along the Diversion Channel near the Gulf of Mexico add to its value as a neotropical migrant songbird "fallout" site.

Wildlife species include the northern bobwhite, marsh harrier, black-shouldered kite, great egret, snowy egret, great blue heron, eastern meadowlark, red-winged blackbird, and others. Species seen in the forested portion of PA 9 included the red-shouldered hawk, black-crowned night heron, northern mockingbird, northern cardinal, white-eyed vireo, tufted titmouse, and common blackbird.

For purposes of habitat evaluation, the HSI models for the mottled duck and great egret were used. These species served as surrogates for calculating the quality of the ephemeral wetlands at PAs 8 and 9. Ephemeral wetland swales at these sites generally consist of a semipermanent water regime, with water depths possibly approaching 3–5 inches during wet winter months and drying up during the summer months.

Two evaluation species, the gray squirrel and veery, were used as surrogates to calculate the quality of the riparian forest. The eastern meadowlark was used as an evaluation species for calculating the quality of the grasslands, and only the HSI value for the food component of its model was used in the HEP analysis.

While the gray squirrel, veery, and mottled duck were not observed in the riparian forest or wetland habitats during site visits, the forest may support squirrels and could provide fallout sanctuary for the veery. Similarly, the mottled duck could use the stock ponds and ephemeral swales and potholes within the project area.

Field measurements were collected by USACE assisted by USFWS and TPWD biologists at PAs 8 and 9 on December 4, 2006. Data were collected from representative sampling sites in the riparian forest and at wetland and grassland areas to assess the suitability of these habitats for their respective evaluation species. The initial field data collected from this site visit was compiled by USFWS to establish baseline HSI values for the evaluation species, and was reviewed by TPWD and USACE.

10.11 HEP MODELING

10.11.1 Future Without-Project

Table 81 provides the average baseline condition HSI values and HUs for each evaluation species in each of the three habitats. The HSI was obtained by averaging the HSI values for each of the habitats surveyed. Before performing calculations for AAHUs, anticipated changes that will occur in the quality or quantity of each habitat were determined and expressed as target years, over the designated period of analysis, which is 50 years for this project.

Table 81
Average HSI Values and HUs for All Habitats in Project Impact Areas
(Baseline Conditions)

Evaluation Species	Area of Available Habitat (Acres)	Average HSI Values	Habitat Units
Forest			
Gray Squirrel	21	0.21	4.4
Veery	21	0.47	9.9
Average HSI:		0.34	7.14
Wetlands			
Mottled Duck	39	0.13	5
Great Egret	39	0.29	11.3
Average HSI:		0.21	8.15
Grasslands			
Eastern Meadowlark	358	0.39	139.6

When determining the target years for the future without-project condition, it was assumed that the forest habitat on PA 9 would not likely experience any meaningful changes (losses) in habitat quality or quantity resulting from tree removal or other activities for development.

Currently, the forested areas function in part as a buffer for Dow operations, and according to Port Freeport, will continue providing that function. Also, the current use of grasslands as maintained pasture for cattle would likely continue. However, the wetland and grassland habitats on PA 8 are expected to experience a change in habitat value for each evaluation species for the future without-project condition, due to planned development actions by the port on Tract Eight. According to port officials, these changes would probably occur approximately 15 years into the future. Prior to this potential development timeframe, the wetlands and grasslands on PA 8 are assumed to experience no change in habitat value for each evaluation species.

In general, the assumption of no change in wetlands for both PAs 8 and 9 is due to their control by the port and Dow. No change to the grasslands is expected because they are maintained pasture and periodically mowed, preventing any meaningful successional change.

The final step in calculating the AAHUs for each habitat is to calculate the HUs contained in a habitat for each evaluation species at each target year, and summing all HUs to get cumulative HUs. The cumulative HUs are then divided by the period of analysis (50 years) to derive the AAHUs which can be compared with similar habitats in a mitigation plan to ensure adequate compensation for project impacts (losses). Table 82 presents the HUs calculated for the evaluation species in each habitat, the cumulative HUs for all evaluation species in a habitat, and the AAHUs for the future without-project condition.

Table 82 shows that without the project in place, the forests will retain a habitat value of approximately 7.46 AAHUs for the two evaluation species over the 50-year period of analysis. The wetlands and the grasslands will have approximate values of 1.1 and 67 AAHUs, respectively.

10.11.2 Future With-Project

The next step in the HEP analysis involves calculating the AAHUs for each habitat with the dredged material disposal action in place. Because the analysis examines only the construction areas where dredged material placement will occur, resulting in displacement of all surface features (habitats), we would expect that the AAHUs for this condition will be very low. At the end of TY_1 when project construction terminates and when project features are in place, the habitat will not recover, so no habitat units exist from this point through the period of analysis, which is 50 years with the project features in place. The AAHUs are calculated using the same formula as in the future without-project analysis, and the results are presented in Table 83.

As expected, with project implementation, the AAHUs are greatly diminished compared to the without-project condition. AAHUs for the future with-project conditions range from 0.047 for the forest habitat, to 0.063 for the wetlands, and 0.93 for the grasslands.

Table 82
Future Without-Project AAHUs in Evaluation Species' Habitats

Habitat	Species	Target Years (TY) Compared	Acres	HSI Values	Habitat Units Between TY	Average Annual Habitat Units
Forest	Gray Squirrel and Veery	$TY_1 – TY_0$	21	0.34	7.14	
		$TY_{15} – TY_1$	21	0.46	81.20	
		$TY_{25} – TY_{15}$	21	0.55	74.23	
		$TY_{51} – TY_{25}$	21	0.58	210.50	
Cumulative Habitat Units:					373.07	
AAHUs:						7.46
Wetlands	Mottled Duck and Great Egret	$TY_1 – TY_0$	39	0.21	9.2	
		$TY_2 – TY_1$	39	0.20	9.00	
		$TY_{15} – TY_2$	16	0	39.36	
		$TY_{51} – TY_{15}$	16	0	0	
Cumulative Habitat Units:					57.56	
AAHUs:						1.15
Grasslands	Eastern Meadowlark	$TY_1 – TY_0$	358	0.39	138.7	
		$TY_2 – TY_1$	358	0.39	138.7	
		$TY_{15} – TY_2$	358	0.39	317.5	
		$TY_{51} – TY_{15}$	213	0.40	2,755.0	
Cumulative Habitat Units:					3,350.0	
AAHUs:						67.0

Table 83
Future With-Project AAHUs in Evaluation Species' Habitats

Habitat	Species	Target Years (TY) Compared	Acres	HSI Values	Habitat Units Between TY	Average Annual Habitat Units
Forest	Gray Squirrel and Veery	$TY_1 – TY_0$	21	0.34	2.38	
		$TY_{15} – TY_1$	0	0	0	
		$TY_{25} – TY_{15}$	0	0	0	
		$TY_{51} – TY_{25}$	0	0	0	
Cumulative Habitat Units:					2.38	
AAHUs:						0.047
Wetlands	Mottled Duck and Great Egret	$TY_1 – TY_0$	39	0.21	3.15	
		$TY_2 – TY_1$	0	0	0	
		$TY_{15} – TY_2$	0	0	0	
		$TY_{51} – TY_{15}$	0	0	0	
Cumulative Habitat Units:					3.15	
AAHUs:						0.063
Grasslands	Eastern Meadowlark	$TY_1 – TY_0$	358	0.39	46.3	
		$TY_2 – TY_1$	0	0	0	
		$TY_{15} – TY_2$	0	0	0	
		$TY_{51} – TY_{15}$	0	0	0	
Cumulative Habitat Units:					46.3	
AAHUs:						0.93

10.11.3 Proposed Mitigation Strategies for Forest and Wetlands

To determine the amount of new habitat required for compensating project impacts to riparian forests and wetlands, the AAHUs for each habitat in the future without-project condition are subtracted from the AAHUs for each habitat in the future with-project condition. Based on this calculation, the approximate AAHUs, which are all negative, required in the new habitats to offset project losses are:

- Riparian Forests: 7.41
- Wetlands: 1.1

Three sites located on project lands adjacent to the proposed PAs were selected for project mitigation planning and were used for developing the CE/ICA. The CE/ICA identifies the most-cost-effective plans for accomplishing the required levels of mitigation at these sites. The three alternative mitigation sites and their associated measures are:

Mitigation Site 1

(Riparian and wetland mitigation – riparian forest area north of PA 9 and adjacent to pasture area bordering the forest's southern edge) This 131.8-acre site includes 117 acres of riparian forest, 5 acres of cleared forest, and about 9.8 acres of grassland. It is large enough for both wetland and riparian mitigation features and is supported by the resource agencies as a mitigation site because it will be protected by a conservation easement. Field surveys revealed that approximately 10 percent of the riparian forest in Mitigation Site 1 (11 acres) is composed of tallows. Riparian mitigation at this site would consist of clearing the tallows, primarily around natural openings in the forest, and planting native trees. After clearing, the openings would be planted with a variety of small hard-mast and flood-tolerant native seedlings or sapling trees to enhance the existing forest. Additionally, 1 acre of these native tree species would be planted around the perimeter of a proposed wetland creation area, described below. A total of 12 acres of new native trees would be planted for riparian mitigation at this site, and the entire 117-acre riparian forest would be preserved as part of the proposed project mitigation plan.

Wetland mitigation would be accomplished by creating a 3-acre ephemeral wetland (pond) in the grassland area of Site 1. The pond would be sloped to reach a maximum center depth of about 12 inches, the limit of accessibility of the mottled duck, and will have areas of between 4 to 9 inches in depth as required by the great egret for wade feeding. A variety of wetland plant species plugs (submerged and emergent) would be planted on 5- to 6-foot centers on the slopes and water's edge of the pond at different elevations, dependent upon the aquatic plant species, for a medium-density planting.

Mitigation Site 2

(Riparian mitigation – riparian forest located east of PA 9). This 14.5-acre site includes 9.5 acres of riparian forest and 5 acres of mixed tallow and scrub-shrub vegetation. The 5-acre tallow and scrub-shrub area would be cleared and planted with small hard-mast and flood-tolerant native seedlings or sapling trees for riparian forest mitigation.

Mitigation Site 3

(Riparian and wetland mitigation – riparian forest located east of PA 8). This 124.7-acre site includes 112 acres of riparian forest and 12.7 acres of very dense tallow stands and scrub-shrub. Riparian forest mitigation would be accomplished by clearing tallows from 30 percent (33 acres) of the 112-acre riparian forest. This 33-acre area would then be planted with small hard-mast

native and flood-tolerant seedlings or sapling trees. Additionally, 1 acre of native trees would be planted around the perimeter of the proposed wetland creation area at this site, for a total of 34 acres of newly planted trees. A 3-acre ephemeral wetland area (pond) would be created within the scrub-shrub area of the site. The same design features and aquatic planting scheme proposed at Site 1 for pond creation would be used.

Native tree and wetland vegetation that could be used for mitigation planting include water oak, willow oak, overcup oak, pecan, green ash, planar tree, water hickory, bald cypress, black willow, red maple, smart weed, common or soft rush, sawgrass, sedge, pickerel weed, Gulf cordgrass, and swamp lily.

10.12 COST EFFECTIVENESS AND INCREMENTAL COST ANALYSIS

Based on the initial assessment of the three mitigation site alternatives described above, a CE/ICA was performed to determine which of the three sites or combinations of sites would be the most cost effective and incrementally justified.

10.12.1 Forest Mitigation (Scales and Assumptions)

Sufficient acreage exists between mitigation sites (sites 1, 2, and 3) for planting a mixture of tree species to compensate for project losses. To determine the AAHUs the mitigation forest and mitigation wetlands contain, certain TYs representing the time of expected change in habitat values were chosen to measure the gains in habitat value over the 50-year period of analysis. Habitat gains will be reflected in AAHUs calculated for each evaluation species as the trees mature.

10.12.2 Scales

Two scales of trees were considered for planting at the sites: seedlings and saplings. For seedlings, a mixture of tree species would be utilized. The seedlings would be 0.5 to 1 inch in diameter, 2 to 4 feet tall, planted at a density of 150 trees per acre, and spaced as forest openings permit. Tree mortality for this size is expected to approach 30 to 40 percent over the 50-year period of analysis, with most of the mortality occurring within the first 2 years after planting. The more expensive saplings would range between 1.5- to 2-inch-diameter plants, 5–7 feet in height, and be planted at a density of 40 trees per acre as forest openings permit. Mortality for this size tree is expected to approach 25 percent over the 50-year period of analysis, with most of the mortality occurring within the first 2 years after planting.

In a straight cost comparison, the seedlings are less expensive than the saplings, but the saplings are expected to provide value to the forest habitat earlier due to their size. While the larger and more expensive saplings may initially provide a faster recovery of the forest habitat compared to seedlings, the differences between these two tree sizes with respect to their contribution of value

to the existing forest would be negligible over the 50-year period of analysis. Therefore, both tree sizes are deemed to provide the same habitat value, and this was reflected in the HEP analysis by assigning them both the same HSI scores.

A review of the variables that influence habitat quality for the two forest evaluation species revealed that the most important variables common to these species are:

- Percent canopy closure of trees that produce hard mast, which are greater than or equal to 10 inches diameter at breast height (dbh);
- Percent of tree canopy closure;
- Number and diversity of tree species that produce hard mast; and
- Soil moisture regime.

10.12.3 Assumptions Using Seedling Trees

The variables listed above for the evaluation species were used to identify the TYs for the HEP analysis. While growth is highly variable among species and even among individuals of the same species, it is not unreasonable to expect some of the faster growing trees, such as the oaks, to achieve large crowns that could easily approach 25–30 feet in diameter within 20 years. Therefore, with a mixture of species in the plantings and about a 25–30 percent mortality rate, it is not unreasonable to expect a 40–60 percent canopy closure in about 25 years.

Using all the above assumptions, the habitat value was calculated for each evaluation species, and a cost for mitigation for each site was developed. Table 84 presents the future without-project and projected future with-project HSI values for each species for each target year used in the analysis. It also displays future without-project AAHUs at each of the proposed sites, and projects future with-project mitigation AAHUs for the proposed sites, if the planting scheme for seedlings was implemented.

10.12.4 Wetland Mitigation (Scales and Assumptions)

Sufficient acreage is available at all proposed mitigation sites, except for Site 2, for wetland creation. Site 2 will not be considered for any wetland habitat creation due to reasons stated earlier.

In determining the AAHUs the mitigation wetlands contain, certain TYs representing the time of expected change in habitat value were chosen to measure the gains in habitat value over the 50-year period of analysis. Habitat gains will be reflected in AAHUs calculated for each evaluation species as the wetland vegetation matures.

Table 84
AAHUs for Forest Species at Proposed Mitigation Sites
FWOP vs. FWP Mitigation*

Site 1 (Seedlings) Gray Squirrel and Veery	Target Years (TY) Compared	Acres (FWOP)	HSI Value (FWOP)	Habitat Units Between TYs (FWOP)	Average Annual Habitat Units (FWOP)	Acres (FWP)	HSI Value (FWP)	Habitat Units Between TYs (FWP)	Average Annual Habitat Units (FWP)	AAHUs Gained at Site 1 (FWP minus FWOP AAHUs)
	$TY_1 – TY_0$	117	0.34	39.78		117	0.34	39.9		
	$TY_{15} – TY_1$	117	0.47	460.8		118	.55	507.6		
	$TY_{25} – TY_{15}$	117	0.56	425.8		118	.66	499.7		
	$TY_{51} – TY_{25}$	117	0.6	1204		118	0.75	1469.6		
AAHUs:					42.6				50.3	7.73
Site 2 (Seedlings) Gray Squirrel and Veery	**Target Years (TY) Compared**	**Acres (FWOP)**	**HSI Value (FWOP)**	**Habitat Units Between TYs (FWOP)**	**Average Annual Habitat Units (FWOP)**	**Acres (FWP)**	**HSI Value (FWP)**	**Habitat Units Between TYs (FWP)**	**Average Annual Habitat Units (FWP)**	**AAHUs Gained at Site 2 (FWP minus FWOP AAHUs)**
	$TY_1 – TY_0$	9.5	0.34	3.2		9.5	0.34	4.0		
	$TY_{15} – TY_1$	9.5	0.25	27		14.5	0.35	48.3		
	$TY_{25} – TY_{15}$	9.5	0.36	20.4		14.5	0.46	41.1		
	$TY_{51} – TY_{25}$	9.5	0.40	64.2		14.5	0.52	126.1		
AAHUs:					2.3				4.39	2.09
Site 3 (Seedlings) Gray Squirrel and Veery	**Target Years (TY) Compared**	**Acres (FWOP)**	**HSI Value (FWOP)**	**Habitat Units Between TYs (FWOP)**	**Average Annual Habitat Units (FWOP)**	**Acres (FWP)**	**HSI Value (FWP)**	**Habitat Units Between TYs (FWP)**	**Average Annual Habitat Units (FWP)**	**AAHUs Gained at Site 3 (FWP minus FWOP AAHUs)**
	$TY_1 – TY_0$	112.7	0.07	7.8		112.7	0.07	7.9		
	$TY_{15} – TY_1$	112.7	0.08	81.7		113.7	0.25	175.8		
	$TY_{25} – TY_{15}$	112.7	0.10	71.0		113.7	0.40	260.0		
	$TY_{51} – TY_{25}$	112.7	0.11	214.0		113.7	0.55	959.1		
AAHUs:					7.49				28.0	20.51

*FWOP = future without-project; FWP = future with-project

10.12.5 Scales

As described earlier, a medium-density planting scheme was chosen for wetland mitigation. This scheme would consist of planting mixed wetland plant species and is thought to be most cost effective.

10.13 ASSUMPTIONS USING A MEDIUM-DENSITY WETLAND PLANNING SCHEME

The mottled duck is more dependent in the HSI model on the density of potential nesting and brooding sites. The variable of most importance to the great egret at the mitigation sites is the availability of feeding habitat, consisting of substrate zones with 4–9 inches of water depth, covered by submerged or emergent vegetation.

Many factors affect the amount of time required for a created wetland to become functional. However, existing data suggest that most aquatic plant species are fast growing and will achieve coverage and density equivalent to naturally occurring wetlands after about 2 years, which is the assumption used for the proposed medium-density planting scheme.

Based upon hydrologic evaluation of the proposed project, it is anticipated that the grasslands and/or forest surrounding the ephemeral pond would periodically flood, but inundation of the ephemeral pond and fringing area proposed for planting would likely not exceed 5 days duration in any flood event. The suggested plants, once established, can tolerate this duration of flooding without significant impacts to their growth and use for wildlife. Using these assumptions, the habitat value was calculated for each evaluation species and a cost of mitigation for each site was developed. Table 85 presents the future without-project and projected future with-project HSI values for the evaluation species for each target year used in the analysis. It also displays future without-project AAHUs at each of the proposed sites, and projects future with-project mitigation AAHUs for the proposed sites, if the wetland creation scheme was implemented.

10.13.1 IWR-PLAN

IWR-PLAN software was used to perform a cost analysis of the proposed woodland seedling-tree planting and the wetland aquatic planting schemes at each of the proposed, alternative mitigation sites. The software identifies combinations of mitigation measures that produce alternative plans that are cost effective and/or incrementally justified. Plans are identified as cost effective or as Best Buy plans, which are also cost-effective plans. IWR-Plan analyzed each of the proposed mitigation sites and measures and generated 27 possible plan combinations. A total of four cost-effective and four Best Buy mitigation plans were identified and are presented in Table 86. Table 87 provides incremental costs for Best Buy Plan combinations.

Table 85
AAHUs for Wetland Species at Proposed Mitigation Sites
FWOP vs. FWP Mitigation

Site 1 (Wetlands) Mottled Duck and Great Egret	Target Years (TY) Compared	Acres (FWOP)	HSI Value (FWOP)	Habitat Units Between TYs (FWOP)	Average Annual Habitat Units (FWOP)	Acres (FWP)	HSI Value (FWP)	Habitat Units Between TYs (FWP)	Average Annual Habitat Units (FWP)	AAHUs Gained at Site 1 (FWP minus FWOP AAHUs)
	$TY_1 - TY_0$	0	0	0		3	0.13	0.13		
	$TY_2 - TY_1$	0	0	0		3	0.45	0.87		
	$TY_3 - TY_2$	0	0	0		3	0.71	1.74		
	$TY_{51} - TY_3$	0	0	0		3	0.79	72.9		
AAHUs:					0				1.5	1.5
Site 3 (Wetlands) Mottled Duck and Great Egret	**Target Years (TY) Compared**	**Acres (FWOP)**	**HSI Value (FWOP)**	**Habitat Units Between TYs (FWOP)**	**Average Annual Habitat Units (FWOP)**	**Acres (FWP)**	**HSI Value (FWP)**	**Habitat Units Between TYs (FWP)**	**Average Annual Habitat Units (FWP)**	**AAHUs Gained at Site 3 (FWP minus FWOP AAHUs)**
	$TY_1 - TY_0$	0	0	0		3	0.13	0.13		
	$TY_2 - TY_1$	0	0	0		3	0.45	0.87		
	$TY_3 - TY_2$	0	0	0		3	0.71	1.74		
	$TY_{51} - TY_3$	0	0	0		3	0.79	72.9		
AAHUs:					0				1.5	1.5

Table 86
IWR-Plan Analysis
Costs and Outputs for Cost Effective and Best Buy Plans

Plan (Alternative)	Total Annual Cost ($)	Forest Output (AAHUs)	Wetland Output (AAHUs)	Total Output (AAHUs)	Cost Effective
No Action Plan	0	0	0	0	Best Buy
A1B0C0	3,484	7.7	1.5	9.2	Best Buy
A2B0C0	6,485	7.7	1.5	9.2	No
A0B1C0	1,134	2.1	0	2.1	Yes
A0B2C0	2,385	2.1	0	2.1	No
A1B1C0	4,618	9.8	1.5	11.3	Yes
A2B1C0	7,619	9.8	1.5	11.3	No
A1B2C0	5,869	9.8	1.5	11.3	No
A2B2C0	8,870	9.8	1.5	11.3	No
A0B0C1	11,240	20.6	1.5	22.1	Yes
A0B0C2	19,744	20.6	1.5	22.1	No
A1B0C1	14,724	28.3	3	31.3	Best Buy
A2B0C1	17,725	28.3	3	31.3	No
A1B0C2	23,228	28.3	3	31.3	No
A2B0C2	26,229	28.3	3	31.3	No
A0B1C1	12,374	22.7	1.5	24.2	Yes
A0B2C1	13,625	22.7	1.5	24.2	No
A0B1C2	20,878	22.7	1.5	24.2	No
A0B2C2	22,129	22.7	1.5	24.2	No
A1B1C1	15,858	30.4	3	33.4	Best Buy
A2B1C1	18,859	30.4	3	33.4	No
A1B2C1	17,109	30.4	3	33.4	No
A2B2C1	20,110	30.4	3	33.4	No
A1B1C2	24,362	30.4	3	33.4	No
A2B1C2	27,363	30.4	3	33.4	No
A1B2C2	25,613	30.4	3	33.4	No
A2B2C2	28,614	30.4	3	33.4	No

KEY: A1 = Site 1 – North of PA 9 (seedling and wetland measures); A2 = Site 1 – North of PA 9 (sapling and wetland measures); B1 = Site 2 – East of PA 9 (seedling measure only); B2 = Site 2 – East of PA 9 (sapling measure only); C1 = Site 3 – East of PA 8 (seedling and wetland measures); C2 = Site 3 – East of PA 8 (sapling and wetland measures).

Table 87
Incremental Cost of Best Buy Plan Combinations
(Ordered By Output)

Plan (Alternative)	Total Output (AAHUs)	Cost ($1)	Average Cost ($1/AAHU)	Incremental Cost ($1)	Incremental Output (AAHUs)	Incremental Cost ($) Per Output
No Action Plan	0.00	0.00				
A1B0C0	9.20	3,484.00	378.69	3,484.00	9.20	378.69
A1B0C1	31.30	14,724.00	470.41	11,240.00	22.10	508.59
A1B1C1	33.40	15,858.00	474.79	1,134.00	2.10	540.00

IWR-Plan results indicate that implementation of the woodland seedling and wetland planting schemes would be a Best Buy Plan at one individual site, and also leads to additional Best Buy plans when other sites are combined. To fully compensate for project impacts to riparian/hardwood forests and ephemeral wetland habitats, 7.41 and 1.1 AAHUs, respectively, were required for mitigation.

Table 87 shows that Plan A1B0C0 (Site 1) is the most cost effective of all Best Buy plans presented. Table 84 reveals that this plan contributes approximately 7.7 AAHUs to the forest habitat and generates about 1.5 AAHUs for newly created wetland habitat, at a total annual cost of $3,484. The incremental cost per AAHU is $378.69 (see Table 84). The AAHU outputs provided adequately compensate for the losses to forest and wetland habitats resulting from project impacts. The projected first-cost of implementing this plan is approximately $106,000 based on the updated October 2009 cost basis.

10.14 COST EFFECTIVENESS AND INCREMENTAL COST ANALYSIS SUMMARY

Based on the analysis that was conducted, it was concluded that establishing woodlands on Site 1 by planting mixed tree species consisting of about 150 seedling trees per acre would compensate for the woodland impacts of 7.41 AAHUs on 21 acres, by providing 7.7 AAHUs of woodlands on about 12 acres. In addition, establishing wetlands on Site 1 by creating a 3-acre pond planted with a variety of aquatic plant plugs on 5- to 6-foot centers would compensate for wetland impacts of 1.1 AAHUs on 39 acres, by providing 1.5 AAHUs for wetland habitat on about 3.0 acres. The first cost for implementing the mitigation plan at Site 1, based on the updated October 2009 cost basis, is $124,000 for planting seedling trees and creating wetlands. O&M for the 50-year period of analysis would consist of additional tallow tree clearing from the mitigation forest area, replanting seedling trees and aquatic vegetation to offset expected mortality, and implementation of mitigation monitoring and contingency plans. These O&M costs would amount to approximately $495,770 for the period of analysis.

10.15 MITIGATION MONITORING AND CONTINGENCY PLANS

10.15.1 Introduction

Monitoring of mitigation sites is a critical part of the mitigation process. The purpose of monitoring is to:

- obtain an objective assessment of project progress towards predetermined project goals and success criteria;
- identify and correct problems through an adaptive management approach; and
- ensure that USACE Galveston District and Port Freeport (local Sponsor) meet their compensatory mitigation obligations.

Monitoring of the mitigation sites developed for this proposed project will be a cooperative process. According to ER 1105-2-100, Section C-3(e) (10), the local Sponsor is primarily responsible for mitigation monitoring to determine the success of mitigation measures. While the local Sponsor is responsible for implementing the monitoring plan, the Galveston District will lead initial monitoring efforts, in cooperation with the local Sponsor and the resource agencies (USFWS and TPWD), to ensure successful establishment of the mitigation features (i.e., riparian tree planting and creation of a pond with aquatic vegetation). The Galveston District will review monitoring results and will make decisions regarding corrective actions.

The local Sponsor (Port Freeport) has stated its intent to enter into an agreement with the TPWD, under terms of a "land conservation easement." The conservation easement would protect and preserve all created mitigation features and would protect the entire 117-acre riparian forest, which would encompass the proposed mitigation seedling plantings. All mitigation lands would be managed and monitored as one continuous ecological unit and would be protected in perpetuity from future development. Under the terms of the conservation easement, the TPWD would be responsible for conducting long-term monitoring, once mitigation features are successfully established, to ensure continued success of these features.

10.15.2 Success Criteria

Success criteria are used to objectively evaluate the progress of mitigation projects in achieving predetermined objectives and to determine whether corrective actions need to be implemented. Because habitat functions are difficult to measure directly, success criteria may be based on an assessment of the structural attributes of restored habitats. In this way, structural attributes serve as surrogate measures of habitat function. Once site conditions have met or surpassed the predetermined structural thresholds, it is assumed that the desired functions are either currently being provided or will be provided given time.

Separate success criteria have been established for riparian and aquatic pond vegetation plantings. For the riparian forest mitigation feature, success criteria would be based on tree seedling survival. For the aquatic pond plantings, success criteria would be based on area of aquatic plant cover.

10.15.3 Riparian Tree Plantings

10.15.3.1 Establishment Year

The initial contract for the riparian plantings would require the survival of 90 percent of seedling trees at the end of the first year after completion of planting. To ensure successful establishment, seedlings would be regularly watered, mulched, and fertilized during the first year. A program of pest/invasive plant control within the seedling planting areas would also be maintained for the establishment year. If the 90 percent targeted survival rate is not met, replacement seedlings would be planted to reach the original planting density of 150 trees per acre. Costs for this survival warranty would be included in the cost of the initial planting contract. Following the establishment year, a 15-year postestablishment monitoring plan would begin.

10.15.3.2 Postestablishment Monitoring

Success criteria for tree seedling survivability are:

- Annually for 5 years after the end of the establishment year, a minimum survival target of 80 percent of original planting density
- At 10 years after the end of the establishment year, a minimum survival target of 75 percent of original planting density
- At 15 years after the end of the establishment year, a minimum survival target of 70 percent of original planting density

Tree mortality for seedlings is expected to approach 30 to 40 percent over the 50-year period of analysis. Supplemental seedling planting to offset tree mortality would occur in years 1–5, 10, and 15 if monitoring indicates that the minimum survival targets for the respective years have not been met. See Section 10.16 for more information on the adaptive management plan.

Success criteria for invasive or exotic plants is:

- Annually for 15 years after the end of the establishment year, invasive or exotic plants cover a maximum of 5 percent of the total acreage planted with tree seedlings

Inasmuch as a known invasive (Chinese tallow) is already present in the mitigation area, it is assumed that monitoring will confirm the presence of invasive/exotic plants in excess of the target maximum in the early years of the monitoring program. Therefore, costs for an annual plant control program are included in the mitigation monitoring cost estimate. Control methods,

determined in consultation with resource agencies, would be developed to address specific species of concern.

10.15.3.3 Monitoring Methods, Timing, and Duration

The goal for the monitoring program for the riparian tree plantings is to determine the survival rate of the planted seedlings and document the presence/extent of invasive/exotic plant species. Monitoring for survivability would be conducted in years 1–5, 10, and 15 after the end of the establishment year. Monitoring for invasive/exotic species would be conducted annually after the establishment year for 15 years. Field data would be compared to success criteria to determine whether the project has met or exceeded predetermined criteria.

Seedling survival would be recorded by pedestrian survey and photo-documentation. Monitoring data sheets would also document other relevant information such as general site conditions, damage by herbivory or vandalism, and erosion. Photographic monitoring would be conducted: (1) prior to project implementation to document preexisting site conditions: (2) following project implementation: and (3) at the end of annual monitoring of the growing season. Key project areas would be photographed from fixed photo-points (i.e., same station, same angle) to provide a consistent basis for visually comparing seedling growth and development through time. The exact number and location of photo-monitoring stations would be determined in the field during project implementation.

The extent of invasive/exotic species coverage would be documented annually for 15 years after the end of the establishment year by pedestrian survey and photographic monitoring, using the methodology described for tree seedling monitoring above.

10.15.3.4 Project Closure

The riparian mitigation component could be certified as successful at the end of 15 years with a minimum tree seedling survival rate of 70 percent and maximum invasive/exotic plant cover of 5 percent of the total acreage planted with tree seedlings.

10.15.4 Aquatic Pond Vegetation

10.15.4.1 Establishment Year

The initial contract for the creation and planting of a wetland pond would require the survival of 60 percent of the planted aquatic vegetation clumps or plugs 1 year after pond creation. Viable herbaceous and grass plants shall be indicated by the evidence of one or more new live plant shoots arising from each separate plant plug or clump. Plugs/clumps would be watered as necessary, and invasive/exotic plants would be removed as needed during the establishment year. If the 60 percent targeted survival rate is not met, replacement plugs/clumps would be replanted to reach the original medium planting density. Corrective actions for pond size, depth, or slope,

if needed, would be accomplished during the establishment year. Costs for corrective construction and the plant survivability warranty would be included in the cost of the initial construction and planting contracts. Following the establishment year, a 5-year postestablishment monitoring plan would begin.

10.15.4.2 Postestablishment Monitoring

Success criteria for aquatic plant survivability are:

- At 1 year after the end of the establishment year, a minimum of 30–35 percent aquatic vegetation cover over the pond's total acreage
- At 3 years after the end of the establishment year, a minimum of 65–70 percent aquatic vegetation cover over the pond's total acreage
- At 5 years after the end of the establishment year, a minimum of 70–75 percent aquatic vegetation cover over the pond's total acreage

Supplemental planting to offset aquatic plant mortality or failure to spread naturally would occur in years 1, 3, and 5 if monitoring indicates that the minimum percentage coverage targets for the respective years have not been met. See Section 10.16 for more information on the adaptive management plan.

Success criteria for invasive or exotic plants

- Annually for 5 years after the end of the establishment year, invasive or exotic plants cover a maximum of 5 percent of the total pond acreage

Inasmuch as a known invasive (Chinese tallow) is already present in the mitigation area, it is assumed that monitoring will confirm the presence of invasive/exotic plants in excess of the target maximum in the early years of the monitoring program. Therefore, costs for an annual plant control program are included in the mitigation monitoring cost estimate. Control methods, determined in consultation with resource agencies, would be developed to address specific species of concern.

10.15.4.3 Monitoring Methods, Timing, and Duration

The monitoring goal for evaluation of aquatic pond vegetation is to determine whether the percentage cover of aquatic vegetation is meeting the success criteria for target years. Monitoring would determine whether the aquatic vegetation is establishing itself along the pond perimeter and within the pond by natural colonization, or whether efforts to assist development of aquatic vegetation may be necessary in order to meet minimum percentage cover targets.

Evaluation of aquatic pond vegetation would entail visually assessing and documenting development of vegetation areas within and along the perimeter of the pond, along with the

substrates that support aquatic vegetation establishment. Monitoring would include (1) determining area of cover of aquatic vegetation and invasive/exotic species, and (2) documenting overall site conditions through same-station, same-angle photo-monitoring. These monitoring tasks would be performed by pedestrian survey and photographic documentation. Key locations would be photographed from fixed photo-points (i.e., same station, same angle) to provide a consistent basis for visually comparing vegetation growth and development through time. The exact number and location of photo-monitoring stations would be determined in the field during project implementation.

Monitoring for percentage cover of desirable aquatic vegetation would be conducted at years 1, 3, and 5 after the end of the establishment year. Monitoring for invasive/exotic species would be conducted annually after the establishment year for 5 years. Field data would be compared to the success criteria to determine whether the project has met or exceeded predetermined criteria.

10.15.4.4 Project Closure

The aquatic pond mitigation component could be certified as successful at the end of 5 years with a minimum percentage aquatic plant cover of 70–75 percent and maximum invasive/exotic plant cover of 5 percent of the total pond acreage.

10.16 CORRECTIVE ACTIONS (ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT)

Corrective actions are actions or measures undertaken to address expected plant mortality as well as unforeseen changes to the mitigation features resulting from natural or anthropogenic causes. Corrective actions will be implemented where necessary, in order to meet predetermined success criteria to ensure survival of the mitigation measures.

10.16.1 Riparian Tree Plantings

If monitoring indicates that the minimum tree seedling survival rates for the respective monitoring years have not been met, supplemental plantings would be conducted according to original planting specifications. However, the original species composition may be altered to favor those species exhibiting the highest survival rates based on monitoring data. A maximum of two curative replanting responses could be performed, using original planting specifications to achieve success criteria.

10.16.2 Aquatic Plantings

If monitoring indicates that the minimum percentage aquatic vegetation cover for the respective monitoring years has not been met, supplemental plantings would be conducted using original planting specifications. Replanted areas would be inspected within 60 days following replanting to determine whether those replanting efforts meet the threshold of a satisfactory stand.

"Satisfactory stand" is defined as planting areas with at least a 50–60 percent survival rate within 60 calendar days following the planting effort. Viable herbaceous and grass plants shall be indicated by the evidence of one or more new live plant shoots arising from each separate plant plug or clump.

10.16.3 Adaptive Management Costs

Adaptive management costs are included in the O&M cost for the mitigation plan and described in the Operations and Maintenance Manual. Potential adaptive management costs for the 50-year period of analysis are contained in Table 88 below.

Table 88
Adaptive Management Costs

Task Description	Frequency	Cost ($)
Replant Trees (12 acres @ 50 trees/acre)	Twice (As Required)	31,680
Replant Aquatic Vegetation for Pond (3 acres using original planting specifications)	Twice (As Required)	7,920
	Total	39,600

10.17 MONITORING REPORTS

10.17.1 Annual Monitoring Reports

Monitoring reports would be prepared by the local Sponsor and submitted to the Galveston District annually during the 15-year and 5-year monitoring periods for the riparian trees and aquatic vegetation, respectively. Copies of this report would be provided to representatives of the consulting State and Federal agencies. Monitoring would continue until it has been demonstrated that the mitigation has met the ecological success criteria as documented by the District Engineer and determined by the Division Commander. It is anticipated that ecological success criteria for the riparian tree and aquatic tree planting would be met by Year 15 and Year 5, respectively, and that monitoring will cease when certification is achieved.

Monitoring reports would contain all monitoring data and photographs, and all annual results will be presented in cumulative fashion. Monitoring reports would be submitted to the Galveston District within 3 months of when the monitoring was conducted.

The first report would be submitted after initial mitigation construction has been completed (i.e., riparian tree planting and planting of aquatic vegetation). This report would document and detail the mitigation effort. Any variances from the work plan or standard practices described in the

mitigation plan would be noted in this document. A summary of work activities and their respective start and completion dates would be included.

Monitoring reports would consist of introduction, methods, results, and discussion sections. The introduction would include a brief narrative description of existing conditions, a site location map, maps showing key sampling locations (i.e., transects, photo-stations, etc.), and a review of success criteria. The methods section of the report would detail the methodology used to assess project performance for the mitigation features. Results from monitoring riparian tree plantings and aquatic vegetation would be summarized in the results section in tables and/or as text. Monitoring data sheets would be included as an appendix. The results section would also include one set of labeled photographs taken at each of the fixed-point photo-monitoring stations.

The discussion section of monitoring reports for both the riparian and aquatic components would include an assessment of project success based on the monitoring results directly related to set success criteria. The need for any corrective actions (i.e., supplemental planting) would also be identified in this section. If necessary, a proposed schedule for implementing corrective actions would be included. The discussion section would also include a description of any problems observed within the project site including, but not limited to, excessive inundation, drought, invasion by undesirable plant species, herbivory damage, plant diseases, excessive erosion, and evidence of vandalism or inadvertent damage.

10.17.2 Final Close-Out Monitoring Report

A final "close-out" monitoring report would be submitted following certification that success criteria have been met for the riparian trees and aquatic vegetation mitigation areas. This report would include data and a description of the final monitoring evaluation. It would also provide a summary and analyses of annual monitoring results for the monitoring period for the entire mitigation site.

10.18 MITIGATION MONITORING AND REPORTING COSTS

Monitoring and reporting costs would be included in the O&M cost for the mitigation plan and described in the Operations and Maintenance Manual. Projected monitoring and reporting costs for the 50-year period of analysis are found in Table 89.

Table 89
Mitigation Monitoring and Reporting Costs

Task Description	Monitoring Interval	Cost ($)
Monitoring of Trees/Pond	Annual (Years 1–5, 10, 15)	44,330
Monitoring of Pond Aquatic Vegetation	(Years 1, 3, and 5)	27,280
Invasive Plant Control	Years 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 (estimated)	66,000
Monitoring Report	Annual	82,500
	Total	220,110

11.0 50-YEAR DREDGED MATERIAL MANAGEMENT PLAN EVALUATION AND SELECTION

11.1 DREDGED MATERIAL PLACEMENT PLAN

Deepening and widening Freeport Harbor to 55 by 600 feet, as well as the deepening and widening of the Stauffer Channel, will generate approximately 17.3 mcy of new work material and 175.9 mcy of additional maintenance material over the 50-year period of analysis. New work and maintenance dredged material from berthing areas outside of the Federal Channel (or any other non-Federal interest maintenance responsibilities) anticipated for placement in the placement sites for this project are insignificant when compared to the quantities associated with the Federal project and will not reduce the availability of the disposal facility for Federal navigation purposes; therefore, no additional non-Federal improvements to the placement sites are expected to be required to support containment of non-Federal interests dredged material. Approximately 680 acres of upland confined placement areas as well as one ocean dispersive site with unlimited capacity exist for development of a viable placement plan. Material will be placed in new upland sites and offshore sites.

To evaluate alternatives for placement of this material, existing placement areas were evaluated, along with a new area owned by the local Sponsor. Each alternative plan mixed possible placement methods to maximize potential beneficial uses while minimizing costs.

Each of these plans had similar concepts. No alternative other than upland confined placement was considered for the Main and Stauffer channels due to the availability of existing sites near this channel reach with sufficient capacity for the required maintenance as well as concerns about contaminants in this highly industrialized area. The close proximity of available land owned by the non-Federal sponsor made upland confined placement the least-cost option.

11.2 50-YEAR CAPACITY AND DREDGED MATERIAL MANAGEMENT PLAN

11.2.1 Environmental Restrictions Pertaining to Upland and Offshore Dredge Material Placement

11.2.1.1 Upland PA Water Quality

The upland PA levee designs include freeboard allowances that provide needed settling time of soil particles within effluent discharge material at the PA, promote lower levels of turbidity in fluids exiting the drop-outlet structures, and support efforts at meeting the legal/allowable turbidity levels. Development of levee height requirements on this project was based on an allowance of 3 feet of freeboard above the bulked dredge fill height for each dredging event.

Other factors may influence settling time including the discharge flow rate implemented by the dredging contractor. Specification language is added at the time contract plans and specifications are produced that provides additional restrictions on contractor dredging operations such that effluent concentrations at drop-outlet structure are within legal/allowable limits.

11.2.1.2 ODMDS

ODMDS areas were modeled using MDFATE (Multiple Disposal Fate) to analyze the effects of offshore placement to ensure conformance with fill-height restrictions on the bottom of the seafloor and other EPA criteria. The offshore dredge material quantities estimated for the tentatively Recommended Plan are shown in below Table 90.

11.2.2 Dredge Materials and Potential for Beneficial Use

Results from bed sediment studies (from the *Desktop Sediment Study for Freeport Project* generated by ERDC and H&H), for bed sediment data collected between September 1987 through May 2000, indicate the following average percentages of bed sediments have been encountered in the channel:

1. Outer Bar – About 82 percent fine-grained sediments (silts and clays) and 18 percent sands

2. Jetty Channel – About 86 percent fine-grained sediments (silts and clays) and 14 percent sands

3. Freeport Harbor Channel – About 95 percent fine-grained sediments (silts and clays) and 5 percent sands

A review of new work materials from boring data starting at the Upper Turning Basin on out to sea indicate about 80 to 90 percent clays (of primarily stiff consistency with some traces of silts or clayey silts) and about 10 to 20 percent sands of various densities.

Based on groundwork done in the Widening Project study by Freeport, which included considering applicability and functionality of material types for particular beneficial use features, cost effectiveness, permanence of features, and other considerations explored by the Widening Project DMMP workgroup, the decision was made by the Project Delivery Team on the USACE's Deepening and Widening project to forgo pursuit of beneficial use features in the final selected dredge material management plan.

11.3 50-YEAR CAPACITY AND DREDGE MATERIAL PLACEMENT DESIGNATION

Table 90 displays the breakout of new work from the channel and anticipated distribution to the PA sites. Table 91 displays the 50-year levee elevations required for capacity and the anticipated cyclical maintenance dredging of the Main Channel and Stauffer Channel. Foundation considerations and recommendations for use of the sites over the 50-year period of analysis are contained in the following paragraphs.

11.4 OCEAN DREDGE MATERIAL DISPOSAL SITES

EPA-designated ODMDSs exist approximately 5 miles south of the jetties (see Figure 18). The area contains both a New Work ODMDS and a Maintenance ODMDS. These are dispersive sites in the Gulf. The New Work ODMDS was previously designated for one-time use for placement of virgin clay material from the existing Freeport Harbor 45-foot Project. Coordination was conducted with EPA to determine the possibility for using the existing ODMDSs for placement needs of the proposed project. EPA granted its concurrence for using these sites for the Federal project in August 2008. Modeling was conducted for these sites, and it was determined that sufficient space exists for maintenance and new work material placement from both the non-Federal permit widening project and the proposed Federal project.

The Maintenance and New Work ODMDSs are about 1,291 acres and 2,236 acres, respectively, and located offshore within the following coordinates in NAD 83. Additional discussions about these sites can be found in the EIS document for this project.

1. Maintenance ODMDS Coordinates (NAD 83) are as follows:

   X = 3,163,694 Y = 13,530,298

   X = 3,166,836 Y = 13,527,077

   X = 3,157,888 Y = 13,518,349

   X = 3,154,745 Y = 13,521,570

2. New Work ODMDS Coordinates (NAD 83) are as follows:

   X = 3,169,494 Y = 13,516,802

   X = 3,174,571 Y = 13,511,584

   X = 3,164,981 Y = 13,502,254

   X = 3,159,904 Y = 13,507,472

Table 90 – Freeport Harbor Channel Improvement Project – Summary of New Work Dredging

Freeport Harbor Deepening & Widening – Summary of New Work Dredging										
Alternative	**Channel Reaches**	**Channel Reach Stationing**		**Required Quantity (cy)**	**Overdepth Quantity (cy)**	**Total Quantity (cy)**	**Dredging Stationing & Placement Site Designation**			**Quantity Breakdown to Placement Sites (cy)**
		To	**From**				**To**	**From**	**Site**	
NED	Future Channel Extension	–470+00	–300+00	2,000,000	670,000	2,670,000	–470+00	–300+00	ODMDS 1	17,957,454
	Outer Bar Channel	–300+00	00+00	9,800,000	1,300,000	11,100,000	–300+00	00+00		
	Jetty Channel	00+00	71+52	3,900,000	287,000	4,187,000	00+00	71+52		
	Lower Turn Basin	71+52	78+52	280,000	38,000	318,000	71+52	78+52	PA 8	2,087,559
	Ch to Brazosport & New 1,200-foot Brazosport TB	78+52	115+00	2,200,000	116,000	2,316,000	78+52	102+00		
							102+00	115+00	PA 9	3,122,987
	Ch from Brazosport TB	115+00	132+66	513,000	34,000	547,000	115+00	132+66		
	Ch to Upper TB & Upper TB	132+66	184+20	380,000	110,000	490,000	132+66	184+20		
	Stauffer Channel, Lower Stauffer TB	184+20	222+00	1,068,000	45,000	1,113,000	184+20	222+00		
	Stauffer Channel, Upper Staffer & TB	222+00	260+00	390,000	37,000	427,000	222+00	260+00		
	Total			**20,531,000**	**2,637,000**	**23,168,000**				**23,168,000**
LPP	Future Channel Extension	–370+00	–300+00	500,000	295,000	795,000	–470+00	–300+00	ODMDS 1	12,733,297
	Outer Bar Channel	–300+00	00+00	6,990,000	1,300,000	8,290,000	–300+00	00+00		
	Jetty Channel	00+00	71+52	3,345,000	303,000	3,648,000	00+00	71+52		
	Lower Turn Basin	71+52	78+52	170,000	38,000	208,000	71+52	78+52	PA 8	1,853,144
	Ch to Brazosport & New 1,200-foot Brazosport TB	78+52	115+00	1,600,000	116,000	1,716,000	78+52	105+20		
							105+20	115+00	PA 9	2,765,559
	Ch from Brazosport TB	115+00	132+66	357,000	34,000	391,000	115+00	132+66		
	Ch to Upper TB & Upper TB	132+66	184+20	380,000	110,000	490,000	132+66	184+20		
	Stauffer Channel, Lower Stauffer TB	184+20	222+00	1,340,000	47,000	1,387,000	184+20	222+00		
	Stauffer Channel, Upper Staffer & TB	222+00	260+00	390,000	37,000	427,000	222+00	260+00		
	Total			**15,072,000**	**2,280,000**	**17,352,000**				**17,352,000**

Table 91
Freeport Harbor Channel Improvement Project – Summary of Maintenance Dredging & Placement Area Parameters

Freeport Harbor Deepening & Widening - Summary of Maintenance Dredging & Placement Area Parameters

Altnernative	Channel Reaches	Channel Reach Stationing		Annual Shoaling Rate From Channel Reaches (CY)	Dredging Stationing & Placement Site Designation			Approximate Size of Placement Site (Ac)	Aprx. Existing Levee Elevation (ft in MLT)	1st Construction Lev. Elev. (ft in MLT)	Shaped NW Lev. Elev. (ft in MLT)	50-Year Levee Elev. (ft in MLT)	Annual Shoaling Rate to Placement Site (CY)	Years Per Cycle	Dredge Quantity Per Cycle (CY)	Total Number of Cycles	Total 50-Year Maintenance Dredging Quantity (cu yds)
		To	From		To	From	Site										
NED	NED Extension	-450+00	-300+00	1,044,448	-450+00	-300+00	ODMS 1A	1,291	NA	NA	NA	NA	3,472,580	1	3,472,580	50	173,628,985
	Entrance Bar Channel	-300+00	00+00	2,088,897	-300+00	00+00											
	Jetty Channel	00+00	71+52	316,289	00+00	71+52											
	Lower Turning Basin	71+52	78+52	22,946	71+52	78+52											
	Ch to Brzpt & Brzpt TB	78+52	115+52	142,181	78+52	90+20	PA 1	320	29.0	31.5	31.5	33.5	44,883	3	134,649	16	2,154,384
					90+20	115+52	PA 8	168	NA(1)	23.0	33.5	33.5	119,183	3	357,550	16	5,720,805
	Ch to Upper TB	115+52	132+66	57,889	115+52	122+00	PA 9	254	NA(1)	23.0	33.5	33.5	177,700	3	533,101	16	8,529,620
					122+00	132+66											
	Ch to UP TB & UP TB	132+66	184+20	141,697	132+66	184+20											
	Lower Stauffer TB	184+20	222+00	4,826	184+20	222+00							9,826	12	117,912	4	471,648
	Upper Staffer TB	222+00	260+00	5,000	222+00	260+00											
	Total			**3,824,173**									**3,824,173**				**190,505,443**
LPP	LPP Extension	-450+00	-300+00	873,159	-450+00	-300+00	ODMS 1A	1,291	NA	NA	NA	NA	3,188,339	1	3,188,339	50	159,416,960
	Entrance Bar Channel	-300+00	00+00	1,969,531	-300+00	00+00											
	Jetty Channel	00+00	71+52	324,554	00+00	71+52											
	Lower Turning Basin	71+52	78+52	21,095	71+52	78+52											
	Ch to Brzpt & Brzpt TB	78+52	115+52	132,400	78+52	89+10	PA 1	320	29.0	31.5	31.5	33.5	37,859	3	113,577	16	1,817,240
					89+10	115+52	PA 8	168	NA(1)	21.5	33.0	33.0	119,008	3	357,025	16	5,712,400
	Ch to Upper TB	115+52	132+66	53,220	115+52	123+40	PA 9	254	NA(1)	21.5	33.0	33.0	170,450	3	511,350	16	8,181,594
					123+40	132+66											
	Ch to UP TB & UP TB	132+66	184+20	141,697	132+66	184+20											
	Lower Stauffer TB	184+20	222+00	11,507	184+20	222+00							16,907	12	202,884	4	811,536
	Upper Staffer TB	222+00	260+00	5,400	222+00	260+00											
	Total			**3,532,564**									**3,532,564**				**175,939,729**

Notes:

1) For new PA 8 & 9, an existing ground elevation level of 5 feet MLT is assumed at start of project. Detailed elevation surveys will be performed during subsequent design phases of the project. The initial assumed elevation is anticipated to be on the upper end of the range of potential existing elevations at these new sites.

2) For materials designated to go offshore, approximately 1 million cubic yards per year falls within footprint of separate widening permit action being pursued by Port of Freeport.

In this plan, all of the new work material from the Outer Bar Channel portion of the proposed Federal channel was evaluated for placement offshore.

11.5 UPLAND CONFINED PLACEMENT PLAN

There are a number of existing upland confined sites at Freeport. The Freeport Harbor Project currently uses PA 1, a 330-acre site. Two other PAs, PA 2 and PA 3, are designated for use by GIWW dredging. An estimated additional 418 acres were needed for the proposed project.

In this plan, all of the material from the Main Channel (Lower Turning Basin to the Upper Turning Basin) and the Stauffer Channel is to be placed in upland confined sites, PAs 8 and 9.

11.5.1 Existing Placement Area 1

Existing PA 1 is located in Freeport about 0.5 mile south of SH 36 and about 1,000 feet east of the Brazos River Diversion Channel. It is estimated at approximately 320 acres in size, with about 20,310 linear feet of exterior perimeter levee, an assumed average interior elevation of 26 feet MLT, and assumed average levee elevation of 29 feet MLT. Assumed average elevations are based on anticipated elevations following the completion of O&M contract awarded in 2009.

11.5.2 New Placement Area 8

New PA 8 is located in Freeport just north of SH 36 and approximately 1,600 feet west of the Brazos River Diversion Channel. PA 8 is about 168 acres, with a perimeter length of about 11,480 linear feet, and assumed existing ground elevation around 5 feet MLT. As a currently undeveloped site, and given the proximity to the coast, an initial assumed elevation of 5 feet MLT is anticipated to be on the upper end of the range of potential existing elevations at the site.

11.5.3 New Placement Area 9

New PA 9 is located in Freeport just north of Old SH 36, and approximately 300 feet west of the Brazos River Diversion Channel. PA 9 is about 250 acres, with a perimeter length of about 14,000 linear feet, and assumed existing ground elevation around 5 feet MLT. With the proximity to the coast and fact that the land is undeveloped, this initial assumed elevation is anticipated to be on the upper end of the range of potential existing elevations at the site.

11.5.4 Verification of Placement Area Elevation Data

The above approximate elevations have been used by Geotechnical Engineering in the preliminary engineering calculations used to produce the cost estimates. During PED or subsequent design phases, the latest available survey data will be utilized and the engineering quantity estimates will be updated accordingly.

11.6 BENEFICIAL USE PLACEMENT PLAN

One of the main interests in the consideration of a 50-year DMMP is to maximize the use of suitable quality dredged material for beneficial purposes. In coordination with the resource agencies and the public, beneficial uses were investigated to determine the feasibility of implementation. Because of the unsuitability of the dredged material, the presence of sensitive resources at sites, and the prohibitive cost of placement at one site, no beneficial use plan was developed.

11.7 DREDGED MATERIAL MANAGEMENT PLAN

11.7.1 Outer Bar Channel – Stations –370+00 to 71+52.58

All material, both new work and maintenance, will be placed in offshore sites. All of these sites are unconfined, and no structural control will be utilized to contain material. At this time, there is not sufficient quantity of suitable material anticipated to be economically feasible for beneficial use. Deepening and widening of the channel will generate approximately 12.7 mcy of new work material and 175.9 mcy of maintenance material over the 50-year period of analysis.

11.7.2 Main Channel – Stations 71+52.58 to 184+20

Deepening and widening of the channel will generate approximately 2.8 mcy of new work material and 16 mcy of maintenance material over the 50-year period of analysis. New work material is largely made up of sandy clay while the maintenance material is expected to be composed of silt or sandy silt, which will be placed in confined upland PAs.

11.7.3 Stauffer Channel – Stations 184+20 to 256+00

Deepening and widening of Stauffer Channel will generate approximately 1.8 mcy of new work material and 1 mcy of maintenance material over the 50-year period of analysis. New work material generated from deepening and widening of the Stauffer Channel will be placed in a proposed new PA coordinated with the non-Federal sponsor. Due to the large clay component of the new work material, it will be used in the future to elevate the levees of the PA to contain future maintenance material.

(This page left blank intentionally.)

12.0 PLAN SELECTION, TENTATIVELY RECOMMENDED PLAN, AND PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

12.1 OVERVIEW

The previous chapters described the analyses conducted during the planning study process to identify the NED Plan and the LPP with the ultimate goal of identifying the tentatively Recommended Plan. The plan selected will be recommended for implementation to the U.S. Congress. The tentatively Recommended Plan addresses the problems and opportunities identified at the beginning of the study and satisfies the planning objectives of increasing navigation efficiency and reliability along the Freeport Harbor Channel while maintaining or enhancing terrestrial, cultural, estuarine, and coastal resources within the project area.

The tentatively Recommended Plan is the LPP, the plan preferred by the Sponsor. The tentatively Recommended Plan, described below, calls for a 55-foot-deep by 600-foot-wide channel. The current discount rate of 4.375 percent was used, and the period of analysis is 50 years.

12.2 RISK AND UNCERTAINTY

Risk and uncertainty is an important part of the USACE planning process and feasibility analyses. The "Economic and Environmental Principles for Water and Related Land Resources Implementation Studies," established pursuant to WRDA 65 (PL 89-80), as amended (42 United States Code [USC] 1962, a-2 and d-1), requires that areas of risk and uncertainty be identified and clearly described so that public investment decisions can be made by the degree of reliability of estimated costs, benefits, and effectiveness of alternative plans. This approach captures and quantifies the extent of risk and uncertainty in the various planning and design components of a project. The total effect of risk and uncertainty on the project's design and viability can be examined and conscious decisions made reflecting an explicit trade-off between risks and costs.

More recently, risk-informed decision-making has been emphasized as one of the four major themes in the USACE Actions for Change. This policy, developed from analyses done by the Interagency Performance Evaluation Taskforce in the aftermath of Hurricane Katrina, pointed to the need for organizational changes to transform USACE priorities, processes, and planning in an effort to improve public safety and USACE infrastructure. USACE has committed to developing and employing risk- and reliability-based approaches that evaluate the consequences of design, construction, and management decisions, especially as they affect risks to human health and safety.

Risk and uncertainty arise from measurement errors and the underlying variability of complex natural, social, and economic situations. Plans may be subject to measurement errors if the data

are imperfect or the analytical tools are crude. Some future demographic, economic, or navigational uses are essentially unpredictable because they are subject to random influences. However, in some cases, the randomness can be approximated by developing a probability distribution using a historical database that is applicable to the future. If there is no such historical data base, the probability distribution of random future events can be described subjectively, based on best-available insight and judgment (ER 1105-2-100, E-4.a(3)). The latter case could also be applied to situations in which there is uncertainty as to whether historical conditions can be reliably applied to the future. Such is likely the case with environmental parameters affected by global warming, such as sea level rise. None of the historical databases in use today can reliably be used to predict future conditions in which the rates of change are clearly diverging from historical precedents (Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change [IPCC], 2007).

A variety of specific technical terms and concepts that are employed in risk and uncertainty analysis are described below:

- "Risk" is the probability that a hazardous outcome will occur as a consequence of uncertainty. It is "conventionally defined as those (situations) in which the potential outcome can be described in reasonably well known probability distribution" (ER 1105-2-100, E-4.a.(1)). These distributions are generally based upon well-established, empirical data (historical or experimental). The best-known examples of this concept are applied in flood risk management projects.
- "Uncertainty" is a measure of imprecision of knowledge of parameters and functions used to describe the hydraulic, geotechnical, ecological, and economic aspects of a project. "In situations of uncertainty, potential outcomes cannot be described in objectively known probability distributions. . . . Because there are no known probability distributions to describe uncertain outcomes, uncertainty is substantially more difficult to analyze than risk" (ER 1105-2-100, E-4.a.(2)).
- "Risk-based analysis" is defined as "an approach to evaluation and decision-making that explicitly . . . incorporates consideration of risk and uncertainty to compare plans in terms of likelihood and variability of physical performance, economic success and residual risk" (ER 1105-2-100, 2-4.g). Analytical evaluation is sometimes restricted by a lack of data and understanding of biological and physical processes, effectively limiting risk considerations to more-subjective comparisons.
- "Sensitivity analysis" is a technique that varies assumptions of economic, demographic, environmental, and other factors and examines the effects of varying these assumptions on outcomes of benefits and costs (ER 1105-2-100, E-4.b.(1)(b)(6)).
- "Residual risk" is a concept best understood in relation to flood risk management studies. However, for navigation studies, one type of residual risk might be risk that benefits are foregone to those situations where LPPs are selected over the NED, such as in this study.

12.2.1 Uncertainty in Technical Evaluations

Forecasting future scenarios is an important part of the USACE planning process. In order to evaluate the risks and benefits of alternatives over the period of analysis, a forecast is created based on historical and existing information, as well as quantitative and qualitative assumptions about what may happen within the Study Area in the future. One method is to identify the "most likely" future or the best guess about what may happen based on observed variables and assumptions of both natural and human behavior. Another method is to conduct scenario planning, where multiple future scenarios are created in order to evaluate what would happen if observed variables or assumptions do not happen as projected. Scenario planning attempts to answer the "what if" questions that arise when making forecasting assumptions and predictions. For the Freeport Harbor Feasibility, the "most likely future" method was chosen due to project scope.

12.2.1.1 Engineering Data and Models

After the identification of the most likely future without-project scenario for the Freeport Harbor Channel, the next step was the evaluation of alternatives using Hydrology and Hydraulics (H&H) models and economic models. H&H models included RMA-2 and TABS MD numerical hydrodynamic models, ADCIRC and GENESIS.

The primary objective of the hydrodynamic model studies was to provide accurate and representative current velocity fields for use in the ship simulator for the navigation study. The secondary objective was the development of a tool that was used to evaluate the general impacts of the design alternative improvements on circulation in the harbor. Field data were collected for the hydrodynamic models. The study developed a numerical hydrodynamic model using the TABS-MD modeling system with the Surface-water Modeling System as the graphical user interface. The computational mesh was designed to capture all of the major details of the existing and proposed design alternatives. This study takes into account the proposed LNG terminal.

The numerical model was verified to the field data. The verification was performed by comparing the model to observed water surface elevation fluctuations and to current velocity variations. After the model was verified, the computation mesh was revised to reflect the two design alternatives. The model was then run for the verification period with each of the two alternatives. The simulations were examined for extreme maximum flood and ebb currents, and those conditions were provided to the ship simulator for incorporation into the navigation study. The results showed that the numerical model was reasonably verified against field observations to make it a valuable tool in the evaluation of circulation effects associated with the design alternatives.

A cursory-level numerical study was conducted to determine whether the planned improvements to the channel will make Freeport Harbor and adjacent, low-lying areas more susceptible to inundation due to hurricane-induced storm surge. The improvements modeled was the 60-x-600-foot channel with a 1,350-foot Brazosport Turning Basin, which removes a portion of the southeastern peninsula (North Wave Barrier) that separates the GIWW from the harbor proper, and the proposed LNG improvements. The existing ADCIRC model that was developed for a coastal erosion study was adapted to depict the planned harbor configuration. Hurricanes selected for simulation were based on the September 1941 hurricane and Hurricane Fern, which impacted the Texas coast in September 1971. These hurricanes were selected because both came within close proximity to the study area and produced relatively high surges. The model found little change in peak water-surface elevations within the harbor resulting from the planned improvements. Estimated increases were about 0.16 foot. Consequently, the planned harbor improvements do not appear to make the harbor and adjacent low-lying areas more susceptible to storm surge from less-intense hurricanes.

A shoreline impact study was conducted to assess the wave-induced impacts of the proposed deepening of the Freeport Channel in the Gulf of Mexico on the open-coastal shorelines adjacent to the project area. This study used the numerical model GENESIS to compute sediment transport rates and shoreline change rates for each of the four proposed channels. Comparing the GENESIS output for the existing condition with the proposed channels output revealed the effects of the bathymetry changes on the wave-induced longshore transport and the shoreline change rate. Breaker wave heights and angle inputs to GENESIS were obtained from the numerical wave propagation and refraction model, STWAVE. STWAVE modeled the refraction over the different bathymetry grids corresponding to the existing and proposed channels. Texas shoreline change rates have been calculated by the Bureau of Economic Geology. Their change rates were obtained using a regression analysis of the available shorelines. Their analysis shows that in the vicinity of Freeport Harbor, the shoreline is eroding at a rate of 9 to 10 feet per year (ft/yr). Five to 6 miles northeast of the harbor, the shoreline is shown to be stable, and farther northeast it again becomes erosional. Between the Brazos and the San Bernard River mouths, the shoreline is very dynamic, with strong erosional and accretional regions. The conclusion from this analysis is that if any of the proposed deepening alternatives for the Freeport Outer Bar Channel are constructed, the wave-induced sediment transport impacts on the adjacent shorelines will be so slight as to not be noticeable and will be dwarfed by the interannual variability in shoreline position.

12.2.1.2 Economic Analysis

Economic analysis were based on the existing traffic base and vessel utilization. Traffic forecasts were projected for the “most likely” scenario. Project alternatives were evaluated and benefit calculations made. Transportation savings benefits were established and benefit-cost analysis was conducted.

Sensitivities were conducted initially based on excluding benefits for petroleum and chemical product and on redistribution of container cargo by alternative vessel sizes. A second range of sensitivities assumed that there would be transitions to larger crude petroleum tankers. An additional scenario was prepared evaluating the combined effect of lightering for various ranges of West Africa crude and the continued use of Aframax tankers instead of Suezmax tankers for the Mexico and Venezuela crude.

12.3 SENSITIVITY OF PROJECT ALTERNATIVES TO RELATIVE SEA LEVEL RISE

Sea level rise can affect coastal communities and habitats in a variety of different ways, including submerging low-lying lands, eroding beaches, converting wetlands to open water, intensifying coastal flooding, and increasing the salinity of estuaries and freshwater aquifers. It is caused by a number of natural and human-induced factors and can vary by region. Some impacts of sea level rise can already be observed along the U.S. coast. The primary causes of global sea level rise are the expansion of ocean water due to warming and the melting of glaciers and ice sheets. Locally, sea level rise is also influenced by changes to the geology of coastal land.

RSLR consists of two components: global (eustatic) sea level rise and local subsidence. The uncertainty inherent in the rates of eustatic sea level rise is evident in the variability of the different modeled rates given for the National Research Council (NRC, 1987) projections and the IPCC (2007). A similar degree of uncertainty exists with the rate of local subsidence.

Recent USACE guidance (EC 1165-2-211, July 2009) provides direction for incorporating the direct and indirect physical effects of projected future sea level change in managing, planning, engineering, designing, constructing, operating, and maintaining USACE projects and systems of projects. Recent climate research by the IPCC predicts continued or accelerated global warming for the twenty-first century and possibly beyond, which will cause a continued or accelerated rise in global mean sea level. Impacts to coastal and estuarine zones caused by sea level change must be considered in all phases of Civil Works programs.

In order to meet the requirements of EC 1165-2-211, the sensitivity of project alternatives to potential future without-project changes in sea level must be evaluated. The range of RSLR was determined using both tide gage and basal peat data for the local subsidence component of RSLR. Tide gage data reflect the effects of recent historical subsidence.

The recent historic rate of local RSLR extracted from the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) tide gage at Freeport, Texas, is 0.0143 ft/yr, for the 52-year period between 1954 and 2006 (NOAA, 2006). Data originated by the NRC (1987) and modified by IPCC (2007) assume a historic eustatic rate equal to the globally averaged rate, which is 1.7 mm/year (0.0056 ft/yr). Subtracting the historic eustatic rate from the local RSLR rate yields an estimated observed subsidence rate of 2.65 mm/yr (0.0087 ft/yr) for the Freeport area.

To date, however, there is no scientific consensus concerning the projection of future subsidence rates in the Texas and Louisiana coastal region. The relative influence of historic anthropogenic activities in this area (e.g., oil and gas withdrawal) is difficult to quantify. If these activities contributed significantly to recent observations of subsidence, then significant reductions or cessation of these activities may result in rapid deceleration of subsidence rates, returning them to long-term average rates.

Several studies of basal peat layers have been conducted in the Texas and Louisiana coastal region to determine estimates of the long-term average rates of subsidence. These rates are generally on the order to 0.5 mm/yr (0.0016 ft/yr) (Törnqvist et al., 2006). This rate is significantly lower than the observed tide gage rates. Therefore, if historic anthropogenic activities are largely responsible for the accelerated rates observed in the tide records, then we would expect the projected rates to decelerate rapidly over the next several decades.

Deriving RSLR estimates using both basal peat and tide gage data, possible RSLR rates were estimated for a 50-year project life (the period from 2012 to 2062) to range from 0.36 to 2.40 feet. Possible low (historic), intermediate, and high RSLR rates are given for subsidence values that correspond to both the observed tidal gage values (rapid subsidence), and the observed basal peat values (moderate subsidence) and are as follows:

- 0.71 foot, Low (216 mm/yr), based on tide gage subsidence rates
- 0.36 foot, Low (109.7 mm/yr), based on basal peat subsidence rates
- 1.11 feet, Intermediate (338 mm/yr), based on tide gage subsidence rates
- 0.76 foot, Intermediate (232 mm/year), based on basal peat subsidence rates
- 2.40 feet, High (732 mm/yr), based on tide gage subsidence rates
- 2.04 feet, High (662 mm/yr), based on basal peat subsidence rates

RSLR rates for the project area are discussed in greater detail in Appendix L of the DEIS.

The most apparent potential for RSLR impacts in the Freeport Harbor project area includes impacts on wetlands and other sensitive low-lying areas due to higher water levels, impacts on vessel navigation due to changes in current velocities in the area, and impacts on surge levels. These potential impacts are examined in Section 4, Environmental Consequences, of the DEIS..

12.3.1 Projected Relative Sea Level Rise Impacts for the Project Area

The potential for RSLR impacts in the Freeport Harbor project area includes impacts on wetlands and other sensitive low-lying areas due to higher water levels, impacts on vessel traffic due to changes in current velocities in the area, and impacts on surge levels.

In general, the functioning of the navigation features associated with all alternatives (channel depths of 55 through 60 feet, turning basins, PAs, and ODMDSs) would be insignificantly affected by the full range of potential sea level change. Upland confined PAs and mitigation features are located at sufficiently high elevations to withstand the full range of potential RSLR. The following discussion describes possible ways that RSLR might affect the project alternatives.

Numerical modeling performed for the proposed project shows that implementation of the NED or LPP, Plan 4 and Plan 5 would result in changes in the velocities in the harbor, the tides in the harbor, and the surge values. The depth-averaged velocities in the harbor show, for both plans, a decrease in peak ebb and flood velocities of from 0.0 to 0.18 foot per second (ft/sec) (5.4 centimeters per second [cm/sec]), the decrease becoming less moving upstream into the harbor. The two plans produce tidal results that are essentially identical. Tidal differences include advancement of the flood and ebb tides by approximately 30 minutes in this diurnal system, and an increase in the mean tide range of about 0.3 percent, or 0.01 foot (0.2 centimeter [cm]). The surge values for the plans are about 0.16 foot (5 cm) higher with the plans than without them.

These differences in tidal velocities, tidal timing and tide range, and surge are the result of physical changes to the system in the plans. The plan changes are of two types. One change involves an increase in the area of the harbor through the removal of parts of the southwest peninsula separating the harbor from the GIWW; the other change is the deepening and widening of the channels.

Both types of changes tend to increase the coupling of the harbor to the Gulf. The excavation of portions of the southwest peninsula will increase the tidal prism of the harbor by about 0.05 percent. This increased tidal prism results in more water moving into and out of the system during each tidal cycle. Since more water is entering and leaving the system during each tidal cycle, peak velocities are expected to increase as a result. Deepening and widening of the jetty channel and the inner basin also result in a stronger coupling between the Gulf and the harbor. This deepening and widening of the harbor results in increases in the volume of the harbor of from 5.8 percent (Plan 5) to 6.4 percent (Plan 4). The increased cross-sectional area for the water to flow into the system will result in decreased peak velocities. Detailed numerical modeling shows that the net effect of these competing processes is to lower the peak velocities, up to 0.18 ft/sec (5.4 cm/sec), in the harbor, as one would expect from the relative size of the effects. With the projected RSLR, the system is, in effect, deepened from 0.36 foot (11.0 cm) to 2.4 feet (73.2 cm), depending on the sea level rise and subsidence scenario. This additional “deepening” will result in further, though slight, decreases in peak velocities by further increasing the cross section of the channel.

The increased coupling also affects the tide. The advancement of the timing of the tide means that, with the deeper and wider channel, the tide can move into and out of the harbor more easily,

and thus, the timing of the tide will change. Deepening of this type generally also causes an increase in the tide range inside a waterway; the range of the driving Gulf tide is diminished less as it experiences relatively less friction, due to the deeper water, as it travels up into the system. In this case, however, the system in its existing condition is already well coupled to the Gulf, as evidenced by the similarity of the tides in the jetties to those in the harbor. Given the lack of resonant behavior in the short channel (about 3 miles [5 kilometers]) from jetties to the end of the deepened portion of the channel), only small increases in the tide range, predicted to be about 0.3 percent, or 0.01 foot (0.2 cm) for a mean tide of 1.64 feet (50 cm), can be expected with further deepening and widening. Again, with the projected RSLR for this system, no additional increase in tidal range is expected since the incremental change, due to RSLR, decreases the relative differences between the Base and Plan conditions.

The increased coupling due to the project also affects the surge, increasing the surge levels by about 0.16 foot (5 cm) locally. The percent differences of water level in the system between the with-project and without-project cases for RSLR of 0.36 foot (11.0 cm) to 2.4 feet (73.2 cm) will be smaller than without RSLR. The differences in surge height are thus expected to be less, as well. Additionally, the effects of increased surge due to the project are local, and given the general inundation of the greater Freeport area during a significant surge, the additional water elevation due to the project, with or without RSLR, is expected to be small.

Given the above discussion, impacts on wetlands in the Freeport Harbor are thus expected to be negligible for two reasons. First, there are no wetlands in the footprint of the channel system. Second, changes in tidal range are expected to be small and difficult to measure, residing in the millimeter range. Since Freeport Harbor is a highly developed industrial area with no wetlands or other marshes, water level changes due to RSLR will have an effect on the harbor similar to that of a deepening. As seen in the modeling and an examination of the tide data, the harbor is already, at current depths and cross sections, closely coupled to the Gulf so that any further increases in depth will result in very small increases in tide range. Thus, RSLR is expected to result in an insignificant difference between the existing channel conditions and the plans.

Impacts on navigation are also expected to be negligible, with currents likely decreasing, with RSLR, even further from the decreases expected with the project. RSLR, serving in this case as essentially a deepening, means that an even larger effective cross-sectional area will be available for the flooding and ebbing tides, and that the peak velocities will decrease further. Hence, RSLR is expected to cause an insignificant difference between the existing channel and the plans.

Finally, impact differences on the surge levels due to the project, with and without RSLR, are expected to be very small and local.

12.4 DESCRIPTION OF TENTATIVELY RECOMMENDED PLAN

Based on the economic, engineering, and environmental factors considered, the tentatively Recommended Plan (LPP) (authorized depths) includes deepening of the Outer Bar Channel from the jetties into the Gulf of Mexico to –57 feet MLT; deepening from the end of the jetties in the Gulf of Mexico to the Lower Turning Basin to –55 feet MLT; widening of the Outer Bar Channel reach to 600 feet; deepening from the Lower Turning Basin to Sta. 132+66 (ConocoPhillips dock area, above 1,200-foot Brazosport Turning Basin) to –55 feet; deepening of Freeport Harbor from Sta. 132+66 through the Upper Turning Basin to –50 feet (although the benefits would continue to increase, Port Freeport did not consider that the depth over –50 feet was needed); deepening and widening the lower 3,700 feet of the Stauffer Channel at a depth of –50 feet MLT and 300 feet wide; and dredging the remainder of the Stauffer Channel to a depth of 25 feet, in lieu of restoring it to its previously authorized dimensions of 30 feet by 200 feet. Depths shown exclude advance maintenance and allowable over-depth. It is estimated that the approximately 17.3 mcy of new work material (including advance maintenance and allowable over-depth) would require eight separate dredging contracts to complete. The work is estimated to begin in 2012 and be complete by 2018. Dredged material management will be performed according to the DMMP.

12.5 GENERAL NAVIGATION FEATURES OF THE TENTATIVELY RECOMMENDED PLAN

Dredging of the Freeport Harbor Channel will include 2 feet of advanced maintenance below designated depths to ensure safe vessel passage. In addition, the Outer Bar Channel will include an additional 2 feet of dredging to account for the high wave environment offshore, outside the jetties.

12.5.1 Outer Bar/Jetty Channel

The Outer Bar/Jetty Channel is defined as that portion of Freeport Harbor extending from Station –370+00 in the Gulf of Mexico to Station 71+52 in the Lower Turning Basin. It is 600 feet wide and protected on two sides by jetties. The land-locked portion of the Outer Bar/Jetty Channel would be deepened to –57 feet. This would be modified in the portion of the channel that enters the open waters of the Gulf. This segment will be dredged to a –59-foot depth. The existing channel will be extended approximately 5,000 feet into the Gulf in order to reach the –59-foot contour. No modifications to the existing Freeport Harbor jetties are required by the proposed project. The Outer Bar/Jetty Channel will be constructed by hopper dredge beginning at the Lower Turning Basin and extending into the Gulf of Mexico to the –59-foot contour at the same bearing as the existing channel. New channel markers will be required to mark the new channel.

12.5.2 Main Channel

The Main Channel portion of Freeport Harbor extends from Station 71+52 in the Lower Turning Basin to the Upper Turning Basin. This segment will be deepened from an authorized depth of –45 feet to –55 feet. From Station 132+66 to Station 184+20 at the Upper Turning Basin, the channel will be deepened to –52 feet. Based on the ERDC's Ship Simulation Report, the recommended width for this portion of the channel is 400 feet. The Main Channel will be constructed by hydraulic pipeline dredge, with the dredged material going to new PAs 8 and 9. The Lower Turning Basin will maintain its existing 750-foot diameter and be deepened to –57 feet. The Brazosport Turning Basin will be enlarged from its existing 1,000-foot diameter to a new 1,200-foot diameter. The Upper Turning Bain will maintain its existing 1,200-foot diameter and be deepened to –52 feet.

12.5.3 Stauffer Channel

The Stauffer Channel will be deepened to –50 feet and widened to 300 feet for approximately 3,700 feet beyond its confluence with the Upper Turning Basin. The remaining channel will be deepened to a depth of –27 feet and 200-foot width to the Stauffer Turning Basin.

Because of the relationship between the deepening and widening of the Stauffer Channel of the existing Federal project and the proposed terminal, Port Freeport must initiate construction of the terminal facilities prior to, or concurrent with, construction of the Stauffer Channel improvements. Port Freeport will be responsible for obtaining the necessary permits required for the container terminal under Section 404 of the CWA, Section 10 of the RHA, and/or any other applicable jurisdictions as appropriate utilizing the procedures described by NEPA.

Table 92 displays the tentatively Recommended Plan dimensions. A breakdown of the channel reaches and what PA is designated is shown in Tables 90 and 91.

12.5.4 Lands, Easements, and Rights-of-Way

Port Freeport is required to furnish the lands, easements, rights-of-way, and relocations (LERRs) for the proposed cost-shared project. The real estate requirements must support construction as well as O&M of the project after completion. Specific details of the real estate requirements can be found in the Real Estate Plan, Appendix C of this document.

Table 92
Proposed Freeport Channel Dimensions for Tentatively Recommended Plan

Channel Section	Required Depth[1] (feet)	Width (feet)	New Work Quality (cy)[2]
Future Channel Extension (Sta –300+00 to Stat –370+00)	59	600	795,000
Outer Bar Channel (Sta 0+00 to Sta –300+00)	59	600	8,290,000
Jetty Channel (Sta 0+00 to Sta 71+52.58	57	600	3,648,000
Lower Turning Basin (Sta 71+52 to Sta 78+52	57	existing	208,000
Channel to Brazosport and New 1,200-foot Turning Basin (Sta 78+52 to Sta 115+00)	57	existing	2,916,000
Channel to Upper Turning Basin (Sta 115+00 to Sta 132+66)	57	existing	391,000
Channel to Upper Turning Basin and Turning Basin (Sta 132+66 to Sta 184+20	52	existing	490,000
Stauffer Channel – Lower Reach (Sta 184+20 to Sta 222+00)	52	300	1,387,000
Stauffer Channel – Upper Reach (Sta 222+00 to Sta 260+00)	27	200	427,000

[1] Includes Advance Maintenance (2 foot)
[2] Includes Allowable Over-depth

12.5.5 Facility Removals/Deep-Draft Utility Relocations

The USACE currently requires pipelines located below deep-draft navigation channels be buried 20 feet below the authorized project depth of the channel (SWGOM 1145-2-15). This requirement was developed taking into consideration several factors, including geotechnical, hydraulic, navigation, maintenance dredging, and pipeline placement method considerations. Exceptions to this requirement can be granted on a case-by-case basis.

During the feasibility phase, one pipeline was identified for further consideration. However, surveys were conducted on the pipeline and it was found to have adequate coverage for the project. Therefore, no removals or relocations are required.

12.5.6 Regional Sediment Management

Section 2037 of WRDA 07 amended Section 204 of WRDA 92 dealing with regional sediment management. Section 204 states that a regional sediment management plan shall be developed by the Secretary of the Army for sediment obtained through the construction, operation, or maintenance of an authorized Federal water resources project. The purposes of using sediment for the construction, repair, modification, or rehabilitation of Federal water resource projects are to reduce storm damage to property; to protect, restore, and create aquatic and ecologically related habitats, including wetlands; and to transport and place suitable sediment.

During the non-Federal sponsor's Section 204(f) Assumption of Maintenance study, beneficial use of the dredged material was investigated. The study, not a part of the Federal feasibility study, concluded that use of material for any use in marshland or wetland restoration was not beneficial or cost effective. However, it was determined that there was a sand lens in the area to be widened that could be harvested for placement on the beach at Quintana. The non-Federal sponsor widening project is to place an estimated 300,000 cy of material on the Quintana beach area.

During the feasibility study, no suitable material could be found for beneficial use. Therefore, no regional sediment management plan was developed.

12.6 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

12.6.1 Division of Plan Responsibilities and Cost-Sharing Requirements

The non-Federal cost-sharing project cost sharing for the General Navigation Features for the tentatively Recommended Plan will be as follows:

1. 10 percent of the costs attributable to dredging to a depth not in excess of 20 feet; plus

2. 25 percent of the costs attributable to dredging to a depth in excess of 20 feet, but not in excess of 45 feet; plus

3. 50 percent of the costs attributable to dredging to a depth in excess of 45 feet;

4. Pay with interest, over a period not to exceed 30 years following completion of the period of construction of the project, up to an additional 10 percent of the total cost of construction of general navigation features. The value of lands, easements, rights-of-way, relocations, and deep-draft utility relocations provided by the non-Federal sponsor for the general navigation features may be credited toward this required payment.

Project cost sharing for the maintenance of the General Navigation Features will be as follows:

1. The non-Federal sponsor will provide 50 percent of the excess cost of O&M of the project over that cost that the Secretary determines would be incurred for O&M if the project had a depth of 45 feet.

2. The Federal share of O&M of General Navigation Features of less than 45 feet is 100 percent.

3. The costs of disposal facilities for O&M are shared as General Navigation Features.

12.7 COSTS FOR THE TENTATIVELY RECOMMENDED PLAN

The project cost for the tentatively Recommended Plan is $308,700,000, as shown in Table 93. Costs include implementation costs and associated costs. Implementation costs include postauthorization planning and design costs, construction costs, construction contingency costs, and O&M costs. Construction costs include costs for dredging and placement area construction. Costs for fish and wildlife mitigation are also included. No cultural resource mitigation costs are expected at this time. A programmatic agreement is in effect for any cultural resource mitigation, if required at a later date. Associated costs are the costs of resources directly required for project construction, but for which no project expenditure is made, such as USCG navigation aids, estimated at $113,000. Construction General funding will fund Federal share of all project construction.

Table 93
Tentatively Recommended Plan Cost
Comparison of Costs (rounded)

Cost Account	Item Description	First Cost (Oct 09 Price Level)	Fully Funded Cost (Oct 09 Price Level)
Federal Construction Cost			
01	Lands & Damages	77,000	78,000
06	Fish & Wildlife Facilities	124,000	135,000
12	Navigation Ports & Harbors	205,304,000	219,242,000
30	Planning, Engineering & Design	28,644,000	32,640,000
31	Construction Management	18,213,000	19,424,000
Federal Construction		**252,362,000**	**271,519,000**
Non-Federal (LERs/Facilities) Cost			
01	Lands & Damages	1,751,000	1,815,000
02	Relocations	-0-	-0-
12	Navigation Ports & Harbors	54,587,000	57,965,000
30	Planning, Engineering & Design		3,053,000
Non-Federal Construction		**56,338,000**	**62,833,000**
Total Navigation Costs		**308,700,000**	**334,352,000**

Project costs and price escalation (calculated by estimating the midpoint of the proposed contracts) are combined to create the Fully Funded Cost. The Fully Funded Cost for all project components is separated into expected non-Federal and Federal cost shares and detailed in Table 94.

Table 94
Cost Apportionment

Cost Apportionment Navigation	First Cost	Fully Funded Cost
Federal Navigation:		
Freeport Channel	147,560,000	159,863,600
Lower Stauffer Channel	6,307,000	6,832,900
Upper Stauffer Channel	1,877,500	2,034,000
Lands & Damages	77,000	78,000
Less non-Federal 10% Cash Contribution	(30,687,000)	(33,246,000)
Total Federal Navigation	**125,134,500**	**135,562,500**
non-Federal Navigation		
Freeport Channel	147,560,000	159,863,600
Lower Stauffer Channel	2,652,900	2,874,100
Upper Stauffer Channel	490,600	531,400
Difference – NED vs. LPP (Lower Stauffer)	424,000	459,400
Land & Damages	1,751,000	1,815,000
non-Federal 10% Cash Contribution	30,687,000	33,246,000
Total non-Federal Navigation	**183,565,500**	**198,789,500**
Total Navigation	**308,700,000**	**334,352,000**

The maintenance of project features will be funded through annual appropriations of the O&M program. The actual amounts will vary on a year-to-year basis because of variability in the volume of material removed during each dredging cycle and the variability of the cycles. Costs for maintenance of the Freeport Harbor Project will be in accordance with Section 101(b) of WRDA 86 (Planning Guidance Letter [PGL] 47, Cost Sharing for Dredged Material Disposal Facilities and Dredged Material Disposal Facility Partnerships), which allocates costs for maintenance of channel depths below 45 feet as 50 percent non-Federal and 50 percent Federal.

Additional PA capacity for the tentatively Recommended Plan will be constructed regularly over the 50-year period of analysis in conjunction with maintenance dredging cycles. Costs for disposal facility maintenance associated with the project will be allocated as 50 percent non-Federal and 50 percent Federal for depths over 45 feet and 75 percent non-Federal/25 percent Federal for depths less than 45 feet (Upper Stauffer Channel).

The USCG is responsible for aids to navigation, and the cost is allocated as a Federal expense because the installation of new navigation aids on the Outer Bar Channel Extension and the Outer Bar Channel is related to deepening and widening and the replacement of navigation aids on the channel.

12.8 COST-SHARING ALLOCATION

The project cost for determining the cost-sharing requirements is based on the fully funded cost estimate. This differs from the cost estimate that was utilized for the economic analysis that determined project benefits and the BCR.

General navigation features (GNF) costs for deepening greater than 45 feet are cost shared at 50 percent non-Federal and 50 percent Federal. GNF costs for deepening less than 45 feet are cost shared at 75 percent non-Federal and 25 percent Federal. The costs are separated into expected Federal and non-Federal shares and detailed in Table 94. Fish and wildlife mitigation is considered a GNF and is cost shared in the same manner as other GNF costs. Should cultural resources data recovery be needed at a later date, it would be handled in accordance with PL 93-291 (Section 7), e.g., data recovery costs would be 100 percent Federal up to 1 percent of the total amount appropriated for the project. For the Lower Stauffer Channel, the NED plan is 45 feet. Table 95 displays the project cost apportionment. The non-Federal sponsor has chosen to use 50-foot depth for the Lower Stauffer Channel and will pay the incremental cost difference between the two plans.

Non-Federal costs include Sponsor, pipeline owner, and berthing/dock owner costs. The Sponsor is responsible for 100 percent of LERRs. All project construction is on lands that are currently owned by the non-Federal sponsor. Pipeline relocations are defined as “deep-draft utility relocations” pursuant to PGL 44. No pipeline relocations are anticipated. Owners of berth and dock facilities that require modification in conjunction with the project would be responsible for 100 percent of those associated costs. Berth deepening and structural modifications will be incurred and are included in the project cost. The USCG is responsible for 100 percent of the cost of aids to navigation.

A cost break-out for the Lower Stauffer Channel is shown in Table 95.

12.9 ADDITIONAL NON-FEDERAL SPONSOR CASH CONTRIBUTION

Section 101 of PL 99-662 requires for all navigation channel depths that the non-Federal sponsor must provide an additional cash contribution equal to 10 percent of fully funded GNF costs (minus costs for LERRs). These costs may be paid over a period not to exceed 30 years.

12.10 NON-FEDERAL SPONSOR VIEWS

The non-Federal sponsor for the existing project, Port Freeport, has actively participated in the entire planning process. Their primary concern has been to provide the community with a channel design, preferably 55 feet deep in the Main Channel and 50 feet in the Lower Stauffer Channel, to increase navigation efficiency and safety. Port Freeport is supportive of the

tentatively Recommended Plan, the LPP, and has indicated a strong interest in beginning construction as soon as possible.

Table 95
Lower Stauffer Channel
Freeport Harbor, Texas – Channel Improvement Project –
Cost Apportionment for NED and LPP and Adjustment for Sponsor of the LPP over the NED (all cost shown at October 2009 prices)

Feature	Quantity (cy)	Federal Cost	non-Federal Cost	Total Cost
Cost Apportionment of National Economic Development Plan				
18- to 20-foot depth	30,500	153,900	17,100	171,000
20- to 45-foot depth	1,082,500	4,552,500	1,517,500	6,070,000
Over 45-foot depth	NA	NA	NA	NA
Lands and Damages		0	0	0
Const/L&D Subtotal		4,706,400	1,534,600	6,241,000
Planning, Engineering & Design		724,700	236,400	961,100
Construction Management		461,200	150,400	611,600
Subtotal		5,892,300	1,921,400	7,813,700
10% of GNF Additional Cash Requirement		-781,370	781,370	0
Total Apportionment		5,110,930	2,702,770	7,813,700
Cost Apportionment of Locally Preferred Plan				
18- to 20-foot depth	30,500	153,900	17,100	171,000
20- to 45-foot depth	1,082,500	4,552,500	1,517,500	6,070,000
Over 45-foot depth	274,000	728,000	728,000	1,456,000
Lands and Damages		0	0	0
Const/L&D Subtotal		5,434,400	2,262,600	7,697,000
Planning, Engineering & Design		782,700	325,900	1,108,600
Construction Management		498,100	207,400	705,500
Subtotal		6,715,200	2,795,900	9,511,100
10% of GNF Additional Cash Requirement		-951,110	951,110	0
Total Apportionment		5,764,090	3,747,010	9,511,100
Adjustment to LPP to achieve USACE contribution at NED level		–653,160	653,160	0
	TOTAL:	5,110,930	4,400,170	

NOTE: Federal Feasibility Phase cost of $3,614,900 and Reconnaissance cost of $125,000 is for the overall project currently estimated at $318 million

12.11 TENTATIVELY RECOMMENDED PLAN AND RECENT USACE INITIATIVES

As stated earlier, the USACE has implemented the USACE Campaign Plan over the past few years. These initiatives were developed to ensure USACE success in the future by improving the current practices and decision-making processes of the USACE organization. The application of those principles as they relate to the tentatively Recommended Plan for Freeport Harbor is described below.

12.11.1 USACE Actions for Change as Reflected in the Campaign Plan

Engineering Sustainable Water Resource (integrated solutions, collaborative approaches, and streamlined processes)

- Freeport Harbor study analyzed potential effects over the study area.
- Construction of the mitigation site was developed for a 50-year period of analysis. Development and design of the site will address potential changes over time.
- The direct and indirect effects of the project on the environment were quantified using ecological modeling. Compensatory mitigation is provided in the tentatively Recommended Plan for all project impacts.
- All environmental impacts of the proposed project have been addressed and offset by mitigating for impacts.
- Project impacts were identified and type and location of the compensation to be performed. The recommended mitigation plan results in an excess of overall environmental benefits over impacts.
- Dredged material placement plans were analyzed to beneficially use the material to the benefit of the entire system (inshore and offshore) to the greatest extent possible. The ODMDSs are dispersive sites and will be beneficial in slowing shoreline erosion and littoral drift.
- Opportunities to beneficially use the large quantities of dredged material that would be generated by the project were explored. The needs of the project to find environmentally acceptable placement areas have been satisfied in the development of the PAs and ODMDSs.
- Close coordination among the USACE, non-Federal sponsor, resource agencies, and interested parties occurred throughout the study process. Interactions were professional and respectful, and opinions and expertise of others were obtained and utilized where appropriate. Coordination with the resource agencies and interested parties ensured that the spectrum of environmental habitats of the study and project area were adequately understood, impacts accurately identified, and appropriate amount and type of mitigation was developed.

Delivering Effective, Resilient, Sustainable Solutions (sustainable infrastructure, resilience, risk-formed strategy, innovative approaches)

- Developed plans over long-term, 50-year period of analysis.
- Utilized latest development in engineering, economic, and environmental modeling.
- Risk analyses conducted throughout the study are summarized in Section 12.2.
- Review and inspection of work will be conducted during design and construction.
- Project risks are communicated at public meetings and during the public review of the study findings. The public is allowed to comment and/or express concerns throughout the study process.
- Unlike flood risk management and hurricane protection projects, navigation projects involve minimal risk to the public.
- Independent review of the project documents and analyses was performed internally to the USACE and externally by professionals from academia and expert consultants. Comments from those reviews have been incorporated into the study documents, as appropriate.
- The expertise of State and Federal resource agency professionals familiar with the highly complex coastal ecosystems of Texas was integrally involved in the evaluation and development of plans to offset environmental impacts of the project.

13.0 SUMMARY OF COORDINATION, PUBLIC VIEWS, AND COMMENTS

13.1 OVERVIEW

Public input has been important in the overall planning process to assure that plans considered and developed were compatible with community and regional objectives. The primary purposes of public involvement are (1) to allow the public the opportunity to provide timely information to the USACE so that developed plans will reflect their preferences to the greatest extent possible, and (2) to provide a method by which the USACE can inform the public so that those who choose to participate in the project formulation and the planning process can do so with a relatively complete understanding about the issues, opportunities, and consequences associated with a study. A more detailed description of the public involvement process and complete list of all comments can be found in Appendix A of the DEIS.

The various measures used during this study to assure open, two-way public communication included public notices, media interviews, and meetings with various interested parties. The feasibility phase was initiated with issuance of a Public Notice in December 2003, which presented a summary of the past and planned study activities for this study. This notice also discussed the study process, the specific problems in the channel, and various alternatives to be investigated. It invited all interested parties to provide input to the study beginning with a Public Meeting held January 15, 2004. Ongoing coordination with USFWS, TPWD, TCEQ, NMFS, the Texas SHPO, and other Federal and State resource agencies continued throughout the course of the study.

13.2 PUBLIC INVOLVEMENT

A Public Scoping Meeting was held on January 15, 2004, at the Lake Jackson Civic Center, Lake Jackson, Texas. The meeting was advertised and promoted in conjunction with the non-Federal sponsor, the Brazos River Harbor Navigation District (Port Freeport). Advertising and promotion activities were initiated at least 3 weeks in advance of the scoping meeting in two local community newspapers. The meeting was also aired by a local community radio station through public service announcements. In addition, a mailout was conducted utilizing public and environmental database information and mailing lists maintained by Port Freeport.

The purpose of the meeting was to inform stakeholders and interested parties about the Freeport Harbor navigation study, to outline the planning and feasibility study processes, to present the proposed project schedule, and to solicit public comments/input. Solicitation of public comments was a primary objective of the scoping meeting to ensure that significant issues relating to the Freeport Harbor navigation study were addressed, as required by NEPA. As such, meeting participants were specifically asked to identify environmental concerns, constraints,

opportunities, and recommendations associated with proposed channel improvements. Meeting attendants included an elected official's representative, maritime industry representatives, a local environmentalist from the Freeport area, and the general public.

The USACE solicited both oral and written comments. A court reporter provided by the non-Federal sponsor documented oral comments. Generally, the attending public provided positive comments in support of the proposed project. However, the local environmentalist expressed concerns regarding potential negative impacts associated with proposed channel improvements. The assertion was the environmental community would probably oppose deepening beyond 50 feet, in an effort to avert similar plans and desires from competing Gulf ports, which if implemented could result in negative cumulative environmental impacts for the Gulf Coast region.

No oral comments were provided by Federal, State, or local resource agencies at the meeting, and no subsequent written comments were received within the allotted comment period. No further public comment has been provided to date from stakeholders or other interested parties.

Two additional public information meetings have been held. One was held in February 2006 to inform the public of study progress and the last was held in February 2008 to inform the public of the study results. No issues were raised at the meetings.

14.0 RECOMMENDATIONS

14.1 OVERVIEW

It is recommended that the existing projects for Freeport Harbor, Texas, authorized by the Rivers and Harbors Act of 1970, be modified generally as described in this report as the tentatively Recommended Plan, with such modifications as in the discretion of the Chief of Engineers may be advisable, and subject to cost-sharing and financing arrangements satisfactory to the President and the Congress, to provide deep-draft channel improvements to the Port of Freeport from the enlargement and continued maintenance of a portion of the Freeport Harbor.

The Project Cost of all project components, minus inflation and interest during construction, totals $308,700,000. The LPP Investment Cost of all components, totals $334,549,000, and includes $25,848,000 in interest during construction for project components. Total average annual costs for the project are $16,591,000. Fully Funded Cost of the projects, which includes Project Costs and expected escalation totals, is $334,352,000.

These recommendations are made with the provision that, prior to implementation of the recommended improvements, the non-Federal sponsor shall enter into binding agreements with the Federal government to comply with the following requirements:

Port Freeport shall:

a. Enter into an agreement that provides, prior to execution of the project cooperation agreement, 25 percent of design costs;

b. Provide, during construction, any additional funds needed to cover the non-Federal share of design costs;

c. Provide, during the period of construction, a cash contribution equal to the following percentages of the total cost of construction of the general navigation features (which include the construction of land-based and aquatic dredged material disposal facilities that are necessary for the disposal of dredged material required for project construction, operation, or maintenance of the navigation improvements and for which a contract for the Federal facility's construction or improvement was not awarded on or before October 12, 1996):

    1. 10 percent of the costs attributable to dredging to a depth not in excess of 20 feet; plus

    2. 25 percent of the costs attributable to dredging to a depth in excess of 20 feet, but not in excess of 45 feet; plus

3. 50 percent of the costs attributable to dredging to a depth in excess of 45 feet.

d. Provide payment of differential costs between Locally Preferred Plan and NED Plan for Lower Channel;

e. Pay with interest, over a period not to exceed 30 years following completion of the period of construction of the project, up to an additional 10 percent of the total cost of construction of general navigation features. The value of lands, easements, rights-of-way, relocations, and deep-draft utility relocations provided by the non-Federal sponsor for the general navigation features, described below, may be credited toward this required payment. The value of deep-draft utility relocations for which credit may be afforded shall be that portion borne by the non-Federal sponsor, but not to exceed 50 percent, of deep-draft utility relocation costs. If the amount of credit equals or exceeds 10 percent of the total cost of construction of the general navigation features, the non-Federal sponsor shall not be required to make any contribution under this paragraph, nor shall it be entitled to any refund for the value of lands, easements, rights-of-way, relocations, and deep-draft utility relocations in excess of 10 percent of the total cost of construction of the general navigation features;

f. Provide all lands, easements, and rights-of-way, and perform or ensure the performance of all relocations and deep-draft utility relocations determined by the Federal Government to be necessary for the construction, operation, maintenance, repair, replacement, and rehabilitation of the general navigation features (including all lands, easements, and rights-of-way, relocations, and deep-draft utility relocations necessary for dredged material disposal facilities).

g. Provide, operate, maintain, repair, replace, and rehabilitate, at its own expense, the local service facilities (Oil Docks 1, 4, 7, 8, and 11, Bulk Dock 2, and Freeport Public Elevator) in a manner compatible with the project's authorized purposes and in accordance with applicable Federal and State laws and regulations and any specific directions prescribed by the Federal Government;

h. Accomplish all removals determined necessary by the Federal Government other than those removals specifically assigned to the Federal Government;

i. Give the Federal Government a right to enter, at reasonable times and in a reasonable manner, upon property that the non-Federal sponsor owns or controls for access to the project for the purpose of inspection, and, if necessary, for the purpose of operating, maintaining, repairing, replacing, and rehabilitating the general navigation features;

j. Hold and save the United States free from all damages arising from the construction, operation, maintenance, repair, replacement, and rehabilitation of the project, any betterments, and the local service facilities, except for damages due to the fault or negligence of the United States or its contractors;

k. Keep and maintain books, records, documents, and other evidence pertaining to costs and expenses incurred pursuant to the project, for a minimum of 3 years after completion of the accounting for which such books, records, documents, and other evidence is required, to the extent and in such detail as will properly reflect total cost of construction of the general navigation features, and in accordance with the standards for financial management systems set forth in the Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and local governments at 32 CFR, Section 33.20;

l. Perform, or cause to be performed, any investigations for hazardous substances as are determined necessary to identify the existence and extent of any hazardous substances regulated under the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act (CERCLA), 42 USC 9601–9675, that may exist in, on, or under lands, easements, or rights-of-way that the Federal Government determines to be necessary for the construction, operation, maintenance, repair, replacement, or rehabilitation of the general navigation features. However, for lands that the Government determines to be subject to the navigation servitude, only the Government shall perform such investigation unless the Federal Government provides the non-Federal sponsor with prior specific written direction, in which case the non-Federal sponsor shall perform such investigations in accordance with such written direction;

m. Assume complete financial responsibility, as between the Federal Government and the non-Federal sponsor, for all necessary cleanup and response costs of any CERCLA-regulated materials located in, on, or under lands, easements, or rights-of-way that the Federal Government determines to be necessary for the construction, operation, maintenance, repair, replacement, and rehabilitation of the project;

n. To the maximum extent practicable, perform its obligations in a manner that will not cause liability to arise under CERCLA;

o. Comply with Section 221 of PL 91-611, Flood Control Act of 1970, as amended, and Section 103 of the Water Resources Development Act of 1986, PL 99-662, as amended, which provides that the Secretary of the Army shall not commence the construction of any water resources project or separable element

thereof until the non-Federal sponsor has entered into a written agreement to furnish its required cooperation for the project or separable element;

p. Comply with the applicable provisions of the Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, PL 91-646, as amended by Title IV of the Surface Transportation and Uniform Relocation Assistance Act of 1987, and the Uniform Regulations contained in 49 CFR Part 24, in acquiring lands, easements, and rights-of-way, required for construction, operation, maintenance, repair, replacement, and rehabilitation of the general navigation features, and inform all affected persons of applicable benefits, policies, and procedures in connection with said act;

q. Comply with all applicable Federal and State laws and regulations, including, but not limited to, Section 601 of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, PL 88-352 (42 USC 2000d), and Department of Defense Directive 5500.11 issued pursuant thereto, as well as Army Regulation 600-7, entitled "Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Handicap in Programs and Activities Assisted or Conducted by the Department of the Army." The State is also required to comply with all applicable Federal labor standards requirements including, but not limited to, the Davis-Bacon Act (40 USC 3144 et seq.), the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 USC 3701 et seq.), and the Copeland Anti-Kickback Act (40 USC 3145 et seq.).

r. Provide the non-Federal share of that portion of the costs of mitigation and data recovery activities associated with historic preservation that are in excess of 1 percent of the total amount authorized to be appropriated for the project, in accordance with the cost-sharing provisions of the agreement;

s. In the case of a deep-draft harbor, provide 50 percent of the excess cost of operation and maintenance of the project over that cost that the Secretary determines would be incurred for operation and maintenance if the project had a depth of 45 feet;

t. Do not use Federal funds to meet the non-Federal sponsor's share of total project costs unless the Federal granting agency verifies in writing that the expenditure of such funds is authorized; and

u. The first phase of the Velasco Container Terminal (800-foot berth and 35 acres of supporting backland) on the Stauffer Channel will be substantially completed prior to the initiation of construction of the Stauffer Channel portion of the project.

Construction of the recommended channel improvements is estimated to take 5 years to complete. During this period, the Government and the non-Federal sponsor shall diligently maintain the projects at their previously authorized dimensions according to the previous cooperation agreement. Maintenance materials that have accumulated in the channels at the time that "before dredging" profiles are taken for construction payment shall be considered as new work material and cost-shared according to the new cooperation agreement. Any dredging in a construction contract reach after the improvements have been completed and the construction contract closed will be considered to be maintenance material and cost-shared according to the new agreement.

Those portions of the projects for the Freeport Harbor and Stauffer channels that are deepened or newly created shall be operated and maintained according to the terms and provision of the new agreements. All other portions of the existing projects for the Stauffer Channel shall continue to be operated and maintained according to the existing agreement applicable to that portion of the channel.

The recommendations contained herein reflect no current removal of pipelines. Pipeline removal/relocation is recommended, in most cases, for pipelines with less than 20 feet of cover after project construction over the width of the channel plus an additional 25 feet of width on each channel edge. It is proposed that all of the lines remain at their current depth based on several criteria, including type of product transported in the line, whether the line has a casing, type of material the line is buried in, and scour in the portion of the channel the line is located in. Based on these considerations, all pipelines after project construction will remain at their current depth. Additional consideration will be given to cover requirements during design of the project. Should the decision be made that more cover is needed on lines not previously scheduled for removal, the District Engineer will update the project economic evaluation to reflect the additional associated costs and submit the economic update to the Chief of Engineers for approval prior to advertising the first construction contract and notify the affected pipeline owners that they will have to remove these pipelines. Since pipeline removals are not a project cost, no changes to the Baseline Cost Estimate or Sponsor and Federal cost-sharing will be required.

14.2 RECOMMENDATION

The recommendations contained herein reflect the information available at this time and current Departmental policies governing formulation of individual projects. They do not reflect program and budgeting priorities inherent in the formulation of a national Civil Works construction program nor the perspective of higher review levels with the Executive Branch. Consequently, the recommendations may be modified before they are transmitted to the Congress as proposals for authorizations and implementation funding. However, prior to transmittal to the Congress,

the non-Federal sponsor, the State, interested Federal agencies, and other parties will be advised of any modifications and will be afforded an opportunity to comment further.

_____	_____
Date	Christopher W. Sallese Colonel, Corps of Engineers District Engineer

15.0 REFERENCES

Allen, A.W. 1987. Habitat Suitability Index Models: Gray Squirrel, revised. U.S. Dept. Int., Fish Wildly. Serv. Biol. Rep. 82(10.135). 16 PP. [First printed as: FWS/OBS-82/10.19, July 1982.1].

Baker, E.T. 1979. Stratigraphic and hydrogeologic framework of part of the coastal plain of Texas. Texas Department of Water Resources Report No. 236, Austin, Texas.

Blair, W.F. 1950. The biotic provinces of Texas. Texas Journal of Science 2:93–117.

Brazos County. 1982. Warranty Deed by Freeport Minerals Company to the Brazos River Harbor Navigation District (now known as Port Freeport), dated August 27, 1982. Warranty Deed filed for record in Deed Record Book 1663, p. 22, entry 2804, of the Official Records of Brazos County, Texas.

———. 1999. Deed of Exchange between the Brazos River Harbor Navigation District (now known as Port Freeport) and the DOW Chemical Company, dated November 16, 1999. Deed of Exchange filed for record in Clerk file no. 99-053096, of the Official Records of Brazos County, Texas.

Brown, S. 2002. Soil scientist, soil survey program, Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS).

Campbell, L. 1995. Endangered and threatened animals of Texas: Their life history and management. Endangered Resource Branch, Texas Parks and Wildlife Department, Austin.

Chapman, B.R., and R.J. Howard. 1984. Habitat Suitability Index Models: Great Egret. U.S. Dept. Int., Fish Wildly. Serv. FWS/OBS-82/10.78. 23 pp.

Department of the Army. 2000. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Engineering Regulation No. 1105-2-100: Planning Guidance Notebook, April 22, 2000. Washington, D.C.

Desktop Sediment Study for Freeport Project. Draft September 2005. ERDC-CHL (T.M. Parchure, B. Brown, N. Raphelt, L. Vera, and J. Pena)

Dixon, J.R. 2000. Amphibians and reptiles of Texas. Texas A&M University Press, College Station.

Echols, D. 2006. Data in email sent to C. Murphy, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. 2 June 2006.

Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). 1974. Information on Levels of Environmental Noise Requisite to Protect Public Health and Welfare with an Adequate Margin of Safety. EPA 550/9-74-004. March. NNA19870406.0098.

———. 2007. “AirData.” http://www.epa.gov/air/data/geosel.html.

Evaluation of Improvements to the Freeport, Texas Ship Channel Under Hurricane-Induced Storm Surge Conditions. May 2007. ERDC-CHL (David J. Mark)

Freeport Harbor Field Data Collection Program, Final Report. June 2007. ERDC/CHL (M. Tubman, T.M. Parchure, B. Brown, N. Raphelt, and B. Guay)

Freeport Harbor Ship Simulator Hydrodynamic Study. February 2005. ERDC-CHL (J.V. Letter Jr., W.L. Boyt, B. Brown, C.T. Goodin, and D.M. McVan).

Gould, F.W. 1975. The Grasses of Texas. Texas A&M University Press, College Station.

Green. A., M. Osborn, P. Chai, J. Lin, C. Loeffler, A. Morgan, P. Rubec, S. Spanyers, A. Walton, R.D. Slack, D. Gawlik, D. Harpole, J. Thomas, E. Buskey, K. Schmidt, R. Zimmerman, D. Harper, D. Hinkley, T. Sager, and A. Walton. 1992. Status and trends of selected living resources in the Galveston Bay system. Galveston Bay National Estuary Program Publication GBNEP-19. Webster, Texas.

Gulf of Mexico Fisheries Management Council. 2004. Draft Final Environmental Impact Statement for the Generic Essential Fish Habitat Amendment to the Following Fishery Management Plans of the Gulf of Mexico (GOM): Shrimp Fishery of the Gulf of Mexico; Red Drum Fishery of the Gulf of Mexico; Reef Fish Fishery of the Gulf of Mexico; Stone Crab Fishery of the Gulf of Mexico; Coral and Coral Reef Fishery of the Gulf of Mexico; Spiny Lobster Fishery of the Gulf of Mexico and South Atlantic; Coastal Migratory Pelagic Resources of the Gulf of Mexico and South Atlantic. Gulf of Mexico Fishery Management Council, Tampa, Florida.

Haig, Susan M., and E. Elliott-Smith. 2004. Piping plover. The birds of North America Online. (A. Poole, Editor) Ithaca: Cornell Laboratory of Ornithology; Retrieved from The Birds of North American Online database: http://bna.birds.cornell.edu/BNA/account/Piping_Plover/.

Hatch, S.L., K.N. Ghandi, and L.E. Brown. 1990. Checklist of the Vascular Plants of Texas. MP-1655. The Texas Agricultural Experiment Station, The Texas A&M University System, College Station.

Hatch, S.L., J.L. Schuster, and D. Lynn Drawe. 1999. Grasses of the Texas Gulf Prairies and Marshes. Texas A&M University Press, College Station.

HFP Acoustical Consultants, Inc. 2002. Environmental Noise Survey. Cheniere Energy, Inc. Freeport LNG Terminal in Quintana Beach, Texas. October 2002.

Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) 2007 Climate Change 2007: Synthesis Report, Contribution of Working Groups I, II, and III to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change [Core Writing Team R.K. Pachauri, and A. Reisinger (editors)]. IPCC, Geneva, Switzerland, 104 p.

Lockwood, M.W., and B. Freeman. 2004. The TOS handbook of Texas birds. Texas A&M University Press, College Station.

McGowen, J.H., L.F. Brown, Jr., T.J. Evans, W.L. Fisher, and C.G. Groat. 1976. Environmental Geologic Atlas of the Texas Coastal Zone – Bay City-Freeport Area. Bureau of Economic Geology, The University of Texas at Austin.

National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 2007. Endangered and threatened species and critical habitats under the jurisdiction of the NOAA Fisheries Service in Texas. Received on October 2.

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). 2006. Coastal Change Analysis Program (C-CAP) including Gulf of Mexico C-CAP land cover products for 1996, 2001, and 2005. 2006 C-CAP data products are available online: www.csc.noaa.gov/crs/lca/ccap.html. The Gulf of Mexico data product including the 2005 Land Cover data product for Texas is available online : www.csc.noaa.gov/crs/lca/gulfcoast.html. Texas 2005 data was downloaded from this site March 2008 by PBS&J.

National Park Service (NPS). 2007. Information on sea turtles. http//www.nps.gov/pais/naturescience/ (accessed October 30).

National Research Council (NRC). 1987. Responding to changes in sea level: engineering implications. Commission of Engineering and Technical Systems, National Research Council, National Academy Press, Washington, D.C.

Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS). 2000. Land Use Estimates by County for Texas. 1997 Natural Resources Inventory. U.S. Department of Agriculture. Washington, D.C. <http://www. nrcs.usda.gov/technical/NRI/1997/summary_report/> (revised December 2000).

———. 2007. Soil Data Mart. Web Site: www:soildatamart.nrcs.usda.gov.

Navigation Study for Port Freeport, Texas. August 2007. ERDC-CHL (T. Shelton)

Pattillo, M.E., T.E. Czapla, D.M. Nelson, and M.E. Monaco. 1997. Distribution and abundance of fishes and invertebrates in Gulf of Mexico estuaries. Vol. II: Species life history summaries. ELMR Rep. No. 11. NOAA/NOS Strategic Environmental Assessment Div. Silver Spring, Maryland. 377 pp.

Professional Service Industries, Inc. 1996. Subsurface Exploration and Foundation Recommendations for the Proposed Confined Placement Site No. 1 – Port of Freeport – Freeport, Texas. June.

Richardson, D., E. Rozenburg, and D. Sarkozi. 1998. A birder's checklist of the upper Texas coast: Brazoria, Chambers, Fort Bend, Galveston, Harris, and Jefferson counties. Houston Outdoor Nature Club, Ornithology Group, Houston, Texas.

Rorabaugh, J.C., and P.J. Zwank. 1983. Habitat Suitability Index Models: Mottled Duck. U.S. Dept. Int., Fish Wildl. Serv. FWS/OBS-82/10.52.

Schmidly, D.J. 2004. The mammals of Texas, revised edition. University of Texas Press, Austin.

Schroeder, R.L., and P.J. Sousa. 1982. Habitat Suitability Index Models: Eastern Meadowlark. U.S. Dept. Int., Fish Wildl. Serv. FWS/OBS-82/10.29. 9 pp.

Shields, M. 2002. Brown pelican (*Pelecanus occidentalis*). In: The birds of North America, No. 609 (A. Poole and F. Gill, editors). The Birds of North America, Inc., Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.

Shoreline Impacts Due To Proposed Deepening of Freeport, Texas Outer Bar Channel. July 2007. ERDC/CHL (David B. King Jr.)

Soil Conservation Service. 1981. Soil Survey of Brazoria County, Texas. U.S. Department of Agriculture.

Sousa, P.J. 1982. Habitat Suitability Index Models: Veery. U.S. Dept. Int., Fish Wildl. Serv. FWS/OBS-82/10.22. 12 pp.

Status and Trends of Wetlands and Aquatic Habitats on Barrier Islands, Freeport to East Matagorda Bay, and South Padre Island. June 2005. Bureau of Economic Geology (W.A. White, T.A. Tremblay, R.L. Waldinger, T.L. Hepner, and T.R. Calnan)

Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ). 2000. Texas Surface Water Quality Standards. Texas Administrative Code (TAC), Title 30, Chapter 307. Effective August 17, 2000. http://info.sos.state.tx.us/pls/pub/readtac$ext.ViewTAC?tac_view=4&ti=30&pt=1&ch=307&rl=Y

———. 2007a. Letter from TCEQ to the EPA, August 21, 2007.

———. 2007b. "Revisions to the State Implementation Plan (SIP) for the Control of Ozone Air Pollution, Houston-Galveston-Brazoria Eight-Hour Ozone Nonattainment Area," adopted May 23, 2007.

Texas Water Development Board (TWDB). 2007 Groundwater database reports, Brazoria County. Web Site: www.twdb.state.tx.us.

Törnqvist, T.E., S.J. Bick, K. van der Borg, and A.F.M. de Jong. 2006. How stable is the Mississippi Delta?: Geology, v. 34, p. 697–700, doi:10.1130/G22624.1.

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE). 1978. Final Environmental Statement, Freeport Harbor, Texas (45-foot Project). U.S. Army Engineer District, Galveston, Texas. July

———. 2008. USACE Sea Turtle Data Warehouse el.erdc.usace.army.mil/seaturtles/species.cfm? (updated March 6, 2008).

U.S. Department of Commerce-National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. 2006.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS), U.S. Department of the Interior. 1996. Fish and Wildlife Service Manual #241, Part 870 FW1, Habitat Evaluation Procedures, Division of Habitat Conservation.

———. 2007a. Endangered species list: list of species by county for Texas. http://www.fws.gov/ifw2es/EndangeredSpecies/lists/ListSpecies.cfm (accessed October 30).

White, W.L., T.A. Tremblay, R.L. Waldinger, T.L. Hepner, and T.R. Calnan. 2005. Status and Trends of Wetland and Aquatic Habitats on Barrier Islands, Freeport to East Matagorda Bay, and South Padre Island. Final Report. Prepared for the Texas General Land Office and National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (GLO Contract No. 04-044 and 045). Bureau of Economic Geology, The University of Texas at Austin. (http://www.glo.state.tx.us/coastal/statustrends/freeport-spi/ index.html).

Yeargan, C. 2006. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Clear Lake Office. Personal communication to Derek Green, PBS&J, 6 April 2006.